



THE  
**EUP**

TEACH YOURSELF BOOKS

*Languages*

ARABIC  
CHINESE  
DUTCH  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR  
FRENCH  
EVERYDAY FRENCH  
GERMAN  
MORE GERMAN  
GREEK  
HINDUSTANI  
ITALIAN  
LATIN  
MALAY  
NORWEGIAN  
POLISH  
PORTUGUESE  
RUSSIAN  
SPANISH  
SWEDISH

*Mathematics*

ALGEBRA  
CALCULUS  
GEOMETRY  
MATHEMATICS  
MECHANICS  
TRIGONOMETRY

*Science*

ANATOMY  
ARCHAEOLOGY  
ASTRONOMY  
BIOLOGY  
CHEMISTRY  
GEOLOGY  
METEOROLOGY  
PHILOSOPHY  
PHYSICS  
PSYCHOLOGY

*Applied Sciences*

AIR NAVIGATION  
ASTRO-NAVIGATION  
ELECTRICITY

*Applied Sciences*

TO FLY  
RADIO COMMUNICATION

*General*

CHESS  
TO DRAW  
ETCHING  
TO EXPRESS YOURSELF  
GEOGRAPHY  
GOOD ENGLISH  
ABOUT THE GREEKS  
PUBLIC SPEAKING  
MUSIC  
SAILING  
TO COMPOSE MUSIC  
TO SPELL  
TO STUDY  
TO TEACH  
TO THINK  
TO WRITE  
THE SPEAKER AND DEBATER  
BELL'S STANDARD ELOCUTIONIST  
STUDENT'S GUIDE

*Home and Household*

BEE-KEEPING  
CARPENTRY  
TO COOK  
DRESSMAKING  
EMBROIDERY  
GARDENING  
THE HOUSEHOLD DOCTOR  
HOUSEHOLD ELECTRICITY  
PHOTOGRAPHY

*Economics and Business*

BOOKKEEPING  
BUSINESS ORGANISATION  
COMMERCIAL LAW  
ECONOMICS  
SALESMANSHIP  
SECRETARIAL PRACTICE  
SHORTHAND  
TYPEWRITING



# TEACH YOURSELF LATIN

A BOOK OF SELF-INSTRUCTION IN LATIN, BASED  
ON THE WORK OF W. A. EDWARD, REVISED BY  
KATHLEEN BARON, AND NOW FURTHER REVISED,  
IN PARTS REWRITTEN, AND AUGMENTED WITH EASY  
EXTRACTS FROM LATIN LITERATURE, SAYINGS, AND  
EXPRESSIONS COMMON IN ENGLISH

BY  
F. KINCHIN SMITH



*Published by*  
HODDER & STOUGHTON LIMITED  
*for* THE ENGLISH UNIVERSITIES PRESS LTD.



*First printed in this form 1938*

*Fifth and fully revised Edition  
October 1948*

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

*The Paper and Binding of  
this Book conform to the  
Authorized Economy Standards.*

*Printed in Great Britain for the English Universities Press, Limited,  
by Richard Clay and Company, Ltd., Bungay, Suffolk.*

## INTRODUCTION

QUEEN ELIZABETH at sixteen could talk Latin with her tutors readily and well: but few to-day will wish to emulate Queen Elizabeth. Writing Latin is good mental exercise, but our best reason for learning Latin is that we may read it. The civilisation of Europe has been built on the ruins of Rome: its literature and learning are the basis of much that is best in our own. Even to-day we cannot forget how far we are indebted: half the words we use in daily speech are derived from Latin. Latin is still the language of the Roman Church, and the language in which we write our mottoes, dedications and epitaphs. Rome is present in our daily life, whether we know it or not. We reckon time by Julius Cæsar's calendar, and take our holidays in the month that is named after the Emperor Augustus. When we write a.m., p.m., f.s.d., p.s., D.V., e.g. and scores of other abbreviations, we are writing Latin.

The Roman Empire included the greater part of Europe; it stretched eastward to India, southward to the Sahara. Everywhere it has left its impress. The so-called Romance languages—Italian, French, Spanish, Portuguese, Rumanian—are in direct descent from Latin, so that you will find it easier to learn any one of them if you have learnt Latin first. The word *Romance* is itself another form of *Romanic*; change one letter in *Rumanian* and you have *Romanian*, the Roman language. After the barbarians had swept down upon Rome, and the great Empire had fallen

apart, Latin learning lingered in the monasteries, and was the chief subject taught in the schools. The first schools founded in England were Grammar Schools, that is, schools founded for the teaching not of English but of Latin grammar. The Revival of Learning in the fifteenth century sprang from the re-discovery of the Greek and Roman authors of classical times, and they stimulated not only imitation but creative achievement. Shakespeare, though he knew "small Latin and less Greek", is the crown of an age which, in literature, owed much to the stimulus of Rome. In the centuries that have followed, the influence of Latin has been profound. It is felt not only in literature; law, medicine and all exact sciences use a Latin phraseology. In discovering Latin for ourselves we find a key not only to the ancient world but to our own.

Roman power was founded upon armed force, yet it is wrong to think of the Romans as primarily a military people. True, they gained by the sword a wide Empire, but they held it by their genius for administration. They conquered, often ruthlessly, but the races they conquered learned to value and admire the civilisation they brought. They left a literature whose qualities are untarnished by time; to read Virgil or Tacitus in the original is to experience a pleasure which outweighs all the labours of learning. It is of little use to read them in translation, for English and Latin are so different in character that their essential qualities are lost in the process. Latin is terse and accurate; it is content with one word where we use three. Every sentence is a mosaic in which the words are intricately fitted; alter one and the pattern is destroyed. The structure of a Latin sentence is quite different from that of an English one. An English sentence tacks on one idea after another, joining them loosely with "and's" and "but's", and

often tapering into a straggling finish. A Latin sentence is like a Roman column on the march, all neat and tidy, every part in due subordination to the whole, no straggling phrases, no unnecessary words, and all cleanly rounded off under the undisputed leadership of a main verb.

It is because of this fundamental difference between the Latin and the English language, that teachers for generations have insisted that the best way to learn Latin is to translate English into Latin. The original edition of this book adopted this method. There is much to be said for it. It is much easier to understand the complex structure of a Latin sentence when you try and construct such a sentence yourself. Translating English into Latin helps you to become familiar with the Latin accidence and syntax, and the order of Latin words will cease to seem unnatural. If you are learning Latin without a teacher, practice in writing Latin is almost essential. Moreover, the translation of English into Latin still occupies a considerable place in Latin examinations such as Matriculation.

But this approach to Latin has two disadvantages. It takes a long time, a longer time in fact than most students can spare, and the learning of Latin through the writing of "dog" Latin can easily degenerate into a mechanical application of over-simplified grammar-book rules. There has consequently been in recent years a growing revolt against this approach, and many teachers now believe that Latin should be learnt like a modern language from the study, both oral and written, of Latin itself, and that the first approach to grammar should be the discovery of its functioning in the live text, and the realisation of the need of it as the expression of the Roman mind.

The previous edition of this book was written on

the principle that (as stated in the original introduction) "in learning Latin you must begin by translating English into Latin". English-into-Latin exercises consequently occupied a large portion of the book, and the rules for writing Latin formed a basis of most chapters. In the revising of this book a compromise has been aimed at between the two methods, and an attempt made to meet the needs both of the students who want to translate English into Latin, and of those who want to read Latin as soon as possible. For the former the English-into-Latin exercises have been retained, but transferred to Part II. Their numbers, however, correspond to the lessons in Part I; so that a student can do them, if he wishes, after doing the Latin-into-English portions, of each lesson, and then check his efforts with the key. Also for his sake, the rules for writing Latin have been retained as the introduction to most chapters. There is nothing, however, to prevent anyone who wishes to discover a new rule or construction for himself, from studying first the actual Latin, and learning the grammar afterwards.

For the student who wishes a short cut to some comprehension of Virgil and Cicero without the labour of translating English into Latin, easy extracts from Latin literature have been added throughout Part I. The Romans did not write for children and the difficulty of finding actual Latin easy enough for beginners is known to every Latin teacher. But proverbs, pithy sayings, mottoes, the easier epigrams of Martial, occasional lines from Horace and Virgil, and even a short poem or two of Catullus, have been included in the hope that even at the start they will not be too difficult with the help of the notes, vocabulary, and key. Another new element in the book is the addition of Latin words and phrases that are now a part of the

English language. The translations in the key are not intended to be good English but are intentionally literal, almost word for word, in the belief that this is what the beginner without a teacher needs.

In any case, whatever is your aim in learning Latin, you should learn the grammar and vocabulary thoroughly from the first, or you will always feel lost and uncertain in reading Latin. In using this book you will be wiser to master each section before going on to the next, and constantly to revise what you have already learnt. This may seem dull at first, but it will enable you to read Latin with greater ease and rapidity when you are further advanced.

We wish to record our thanks to Miss E. Heath of Wisbech High School for her assistance in finding many of the Latin extracts for the revised edition.

### *The Value of Latin*

(From a statement issued by the Council of the Classical Association)

The Latin language has been the main vehicle of Western culture. To a first-hand knowledge of the creeds, codes, laws, literature, philosophy, and science of Western Europe, considered in their historical development, it remains an indispensable key. At the present time, when great social changes are impending, it is more than ever necessary that men and women should have a clear understanding of the path by which they have already come. This is impossible without Latin. Latin culture is not an obstacle to modern knowledge but a necessary element in it. Our civilisation will lose in breadth and depth, in stability and richness, if it is severed from its Latin roots.

The linguistic training of Latin, emphasising as it

does constant processes of analysis and synthesis, teaches clarity and precision of thought, lucidity of expression in English, and in particular the ability to distinguish the thought and the form in which it is expressed. The position of Latin is unique in this respect because, more than any other language likely to be studied, it involves the translation not of single words but of ideas.

Not only is a knowledge of Latin indispensable as a scientific basis of European language studies, but we believe the training that it involves to be of unrivalled assistance towards the subsequent study of almost any new subject.

### *Method of Using this Book*

Make certain resolutions before you begin :—

(i) Never to use the Key before you have attempted the exercise or translation for yourself.

(ii) Always to read the Latin through at least twice before beginning to translate. In this way you will accustom yourself to thinking in Latin.

The best way to use this book is to work right through it, exercise by exercise. Thus, write out Exercise 1 (a), then turn to Part II and correct your version before going further.

*For thorough study constant revision is necessary.* As soon as you have completed five lessons, then revise; as soon as you have finished the next five, revise again, and so on to the end of the book.

In the case of those students who are unaccustomed to grammatical form, and find the English-Latin exercises very difficult, the following plan may be recommended for a first reading. Read Lesson I, then work Exercise 1 (a). Turn to Part III (p. 242) and correct your version of 1 (a). Then, instead of turning back to Part I, keep at Part III, and turn 1 (b) (p. 268) into

English, afterwards correcting your version by comparing with 1 (*b*) (p. 199) in Part II. By doing this with all the Lessons you will get right through the book the first time without doing anything but Latin-English. You could then go through the book working in the ordinary way—using Part III as the Key throughout.

It is clear that the book may be used in various ways according to the needs of the student, the essential point about them all being that they can be followed without any other help than is given in the book itself.

N.B. The Latin exercises should always be attempted before the pieces of original Latin, as they are easier and give practice in the new grammar. For the first few chapters special vocabularies are provided, but these do not include the words in the original Latin selections. For these the student should consult the Vocabulary at the end of the book.



# CONTENTS

	PAGE
Introduction . . . . .	v
PART I	
Preliminary Chapter . . . . .	17
LESSON	
I. First Declension . . . . .	24
II. The Verb.—Present and Imperfect Active . . . . .	28
III. Second Declension.—Prepositions . . . . .	33
IV. The Verb.—Future and Perfect Indicative Active . . . . .	38
V. Adjectives, Class I.—Time When, Time How Long . . . . .	40
VI. Pluperfect and Future Perfect Indicative.— <i>Si, Ubi, Postquam</i> with Future Perfect Indicative . . . . .	44
VII. Third Declension.—Descriptive Genitive.— <i>Est</i> and Genitive.—Gender rhymes . . . . .	48
VIII. Third Declension: Neuter Nouns.—Motion to and from a place . . . . .	53
IX. A few Hints on the Third Declension.—Place where . . . . .	56
X. Adjectives, Class II.— <i>Amans</i> .—Genitive of Price . . . . .	59
XI. Fourth Declension.—Present and Imperfect Subjunctive.—Final Clauses . . . . .	63
XII. Fifth Declension.—Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.— <i>Cum</i> and Subjunctive . . . . .	68
XIII. Supine, Future Participle Active and Past Participle Passive.—Supine after a Verb of Motion. Noun and Participle for English Abstract Noun.—Personal Pronouns, <i>Ego</i> and <i>Tu</i> .—Demonstratives, <i>Is, ea, id</i> . . . . .	72
XIV. Ablative Absolute.— <i>Se, Sese</i> . . . . .	78
XV. Infinitive and Participles.—Accusative and Infinitive.— <i>Hic, haec, hoc</i> . . . . .	81

LESSON		PAGE
XVI.	Accusative and Infinitive.— <i>Qui, quae, quod</i> .— Adjectives with <i>-ius</i> in the Genitive and <i>-i</i> in the Dative.— <i>Ipse, -a, -um</i> . . . . .	86
XVII.	Consecutive Clauses.— <i>Ille, Iste</i> . . . . .	91
XVIII.	<i>Alius</i> .—The Gerund . . . . .	94
XIX.	Perfect Tenses of the Passive and <i>Sum</i> , etc.— <i>A</i> and Ablative . . . . .	99
XX.	Perfect Tenses of <i>Sum</i> .—Third Person Singular Passive of Verbs.—Compounds of <i>Sum</i> . . . . .	103
XXI.	Present, Imperfect and Future Indicative Passive. Gerundive . . . . .	112
XXII.	Comparison of Adjectives.—Ablative of Com- parison.—Genitive after Superlatives. Irregu- lar Comparisons . . . . .	118
XXIII.	Present and Imperfect Subjunctive Passive.— Indirect Command or Petition . . . . .	124
XXIV.	Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive Passive.— Verbs with Dative . . . . .	126
XXV.	Imperative, Infinitive Passive.—Conditional Sentences.—Jussive Subjunctive and Prohibi- tions . . . . .	129
XXVI.	<i>Possum</i> .—Conditional Sentences (cont.) . . . . .	135
XXVII.	<i>Eo</i> .—Conditional Sentences.— <i>Quin</i> and <i>Quo-</i> <i>minus</i> . . . . .	139
XXVIII.	<i>Fero</i> .—Questions, Direct and Indirect . . . . .	143
XXIX.	<i>Volo, Nolo, Malo</i> , and Verbs with Infinitive . . . . .	149
XXX.	Hints on Translating Latin Verse.—Two Pas- sages from Ovid . . . . .	152
XXXI.	<i>Fio</i> .—Verbs of Fearing . . . . .	163
XXXII.	Impersonal Verbs.—Passive of Dative Verbs . . . . .	166
XXXIII.	<i>Qui</i> and Subjunctive . . . . .	169
XXXIV.	Temporal Clauses . . . . .	173
XXXV.	Numerals . . . . .	176
XXXVI.	<i>Oratio Obliqua</i> . . . . .	179
XXXVII.	<i>Oratio Obliqua</i> (cont.) . . . . .	182
XXXVIII.	Conjunctions.—Deponent Verbs . . . . .	185
XXXIX.	Adverbs . . . . .	190
	Magic Squares . . . . .	191
	Suggestions for further study . . . . .	192

PART II

	PAGE
English-into-Latin Exercises . . . . .	199

PART III

Key to the Passages for Translation (in Lessons XX to XXXIX)	218
Key to the Latin-into-English Exercises . . . . .	242
Key to the English-into-Latin Exercises . . . . .	268
Numerals . . . . .	286
Tables of Verbs . . . . .	288
Tables of the Regular Verbs . . . . .	289
Tables of Irregular Verbs . . . . .	299
Alphabetical List of Latin Verbs . . . . .	302
Vocabulary . . . . .	312

LATIN PASSAGES (excluding single lines)

LESSON

III. Martial . . . . .	37
V. Martial . . . . .	44
VII. Martial . . . . .	53
VIII. Martial . . . . .	56
IX. Martial . . . . .	59
X. Martial . . . . .	63
XI. Martial . . . . .	68
XIII. Martial . . . . .	77
XV. Martial.—Virgil . . . . .	85
XVI. Catullus . . . . .	90
XVII. Virgil . . . . .	94
XVIII. Catullus.—Virgil . . . . .	98
XX-XXIV. Cornelius Nepos (Life of Hamilcar) . . . . .	111
XXII. Martial.—Catullus . . . . .	122
XXIII. Martial . . . . .	126
XXV-XXXVII. Martial.—Cornelius Nepos (Life of Hannibal) . . . . .	134
XXVI. Martial.—Catullus . . . . .	137
XXVII. New Testament . . . . .	143
XXVIII. Catullus.—Christmas Hymn . . . . .	147
XXX. Ovid . . . . .	159
XXXIII. Martial . . . . .	170
XXXIV. Catullus . . . . .	175
XXXVII. Cæsar . . . . .	184
XXXVIII. Horace.—Cicero.—Suetonius . . . . .	187



## PART I

### PRELIMINARY CHAPTER

The Latin alphabet is the same as our own, except for three slight differences :

1. The Latin alphabet as *written* has no w.
2. *k* and *y* are rarely used.
3. *i* is very often written for *j*. The Latin word for "now" may be written *jam* or *iam*, and is pronounced *yam* in both cases.

#### Pronunciation

This is the pronunciation which it is believed was used by the Romans.

The vowels are pronounced as follows :

*ā*, that is short *a*, as in *fat*, e.g. *āmicus*, Latin for "friend".

*ā*, that is long *a*, as in *father*, e.g. *irā*, in anger.

*ĕ*, that is short *e*, as in *net*, e.g. *ĕt*, and.

*ē*, that is long *e*, as in *they*, e.g. *mē*, Latin for "me".

(Note that *e* is always sounded in Latin, e.g. *lĕgĕrĕ*, the Latin for "to gather", has three syllables.)

*ĭ*, that is short *i*, as in *pin*, e.g. *ĭnsula*, island.

*ī*, that is long *i*, as in *police*, e.g. *servī*, slaves.

*ŏ*, that is short *o*, as in *not*, e.g. *bŏnus*, good.

*ō*, that is long *o*, as in *note*, e.g. *mōs*, custom.

*ŭ*, that is short *u*, as *oo* in *wood*, e.g. *domŭs*, a house.

*ū*, that is long *u*, as *oo* in *mood*, e.g. *domūs*, houses.

(Note that after *q*, and sometimes after *g* and *s*, *u* has the sound of *w*.)

### Diphthongs

*ae*, *au*, *oe* in Latin are called Diphthongs—i.e. two vowels pronounced together to form one sound—and are pronounced as follows :

*ae*, as *ai* in *aisle*, e.g. *mensae*, table.

*au*, as *ow* in *cow*, e.g. *aureus*, golden.

*oe*, as *oi* in *oil*, e.g. *proelium*, battle.

*ui*, as Fr. *oui*, e.g. *huic*, to this (man).

*eu*, as in *news*, e.g. *heu*, alas !

### Consonants

These are pronounced as in English for the most part, *but*—

*c* is always pronounced as in *cat*.

*g* is always pronounced as in *get*.

*j* (or *i* where it stands in place of *j*) is always pronounced as *y* in *yellow*.

*s* is always pronounced as in *son*.

*t* is always pronounced as in *top*, e.g. *ratio*, reason.

*v* is always pronounced as *w* in *wall*, e.g. *servi*, pronounced *serwee*.

*th* and *ch* are pronounced as *t* and *k*.

Double consonants are pronounced separately, as in Italian, or as in the English *book-keeper*.

### Accent

Never accent a word on the last syllable. If a word consists of two or more syllables, it is accented either on the second or third syllable from the end—on the second syllable from the end if it is long, on the third from the end if the second syllable is short, e.g. *íră*, *poétă*, *însălă*.

Where Latin examples of pronunciation are given, say them over to yourself several times for practice.

### The Parts of Speech

Words are divided into various classes. We talk of Nouns, Adjectives, Pronouns, Verbs, Adverbs, Prepositions, Conjunctions, Interjections; and that we may always know exactly what we mean, we shall set down shortly what we understand by each of these terms.

1. *The Noun*.—Observe these words: *John*, *table*, *whiteness*. The first is the name of a person; the second is the name of a thing; the third is the name of a quality. These are all *Nouns*, and in Latin are sometimes called *Substantives*.

2. *The Adjective*.—The adjective names some quality possessed by the thing named by the noun. Thus, *table* names a certain article of furniture. It has a certain size, shape, etc. If we wish to name these we add an adjective to the noun, *e.g.* a *wooden* table, a *strong* table.

3. *The Pronoun*.—"John went into the house. *He* met his friend there." What does the word *he* do here? It stands in place of the name *John*. A pronoun, then, is a word which stands in place of a noun.

4. *The Verb*.—"John ran along the road." "John chased a hare." "John now sleeps." In each of these sentences we talk of somebody doing something, or being in a certain state. The somebody is named by a noun (the Subject); the doing or state is described by a verb (the Predicate). Thus *ran*, *chased*, *sleeps* are verbs.

5. *The Adverb*.—"John ran quickly." "John chased

a hare eagerly." "John sleeps peacefully." In each case here we have a word (*quickly, eagerly, peacefully*) telling us something about the action or state marked by the verb. Such a word, used with a verb to describe its action, is called an adverb.

6. *The Preposition*.—"John ran quickly . . . his work." This is a broken sentence. *His work* is unconnected. Put in the word *to* before *his*. Now the sentence gives complete sense. This little word joins *work* to *ran quickly*, and shows the connection between them. Such a word we call a preposition (Latin *prae*, before, and *positus*, placed—a word placed before a noun). A preposition, then, is a word which connects words and shows the relation between them.

7. *The Conjunction*.—We have another class of words which connect—conjunctions. These, however, unlike prepositions, usually connect sentences. If I wish to make one big sentence out of the three sentences in paragraph 5, I write: "John ran quickly *and* chased a hare eagerly *and* sleeps peacefully." A conjunction, then, is a word which connects sentences. Occasionally conjunctions connect words, e.g. "John *and* James are sleeping." "*Either* John *or* James is a fool."

8. *The Interjection*.—"Hurrah! John has caught the hare." In this sentence *Hurrah!* is just an exclamation, a shout. Such a word thrown into the sentence without connection is called an interjection.

No doubt you could go on to tell me a good deal more about these words and their uses, but this is all you must know before studying the following pages. Different people have different ideas on these words, but

it is absolutely necessary that for the present you and I should agree to have the same.

### The Inflections of Latin

“ The king’s brother now reigns.”

“ The brother of the king now reigns.”

You see these two sentences express the same meaning in different ways. In the first sentence, to show the connection between *king* and *brother* we add an -’s, making a slight change in the end of the word. In the second case we connect the two by a preposition, at the same time altering the order. Latin in the great majority of cases uses the first method to show connection. Latin order is consequently almost always different from English.

The -’s in the first example we call an inflection—a change in the end of a word to show relationship to some other word or words. Such changes are made only in nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs. The other parts of speech are never inflected. Latin of course uses prepositions too, but these only help the inflections, and are followed, according to certain rules, by changes in the end of the noun they go with. In English the prepositions have to do all the work, without any help from the endings of words.

### The Inflections of Nouns in Latin

In English nouns may be made plural by the addition of such endings as -s, -es, -en: as, *dogs*, *witches*, *oxen*. Latin, in the same way, has certain endings to denote the plural, and other endings besides, which show the relationship of the noun to the other words in the

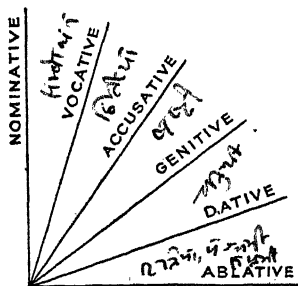
sentence. The noun so changed is said to be in a certain *Case*. A list of all the cases of a noun is called the *Declension* of the noun. To decline a noun is to go through all its cases.

We have cases in English, as you know, but we do not always mark them by inflection. In fact we very seldom do so. We generally mark them by a preposition. The following are examples of the inflections found in English nouns and pronouns :—

“ John’s book is good.”

“ He struck him.”

The first word, *John’s*, we say is in the Possessive case. When the person is acting, you observe we use *He*, which is in the Nominative case, and called the Subject. The person who receives the action of the verb is named by *him*, which is in the Accusative case.



Case is a word which comes from the Latin word *casus*, which means *a falling*. It was applied to these forms of the

noun because they were regarded as a falling away from the original form. Thus, if we regard the Nominative case as the upright straight line, as being really not a falling away at all, the other cases in Latin may be represented by sloping lines.

The Nominative case, then, is used when the noun is the Subject of the sentence.

The Vocative case is the case of the person addressed.

Thus in *Et tu, Brute* (which means *You also, Brutus*), *Brute* is in the Vocative case.

The Accusative case is usually dependent on a verb. It is used to express the Direct Object. The Object, therefore, in Latin can never be in the Nominative case, even when the Subject is concealed in the verb and there is no word in the Nominative case in the sentence. Thus, in *Nautam interfecit* (which means *He killed a sailor*), *nautam* is in the Accusative case.

The Genitive case denotes possession. It is usually translated by *of* and the noun. Thus *insulae*, Genitive case, means of the island.

The Dative case is usually translated by *to* or *for* and the noun. Thus *insulae*, Dative case, means to or for the island.

The Ablative case is usually translated by *by*, *with*, *from*, *on* or *in* and the noun. Thus, *insulā*, Ablative case, means *from the island*; *gladiō*, Ablative case of *gladius*, means *by or with the sword*; *auctumnō*, Ablative case of *auctumnus*, means *in autumn*.

The following section is very important and should be studied carefully.

### Order of Words in Latin

The order of words in a Latin sentence is usually different from English. The first word is emphatic, and is usually the subject of the sentence, and the last word, also emphatic, is usually the verb, e.g. in English we say "Brutus loves Lucia", but Latin says "Brutus Lucia loves" ("*Brutus Luciam amat*"). "*Luciam Brutus amat*" would mean "it is Lucia that Brutus loves". Adjectives in Latin come either before or

after the nouns they qualify. Adverbs precede verbs, *e.g.* whereas in English we say "Caesar fights bravely", Latin says "Caesar bravely fights" (*Caesar fortiter pugnat*). Other words or phrases, *e.g.* prepositions, and the words they qualify (*e.g.* "in insula"—"in the island"), relative clauses, and participles, are usually placed inside the sentence in the natural order of thought. Genitives frequently precede the word they qualify (*e.g.* "a good poet of Spain" would be "*bonus Hispaniae poeta*", and "Brutus, a good inhabitant of Italy, often used to love Lucia with boldness" would be in Latin "*Brutus, bonus Italiae incola, Luciam ferocia saepe amabat*").

N.B.—The Latin words will be found in Vocabularies 1 and 2.

## LESSON I

### FIRST DECLENSION

When a noun names one thing, we say it is singular; when more than one, plural.

In English a noun is said to be feminine when it is the name of a living thing of female sex; that is, gender in nouns corresponds to sex in living things; so a masculine noun is the name of a living thing of male sex. Thus *girl* is feminine, *boy* masculine. In Latin this rule holds good: *puella*, a girl, is feminine; *puer*, a boy, is masculine. In English all other words are neuter: this is not so in Latin. This language gives gender to names of sexless things. *Insula*, an island, in Latin is feminine; *mūrus*, a wall, is masculine. Happily, fairly easy rules can be given for determining gender in each noun. These we shall give later.

A list of all the forms of a noun is called the *Declension* of the noun. To go through this list is to *Decline* the noun.

There are five different sets of inflections in Latin. According as the noun takes the first, second, third, fourth, fifth set, we say it belongs to the First, Second, Third, Fourth, Fifth Declension.

Each declension is distinguished by the way in which the nouns belonging to it form the genitive singular. *Insul-a*, an island, makes genitive *insul-ae*. *Mūr-us*, a wall, makes genitive *mūr-ī*. *Insula* belongs to the First Declension; *mūrus* to the Second. The other declensions will be explained later.

## FIRST DECLENSION

*Insul-a*, f....an island

## Singular

Nominative & Vocative	<i>Insul-a</i>	an (the) island
Accusative . . .	<i>Insul-am</i>	an (the) island
Genitive . . .	<i>Insul-ae</i>	of an (the) island
Dative . . .	<i>Insul-ae</i>	to or for an (the) island
Ablative . . .	<i>Insul-ā</i>	by, with, from or in an (the) island

## Plural

Nominative & Vocative	<i>Insul-ae</i>	(the) islands
Accusative . . .	<i>Insul-ās</i>	(the) islands
Genitive . . .	<i>Insul-ārum</i>	of (the) islands
Dative . . .	<i>Insul-is</i>	to or for (the) islands
Ablative . . .	<i>Insul-is</i>	by, with, from or in (the) islands

Most nouns of the First Declension end in *-a* and are *feminine*, unless they are masculine through their own sex, e.g. *nauta*, a sailor, is masculine.

You notice in this that Latin has no word for *the* or *a*, the definite and indefinite article, as we call them. *Insula* means *an* island or *the* island, and the sense tells

us which. Note that the ending *-a* in the Nominative is a short sound, but is a long sound in the Ablative.

The part in this noun, and in all nouns of any declension, left after removing the termination of the genitive singular we call the *stem*. A case, then, always consists of stem + inflection. Thus *insul-* is the stem, *-ae* the genitive inflection, *-am* the accusative inflection, and so on. To find the case of any noun, then, get the stem and add the inflection that marks that case.

Before going on to tackle an exercise with longer sentences it will be good to have a little practice in these inflections.

### Exercise I (a)

Write down, then, the meanings of these Latin phrases :—

1. Amicitia incolarum Hispaniae. 2. Incolae Italiae.
3. Incolis Italiae. 4. Ferocia nautae. 5. Irā nautarum.
6. Insulis Italiae. 7. Insulas Hispaniae. (What case is *insulas*?) 8. Orae Hispaniae.

### Vocabulary I

*Amicitia*, -ae, f....friendship

*Et*...and

*Ferōcia*, -ae, f....boldness

*Hispania*, -ae, f....Spain

*Incolā*, -ae, m. or f....inhabitant

*Victōria*, -ae, f....victory

*Ira*, -ae, f....wrath

*Italia*, -ae, f....Italy

*Nauta*, -ae, m....sailor

*Ora*, -ae, f....shore

*Poēta*, -ae, m....poet

Compare now what you have written with the Key in Part III, and so with each following exercise.

Many first declension Latin nouns have been taken over into the English language. They all end in *-a*.

Here are some of them : in some cases their meaning has changed.

villa

via (a road or route)

Magna Carta (Charta was originally a leaf of papyrus, and so something written upon paper)

rota (originally a "wheel", in English a duty list going round like a wheel)

paeninsula (in English peninsula: *paene*, almost; *insula*, an island)

inertia

area (in Latin an empty piece of ground, often a town square or playground)

persona grata

arena (originally "sand", with which the stadium was covered)

Also many girls' names, *e.g.* Clara, Stella, Viola, Victoria, and Vera. If you don't know their meanings, look them up in a dictionary.

Some Latin words taken over into English have kept the Latin plural, *e.g.* larva, larvae; antenna, antennae.

Sometimes a genitive case has been taken over into English, *e.g.*

*amor patriae* . . . love of one's native land

*lapsus linguae* . . . slip of the tongue

*aqua vitae* . . . water of life

## LESSON II

## THE VERB.—PRESENT AND IMPERFECT ACTIVE

The verbs are divided into Conjugations as the nouns into declensions. The nouns were classed according to the termination of the genitive singular: the verbs are classed according to the termination of their Present Infinitive. To love, to advise, to rule, to hear are present infinitives in English. *Am-āre*, *mon-ēre*, *reg-ēre*, *aud-īre* are the corresponding verbs in Latin. The termination is in each case *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ēre*, *-īre*; the other part may be called the *Present stem*.

Verbs with infinitives in *-āre* belong to the First Conjugation.

Verbs with infinitives in *-ēre* belong to the Second Conjugation.

Verbs with infinitives in *-ēre* belong to the Third Conjugation.

Verbs with infinitives in *-īre* belong to the Fourth Conjugation.

In this lesson we shall take up the Present and Imperfect tense of *amo*. Watch carefully the English meaning of the tense.

## PRESENT INDICATIVE

Sing.	1.	<i>Am-ō</i>	.	.	I love <i>or</i> am loving
	2.	<i>Am-ās</i>	.	.	Thou lovest <i>or</i> art loving
	3.	<i>Am-at</i>	.	.	He loves <i>or</i> is loving
Plur.	1.	<i>Am-āmus</i>	.	.	We love <i>or</i> are loving
	2.	<i>Am-ātis</i>	.	.	Ye (you) love <i>or</i> are loving
	3.	<i>Am-ant</i>	.	.	They love <i>or</i> are loving

You will notice that the termination of each "person" has an "a" in it, except the first person singular, which is *am-o*. This is because it is a

contraction for *ama-o*, and the "a" has dropped out, as you would expect if you say "*amao, amao, amao*" quickly many times.

For full conjugation of the present of *monēre* (to advise), i.e. *moneo* (Second Conjugation), of the present of *regere* (to rule), i.e. *rego* (Third Conjugation), and of the present of *audire* (to hear), i.e. *audio* (Fourth Conjugation), see Table of Verbs in Part III (p. 288).

PRESENT TENSE OF THE VERB "TO BE" (*Esse*)

<i>Sum</i>	.	.	.	I am
<i>Es</i>	.	.	.	thou art
<i>Est</i>	.	.	.	he, she, or it is
<i>Sumus</i>	.	.	.	we are
<i>Estis</i>	.	.	.	you (plural) are
<i>Sunt</i>	.	.	.	they are

I, thou, he, etc., are called the subjects of the verb and are said to be in the nominative case.

In the Latin, you notice, they are represented by the inflection or termination only. It is as if *amo* meant *love I* and *-o* stood for *I*, and so forth. As a rule do not translate the English pronoun into Latin when it is the subject of the verb.

Further, this inflection shows whether it is the person speaking who is acting (first person), or the person spoken to (second person), or the person spoken about (third person).

This is true both of the first three forms, and also of the last three. The difference in the last three is that the persons are now plural—we are speaking of more than one.

When we say the verb is singular and use the singular forms in Latin, we mean there is one person acting.

When we say the verb is plural and use the plural forms in Latin, we mean there is more than one person acting. The first person denotes that the person speaking is acting; the second person denotes that the person spoken to is acting; and the third person denotes that the person spoken about is acting.

We have used the term Indicative above. The Indicative mood of the verb makes a plain straightforward statement, for example: *amo*, I love. The Present terminations also show that the action described by the verb is going on just now—at present. This form of the verb we call the Present tense.

Another termination tells you what person *was* acting and when the action *was* taking place. This tense denotes an action *going on in the past and not completed*; hence its name—*Imperfect*.

*e.g.* When I *was eating* plums, I swallowed a stone. "Was eating" is important. You will notice again that the "a" of the stem is kept throughout—*abam*, *abas*, *abat*, etc.

#### IMPERFECT INDICATIVE

1. <i>Am-ābam</i> .	.	.	I was loving <i>or</i> used to love
2. <i>Am-ābās</i> .	.	.	Thou wast loving <i>or</i> used to love
3. <i>Am-ābat</i> .	.	.	He was loving <i>or</i> used to love
1. <i>Am-ābāmus</i>	.	.	We were loving <i>or</i> used to love
2. <i>Am-ābātis</i>	.	.	Ye (you) were loving <i>or</i> used to love
3. <i>Am-ābant</i> .	.	.	They were loving <i>or</i> used to love

Similarly imperfect tense of *monēre* is *monēbam*, etc.

" " " *regere* is *regēbam*, etc.

" " " *audire* is *audiēbam*, etc.

For full conjugation *v.* Table of Verbs in Part III. Imperfect tense of *esse* is *eram* (I was, etc.).

*Note.*—The following and all future exercises you

should write referring to the vocabulary; then, after finishing, learn the vocabulary off by heart. It is easy to remember the meaning of many Latin words by the English words derived from them,

e.g. *flagro* (blaze) gives the English *flagrant*.

*concilio* (win friendship), conciliate.

*pugno* (fight), pugnacious.

In Part III you will find a correct translation of the exercises by means of which to correct your own. Watch carefully any notes that are given there, and carefully attend all through the book to differences in the order of the words in Latin and in English. You will see the order is seldom the same in the two languages.

### Exercise 2 (a)

Turn into English :—

1. Incolas Hispaniae Barca concitat. 2. Primo incolarum amicitiam rogabat. 3. Saepe incolas hujus terrae superabatis. 4. Italiam nunc non amas, neque amabas. 5. Cum incolis insulae pugnas, atque ferocia et ira flagras. 6. In insula Sicilia pugnabamus, sed incolae amicitiam negabant. 7. Amicitiam rogatis et impetratis. 8. Victoriā nunc speramus.

Notice the order of words. In Latin the verb is usually at the end of a sentence.

*In insula Sicilia.* The Latin says "in the island Sicily", but English says "in the island of Sicily". The Latin is really more exact, because the island is Sicily, and does not belong to Sicily. The genitive in Latin denotes possession, e.g. *nautae victoria*—"the

victory of (*i.e.* belonging to) the sailor", or "the sailor's victory". Thus *insula Siciliae* would mean "Sicily's island", like *poetae insula*, which would mean "the poet's island". Therefore "the island which is Sicily" is not *insula Siciliae*, but *insula Sicilia*. This construction is called *apposition* because the two words are placed next to each other.

## Vocabulary 2

*Armō, āre...*to arm

*Aique...*and

*Autem...*however

*Barca, -ae, m....*Barca

*Conciliō, -āre...*to win (friendship, etc.). Imperfect Indicative will express trying-to-win

*Concitiō, -āre...*to stir up

*Cum* (and ablative)...along with

*Flagrō, -āre...*to blaze

*Hōc*<sup>1</sup>...this (accusative)

*Hujus*<sup>2</sup>...of this (genitive)

*Impetrō, -āre...*to obtain by request

*In* (and ablative)...in

*In* (and accusative)...against

*Neque...*nor

*Negō, -āre...*to say . . . not, to deny, to refuse

*Nōn...*not

*Nunc...*now

*Primō...*at first

*Pugnō, āre...*to fight

*Renōvō, āre...*to renew

*Rogō, -āre...*to ask, to ask for

*Saepe...*many times, often

*Sed...*but

*Sicilia, -ae, f....*Sicily

*Sperō, -āre...*to hope, to hope for

*Supero, -are...*to conquer

*Terra, -ae, f....*land

*Tibi...*to you (dative)

*Tum...*then

*Note.*—The vocabularies include only new words. If you forget any word given already, you must turn to the Vocabulary at the end of the book.

## Latin in English

What do the following words mean literally?

ignoramus

veto

concordat

terra firma

habitat

If necessary, consult vocabulary.

<sup>1</sup> Nom. or acc. neut. sing. of *hic, haec, hoc*.

<sup>2</sup> Gen. sing. of *hic, haec, hoc*.

## Some Roman Sayings

1. Vita non est vivere, sed valere.
2. (On a sundial.) Horas non numero, nisi<sup>1</sup> serenas.
3. Bis dat, qui cito dat.
4. Dum spiro (breathe), spero.
5. Laborare est orare.

## LESSON III

## SECOND DECLENSION.—PREPOSITIONS

Learn these two nouns off by heart, paying particular attention to the terminations or inflections :—

	<i>Murus</i> , m....a wall.		<i>Bellum</i> , n....war.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	Mūr-us	-ī	Bell-um	-a
Voc.	Mūr-e	-ī	Bell-um	-a
Acc.	Mūr-um	-ōs	Bell-um	-a
Gen.	Mūr-i	-ōrum	Bell-i	-ōrum
Dat.	Mūr-ō	-is	Bell-ō	-is
Abl.	Mūr-ō	-is	Bell-ō	-is

Decline like this all nouns ending in *-us* and *-um* with genitive in *-i*.

We shall not print the meanings of the cases any more. You must refer to Lesson I if you forget them.

Some nouns of this declension end in *-er*, and are then declined like the two following.

*Note.*—Nouns in *-us* and *-er* are masculine; nouns in *-um* neuter.

	<i>Puer</i> , m....a boy.		<i>Ager</i> , m....a field.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Puer	-ī	Ager	Agr-i
Acc.	Puer-um	-ōs	Agr-um	-ōs
Gen.	Puer-i	-ōrum	Agr-i	-ōrum
Dat.	Puer-ō	-is	Agr-ō	-is
Abl.	Puer-ō	-is	Agr-ō	-is

<sup>1</sup> *nisi*—"if not" or "unless".

Notice *ager* forms all its other cases from *agr-*, dropping the *e*. The *e* is inserted in the nominative. This generally happens when the *e* has a consonant before it.

### Exercise 3 (a)

Turn into English :—

1. Puer caprum amabat. 2. Magistri Philippi filios amabant. 3. Philippi equos concitabatis. 4. Animos filiorum Philippus concitabat. 5. Equi Philippi in agris sunt. 6. Filii Philippo dona dant. 7. Dona filiis Philippi damus. 8. Ubi sunt filii Philippi cum equis?

### Vocabulary 3

*Animus*, -ī, m....mind

*Caper*, -rī, m....goat

*Do*, -are...to give

*Dōnum*, -ī, n....gift

*Equus*, -ī, m....horse

*Est*...is

*Filius*, -iī, m....son

*Magister*, -rī, m....master

*Philippus*, -ī, m....Philip

*Sunt*...(they) are,  
belong to (with gen.)

*Ubi*?...where? (adverb)

### Latin and English

Many Latin second declension nouns in *-us* have come into English, *e.g.*

circus . . . circle

focus . . . hearth, centre of family life.

stimulus . . . goad

chorus

discus

genius . . . (in Latin the "life spirit" of  
a person, a kind of guardian  
angel)

Some still keep the Latin plural, *e.g.*

terminus	"boundary"	plural	termini
radius	"ray"	plural	radii
narcissus		plural	narcissi
fungus	"mushroom"	plural	fungi

Latin second declension nouns ending in *-er* in English include

cancer	.	.	.	(lit. crab)
arbiter	.	.	.	minister

There are also many neuter nouns, *e.g.*

studium

album . . . lit. "a white thing", then  
a tablet on which notices  
were written

forum

aquarium . . . what does *aqua* mean?

medium . . . what is the plural?

maximum

minimum

vacuum

spectrum . . . *i.e.* an image

curriculum . . . orig. a little chariot, then a  
race-course

momentum

rostrum

### Prepositions

In this lesson a few hints on the prepositions will be given. These in Latin help the inflections. The inflections in Latin show the relation between the noun and other words in the sentence, but often require prepositions to help them in doing this, and to indicate

special relations. Latin, then, has two ways of showing the relation between nouns and other words, Prepositions and Inflections. We have practically only one—Prepositions.

*The following prepositions take the Ablative :—*

It will help you if you learn by heart the following rhyme :—

Put the ablative with de,  
cum and coram, ab and e,  
Sine, tenus, pro and prae.

#### Meanings

De . . .	concerning, or down from.
Cum . . .	with
Coram . . .	in the presence of
Ab or a . . .	by or from ( <i>ab</i> is used before a vowel)
Ex or e . . .	out of ( <i>ex</i> before a vowel)
Sine . . .	without
Tenus . . .	as far as
Pro . . .	before, or on behalf of
Prae . . .	because of.

All other prepositions take the Accusative except *in* and *sub*, which can take either Accusative or Ablative, but have a different meaning according to the case. When "*motion towards*" is meant, they take the Accusative. *Super* and *subter*, *over* and *under*, can take both, but are rarer.

*e.g.* in villam . . . into the house.  
sub muros . . . up to the walls.

When “*place where*” is meant, they take the ablative, *e.g.*

in villa	.	.	in the house
sub muris	.	.	underneath the walls.

### An Epigram from Martial

Tongilianus habet nasum, scio, non nego. Sed jam  
Nil praeter nasum Tongilianus habet.

Martial, who lived in the second half of the first century A.D., wrote twelve books of short poems (called “Epigrams”), mostly satirising the diverse characters and life of contemporary Rome. Tongilianus was a critic who, the epigram implies, was so fastidious that he turned up his nose at everything. He is all nose, *i.e.* a critic and nothing else.

### Latin Phrases and Sayings In English

1. Facta non verba.
2. Per ardua <sup>1</sup> ad astra (R.A.F. motto).
3. per annum.
4. ad infinitum.
5. *e.g.* is abbreviated from *exempli gratia*, “for the sake of an example”.
6. pro bono publico.
7. In vino veritas, “In wine truth”.
8. Post hoc, propter hoc, “after this, therefore because of this”.
9. v. sup., abbrev. for *vide supra*, “see above”.
10. v. infr., abbrev. for *vide infra*, “see below”.
- II. pro tempore, “for a time”.

<sup>1</sup> *Ardua* is a neuter plural adjective, *lit.* “high things”.

12. ad hoc, "with reference to this".  
 13. reductio ad absurdum.  
 14. in memoriam.  
 15. inter alia, "among other things".  
 16. P.S., abbrev. for *post scriptum*, "after the thing written".  
 17. pares cum paribus, *lit.*, "equals with equals".  
 Proverb—"birds of a feather flock together".

## LESSON IV

THE VERB.—FUTURE AND PERFECT INDICATIVE  
ACTIVE.

We shall now take two more tenses of the verb of the First Conjugation :—

## FUTURE INDICATIVE

- |                           |   |
|---------------------------|---|
| 1. <i>Am-ābō</i> . . .    | I shall love <i>or</i> shall be loving      |
| 2. <i>Am-ābis</i> . . .   | Thou wilt love <i>or</i> wilt be loving     |
| 3. <i>Am-ābit</i> . . .   | He will love <i>or</i> will be loving       |
| 1. <i>Am-ābimus</i> . . . | We shall love <i>or</i> shall be loving     |
| 2. <i>Am-ābitis</i> . . . | Ye (you) will love <i>or</i> will be loving |
| 3. <i>Am-ābunt</i> . . .  | They will love <i>or</i> will be loving     |

Futures of <i>monēre</i> ( <i>warn</i> )	<i>regere</i> ( <i>rule</i> )	<i>audire</i> ( <i>hear</i> )	<i>esse</i> ( <i>be</i> )	are :—
<i>monēbo</i>	<i>regam</i>	<i>audiam</i>	<i>ero</i>	
<i>monēbis</i>	<i>reges</i>	<i>audiēs</i>	<i>eris</i>	
<i>monēbit</i>	<i>reget</i>	<i>audiet</i>	<i>erit</i>	
<i>monēbimus</i>	<i>regēmus</i>	<i>audiēmus</i>	<i>erimus</i>	
<i>monēbitis</i>	<i>regētis</i>	<i>audiētis</i>	<i>eritis</i>	
<i>monēbunt</i>	<i>regent</i>	<i>audient</i>	<i>erunt</i>	

For full conjugations see Table of Verbs in Part III.

## PERFECT INDICATIVE

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Amāv-ī</i> . . .                       | I have loved <i>or</i> I loved               |
| 2. <i>Amāv-istī</i> . . .                    | Thou hast loved <i>or</i> thou lovedst       |
| 3. <i>Amāv-it</i> . . .                      | He has loved <i>or</i> he loved              |
| 1. <i>Amāv-imus</i> . . .                    | We have loved <i>or</i> we loved             |
| 2. <i>Amāv-istis</i> . . .                   | Ye (you) have loved <i>or</i> ye (you) loved |
| 3. <i>Amāv-ērunt</i> <i>or</i> <i>-ēre</i> . | They have loved <i>or</i> they loved         |

## PERFECT TENSES OF OTHER CONJUGATIONS

monui	rexī	audivi	fui
monuisti	rexisti	audivisti	fuisti
monuit	rexit	audivit	fuit
monuimus	reximus	audivimus	fuius
monuistis	rexistis	audivistis	fuistis
monuērunt	rexērunt	audivērunt	fuērunt
(or monuēre, rexēre, etc.)			

Learn these two tenses off by heart, paying particular attention to the terminations.

It is plain from the above that the *Future* tense states some event as going to happen, and that the *Perfect* tense states some completed act. You may translate the latter also by *I did love*, etc.

As soon as we come to the Perfect tense we require a new stem. In the First Conjugation we take the Present stem (*am-ā*) and add *v*; then to this we add the inflections given above.

*Question.*—What is the Perfect stem of *concito*, *supero*, *bello*, *flagro*, *armo*, *pugno*?

Translate the following exercise now into English.

## Exercise 4 (a)

1. Cum Poenis ter, O Romani, pugnavistis. 2. Primo in Italia cum Romanis pugnavimus. 3. Auxilio ventorum Romanos superabis. 4. Tandem adversarios superavere. 5. O Poeni, non jam victoriam sperabitis et bellum renovare recusabitis. 6. Amicitiam adversariorum rogabimus atque impetrabimus. 7. Itaque postea Poeni amicitiam Romanorum conciliaverunt. 8. Romanus cum Gallo pugnavit.

## Vocabulary 4

<i>Adversarius</i> , -ī, m....opponent, enemy	<i>Poenus</i> , -ī, m....Carthaginian
<i>Apud</i> (and accusative)...near	<i>Postea</i> ...afterwards
<i>Auxilium</i> , -iī, n....aid	<i>Recūso</i> , -āre...to refuse
<i>Erant</i> ...were	<i>Romānus</i> , -ī, m....Roman
<i>Gallus</i> , -ī, m....a Gaul	<i>Tandem</i> ...at last
<i>Itaque</i> ...accordingly	<i>Ter</i> ...thrice
<i>Non jam</i> ...no longer	<i>Ventus</i> , -ī, m....wind

## LESSON V

ADJECTIVES, CLASS I.—TIME WHEN, TIME HOW  
LONG

In English the terminations of adjectives do not tell us much. In fact inflection has almost disappeared from the English adjective. In *this boy*, *these boys*, *this* is singular, *these* plural. In Latin such changes are the rule, and not the exception, as in English. If we use an adjective with a singular masculine noun it has one form, with a feminine noun another, with a neuter noun another. In fact, we may say adjectives take inflections to show differences in number and gender and case; and they always agree in these respects with the noun with which they go. Thus *pueri* is masc. sing. gen. of *puer*. *Boni* is masc. sing. gen. of *bonus*. Of a good boy, then, is in Latin *boni pueri*. Similarly, of a good girl is *bonae puellae*.

There are two great classes of adjectives in Latin. The masculine in the first class ends in -us or -er, and is declined like *murus* or *ager* or *puer*. The feminine is declined like a noun of the First Declension, and the nominative of course ends in -a. The neuter is declined like a neuter noun of the Second Declension, and of course the nominative ends in -um. Take the masculine form, then, in the nominative case of any adjective of

this class, and to find the feminine treat it as a noun of the Second Declension and find what we have called the stem. To this add *-a*, *-um*, for feminine and neuter respectively, and decline by the above rules.

1. Thus *malus* (bad) gives stem *mal-*. The feminine, then, is *mala*, and the neuter *malum*.

2. Thus *asper* (rough) gives stem *asper*. The feminine, then, is *aspera*, and the neuter *asperum*.

3. So *ater* (black) gives stem *atr-* (like *ager*). The feminine, then, is *atra*, and the neuter *atrum*.

To distinguish between 2 and 3 you will require always to know and keep in mind what the *stem* of the adjective is. We now give an example declined in full for reference.

*Bonus*, *-a*, *-um*...good (like *murus*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Bon-us	-a	-um	Bön-i	-ae	-a
Voc.	Bön-e	-a	-um	Bön-i	-ae	-a
Acc.	Bön-um	-am	-um	Bön-ös	-äs	-a
Gen.	Bön-i	-ae	-i	Bön-örum	-ärum	-örum
Dat.	Bön-ö	-ae	-ö	Bön-is	-is	-is
Abl.	Bön-ö	-ä	-ö	Bön-is	-is	-is

*Asper*, *-a*, *-um*...rough (like *puer*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. & V.	Asper	-a	-um	Asperi	-ae	-a
Acc.	Asper-um	-am	-um	Asper-ös	-äs	-a
Gen.	Asper-i	-ae	-i	Asper-örum	-ärum	-örum
Dat.	Asper-ö	-ae	-ö	Asper-is	-is	-is
Abl.	Asper-ö	-ä	-ö	Asper-is	-is	-is

*Ater*, *atra*, *atrum*...black (like *ager*).

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
N. & V.	Ater	atr-a	atr-um	Atr-i	-ae	-a
Acc.	Atr-um	-am	-um	Atr-ös	-äs	-a
Gen.	Atr-i	-ae	-i	Atr-örum	-ärum	-örum
Dat.	Atr-ö	-ae	-ö	Atr-is	-is	-is
Abl.	Atr-ö	-ä	-ö	Atr-is	-is	-is

Like *asper* are declined *liber* (free), *miser* (wretched), *tener* (tender), and a few uncommon adjectives. All other adjectives in *-er* are declined like *ater*.

### Time When, Time How Long

1. *Auctumno fōlia sunt rubra.* In autumn the leaves are red.

*Auctumno* answers to the question, At what time? When? *Auctumno* here is the *Ablative case*. This is how Latin expresses *point of time* as opposed to *duration of time*, which is put in the *Accusative*.

2. *Vīgintī annōs Poenī cum Romānīs bellābant.* During twenty years the Carthaginians waged war with the Romans.

But if the word itself does not denote time (if it is not a word like winter, summer, spring, daybreak, etc.) you would require to insert the preposition *in* in the first case, keeping the *Ablative case*, as :—

3. *In bellō irā flagramus.* In time of war we blaze with anger.

In the second example, in which we denote length or duration of time, we might use, for emphasis, *per*, a preposition which means *during*. Thus :—

*Per viginti annos cum Romanis Poeni bellabant.* During twenty years, etc. (just a little more emphatic than in 2).

### Exercise 5 (a)

1. Folia et rami atrae cupressi in horto meo mihi sunt cara. 2. Cupressus est umbrosa. 3. Equus filii Philippi erat semper pulcherrimus. 4. Sicilia est insula magna et pulchra. 5. Cupressi Siciliae sunt

atrae et asperae. 6. Poeni miseri erant ubi hoc spectabant. 7. Magna maestitia videtur esse in animis. 8. Per multos annos cum Romanis pugnavi atque semper pugnabo.

### Vocabulary 5

<i>Annus</i> , -i, m....year	<i>Miser</i> , -a, -um...wretched
<i>Carus</i> , -a, -um...dear	<i>Multus</i> , -a, -um...many
<i>Cupressus</i> , -i, f....cypress <sup>1</sup>	<i>Pulcher</i> , -ra, -rum...beautiful,
<i>Enim</i> ...for	lovely
<i>Erat</i> ...was (imp. indic. of <i>Esse</i> = to be)	<i>Pulcherrimus</i> , -a, -um...loveliest
<i>Esse</i> ...to be	<i>Ramus</i> , -i, m....bough
<i>Folium</i> , -ii, n....leaf	<i>Semper</i> ...always
<i>Hortus</i> , -i, m....garden	<i>Spectro</i> , -are...to look at, to behold
<i>Maestitia</i> , -ae, f....sadness	<i>Ubi</i> ...when (conjunction)
<i>Magnus</i> , -a, -um...large, tall	<i>Umbrosus</i> , -a, -um...full of shade
<i>Meus</i> , -a, -um <sup>2</sup> ...my	<i>Vetustus</i> , -a, -um...old
<i>Mihi</i> ...to me (dative)	<i>Videtur</i> ...it seems

### Revision of Vocabulary:

Out of the Latin words you have already learnt, write down those to which the following English words are related—

(Example : pugnacious—*pugno*.)

irate, nautical, insuperable, negative, equine,  
auxiliary, ventilate, foliage, spectator.

(Check your answer from the Key.)

### Uses of the Adjective

The Latin adjective is often used like an English noun. Thus *boni* might mean "good men"; *bonae* might mean "good women"; *bona* might mean "good things", and *bonum* "a good thing". And if we are

<sup>1</sup> Names of trees are always feminine in Latin.

<sup>2</sup> *Meus*, -a, -um, and adjectives like it, are usually placed after the noun, thus : *In hortō meō*, in my garden.

translating such phrases into Latin we need not put a word for "man", "woman", or "thing"; the case-endings *-us*, *-a*, *-um* are sufficient :—

*Sapientes virtutem amant.* Wise men (or the wise) love virtue.

*Omnia mea mecum porto.* I am carrying all my property (things) with me (*mecum* = *me* + *cum*, *cum* being here a preposition).

Then note such phrases as :—

*Multa et magna sperabat.* His hopes were great and many; *literally*, He was hoping for many and great things.

*Multa cogitaverat.* He had had many thoughts: *literally*, He had thought many things.

### Latin Phrases

1. *Caeca est invidia.*
2. *Littera scripta (written) manet.*
3. *Humanum est errare.*

### Dyed Hair

*Cana est barba tibi; nigra est coma; tingere barbam  
Non potes<sup>1</sup>—haec<sup>2</sup> causa est—et potes, Ole, comam.  
—Martial.*

### LESSON VI

PLUPERFECT AND FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.—*SI*,  
*UBI*, *POSTQUAM* WITH FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

You remember we formed the Perfect stem by adding *-v* to the Present stem. Two other tenses are formed

<sup>1</sup> Second person singular of *possum*, v. Lesson XXVI.

<sup>2</sup> Feminine of *hic*, v. Lesson XV.

from the resulting Perfect stem *amav-*, namely, the Pluperfect and the Future Perfect. Thus, where in English we say *I had loved*, in Latin we say *amāveram*. This tense denotes an action which was completed some time ago (Pluperfect = Past Perfect). Again, where in English we say *I shall have loved*, in Latin we say *amāverō*. This tense is called Future Perfect, because it denotes an action as completed in the future.

Watch carefully, as usual, the terminations in learning the following :—

## PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE

1. <i>Amāv-eram</i>	I had loved	<i>Amāv-erāmus</i>	We had loved
2. <i>Amāv-erās</i>	Thou hadst loved	<i>Amāv-erātis</i>	Ye (you) had loved
3. <i>Amāv-erat</i>	He had loved	<i>Amāv-erant</i>	They had loved

## FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE

1. <i>Amāv-erō</i>	.	.	I shall have loved
2. <i>Amāv-eris</i>	.	.	Thou wilt have loved
3. <i>Amāv-erit</i>	.	.	He will have loved
1. <i>Amāv-erimus</i>	.	.	We shall have loved
2. <i>Amāv-eritis</i>	.	.	Ye (you) will have loved
3. <i>Amāv-erint</i>	.	.	They will have loved

Similarly *Pluperfects* of other conjugations :—

*Monueram, rexeram, audieram* (or *audiveram*), etc.

For full conjugations see Table of Verbs in Part III.

Pluperfect of *esse* is *fueram* . . . “ I had been ”, etc.

*fuerās*

*fuerat*

*fuerāmus*

*fuerātis*

*fuerant*

Similarly *Future Perfects* of other conjugations :—

*Monuero, rexero, audiero* (or *audivero*).



"After" when an adverb is	e.g. <i>postea negavit</i> ;
<i>postea</i>	"afterwards he refused"
„ when a conjunction is	e.g. <i>postquam femi-</i>
<i>postquam</i>	<i>nam spectaverat,</i>
	<i>negavit</i> , "he re-
	fused, after he had
	seen the woman "

## Exercise 6 (a)

1. Magnus adolescentulorum numerus hunc locum oppugnaverat. 2. Si adolescentuli hunc locum oppugnaverint Romani bellum renovabunt. 3. Ubi Africam a Poenis abalienaverimus, Hispaniam oppugnabimus. 4. Postquam imperium propagaveritis, magna pertinacia conservabitis. 5. Romanos, ubi in magno periculo erant, conservaveramus. 6. Consilium Poenorum comprobare dubitaveratis. 7. Postquam Gallos superaverint, imperium ad Hispanos propagabunt. 8. Recusaverant Romanos oppugnare quod amicitiam conciliaverant. 9. Si incolas hujus insulae armavero, pugnabunt. 10. In hoc loco Poeni cum Romanis multos annos pugnabant.

## Vocabulary 6

*Abalieno*, -āre...to estrange  
*Adolescentulus*, -i, m....young man  
*Africa*, -ae, f....Africa  
*Comprobo*, -āre...to approve  
*Conservo*, -āre...to preserve  
*Consilium*, -ii, n....plan  
*Dubito*, -āre...to hesitate  
*Hispanus*, -i, m....Spaniard  
*Hunc* <sup>1</sup>...this (accusative)

*Impērium*, -ii, n....command,  
power, hence empire  
*Locus*, -i, m....place  
*Numerus*, -i, m....number  
*Oppugno*, -āre...to attack  
*Periculum*, -i, n....danger  
*Pertinacia*, -ae, f....stubbornness  
*Propāgo*, -āre...to extend  
*Quod*...because (conjunction)  
*Vir*, -i, m....man

## LESSON VII

THIRD DECLENSION.—DESCRIPTIVE GENITIVE.—EST  
AND GENITIVE

In this declension there are nouns of all genders. In masculine and feminine nouns the terminations are usually as follows :—

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	(various)	-ēs
Acc.	-em	-ēs
Gen.	-is	-um
Dat.	-i	-ibus
Abl.	-e	-ibus

Most Third Declension nouns have genitive plurals in *-um*, but the following two kinds have genitive plurals in *-ium*.

1. Parasyllabics (*i.e.* with same number of syllables in nominative and genitive singular), *e.g.* *nubes, nubis, nubium*.

*except*

	Gen. Sing.	Gen. Plural.	
pater	patris	patrum	father
mater	matris	matrum	mother
frater	fratris	fratrum	brother
juvenis	juvenis	juvenum	young man
senex	senis	senum	old man
canis	canis	canum	dog

2. Monosyllabic nouns ending in two consonants—  
*e.g.* *urbs, urbis, urbium, city*  
*mens, mentis, mentium, mind*.

To decline any noun (masc. or fem.) in this declension find the genitive singular (which must be learned by heart), drop the termination (*-is*), and add the endings given above. You must learn the nominative form in the case of each noun.

Learn the fully declined nouns off by heart and practise those in the lists given after.

*Rex*, m....a king.*Mos*, m....a custom.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	<i>Rex</i> (g + s = x)	<i>Rēg-ēs</i>
Acc.	<i>Rēg-em</i>	<i>Rēg-ēs</i>
Gen.	<i>Rēg-is</i>	<i>Rēg-um</i>
Dat.	<i>Rēg-i</i>	<i>Rēg-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>Rēg-e</i>	<i>Rēg-ibus</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	<i>Mōs</i>	<i>Mōr-ēs</i>
Acc.	<i>Mōr-em</i>	<i>Mōr-ēs</i>
Gen.	<i>Mōr-is</i>	<i>Mōr-um</i>
Dat.	<i>Mōr-i</i>	<i>Mōr-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>Mōr-e</i>	<i>Mōr-ibus</i>

*Labor*, m....labour.*Urbs*, f....a city.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	<i>Labor</i>	<i>Labōr-ēs</i>
Acc.	<i>Labōr-em</i>	<i>Labōr-ēs</i>
Gen.	<i>Labōr-is</i>	<i>Labōr-um</i>
Dat.	<i>Labōr-i</i>	<i>Labōr-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>Labōr-e</i>	<i>Labōr-ibus</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	<i>Urbs</i>	<i>Urb-ēs</i>
Acc.	<i>Urb-em</i>	<i>Urb-ēs</i>
Gen.	<i>Urb-is</i>	<i>Urb-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>Urb-i</i>	<i>Urb-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>Urb-e</i>	<i>Urb-ibus</i>

*Civis*, m....a citizen.*Nubes*, f....a cloud.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	<i>Civis</i>	<i>Civ-ēs</i>
Acc.	<i>Civ-em</i>	<i>Civ-ēs</i>
Gen.	<i>Civ-is</i>	<i>Civ-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>Civ-i</i>	<i>Civ-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>Civ-e</i>	<i>Civ-ibus</i>

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	<i>Nübēs</i>	<i>Nübēs</i>
Acc.	<i>Nüb-em</i>	<i>Nüb-ēs</i>
Gen.	<i>Nüb-is</i>	<i>Nüb-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>Nüb-i</i>	<i>Nüb-ibus</i>
Abl.	<i>Nüb-e</i>	<i>Nüb-ibus</i>

Practise the following :—

Genitive plural in *-um*.—*Dux*, *ducis*, m., leader; *consul*, *consulis*, m., consul; *princeps*, *principis*, m., chief; *terror*, *terrōris*, m., terror; *imperātor*, *-tōris*, m., commander-in-chief; *error*, *errōris*, m., error.

Genitive plural in *-ium*.—*Hostis*, *-is*, m., enemy; *classis*, *-is*, f., fleet; *navis*, *-is*, f., ship; *fīnis*, *-is*, m., end; *gens*, *gentis*, f., race (remember *gens* is for *gen(t)s* : a similar thing happens with nouns having *d* before the *s*).

### Descriptive Genitive (or Ablative)

We talk in English of *a man of great wisdom*. In Latin "of great wisdom" may be expressed by either the genitive or the ablative. This is called the Descriptive Ablative or Genitive. Note the order of

the words carefully : *Magnā vir sapientiā* or (sometimes) *magnae vir sapientiae*.

*Note.*—There must be an adjective with the noun; thus, *a man of wisdom* is not *vir sapientiae*, but *vir sapiens*, a wise man.

### Est and Genitive

Where in English we say it is the part of, the duty of, the mark of, somebody to do something, in Latin we use *est* and the *genitive* merely.

It is the part of a general to overcome the enemy.

*Est ducis superare hostēs.*

### Two Gender Rhymes

1. Here is a *rhyme* to help you to remember the gender of words ending in *-is* of the third declension. The following are masculine, all others (and there are many) are feminine. It is well worth your learning them by heart.

Certain nouns in *is* we find  
to the *Masculine* assigned :  
amnis, axis, crinis, collis,  
ignis, orbis, fascis, follis,  
panis, piscis, lapis, mensis,  
pulvis, sanguis, unguis, ensis,  
finis, manes end the rhyme,  
ghosts are always masculine.

#### Meaning.

river, axle, hair, hill,  
fire, sphere, bundle, bellows,  
bread, fish, stone, month,  
dust, blood, nail, sword,  
end, ghosts.

2. Third declension nouns ending in *-ns* are feminine, except :—

*Masculine* are fons and mons,  
Dens and cliens, torrens, pons,

fountain, mountain,  
tooth, client, torrent, bridge.

### Exercise 7 (a)

1. Est Romanorum fines imperii propagare. 2. Hamilcar, summa vir ferocia, belli cupiditate flagrabat.

3. Mente agitabamus bellum renovare. 4. Equis, armis, viris, pecunia totam locupletabimus Africam. 5. Hieme in coelo sunt atrae nubes. 6. Classem Poenorum apud insulas superaverunt Romani. 7. Populus Romanus ceteras gentes virtute superat. 8. Est principis populum gubernare. 9. Rex Britannorum, magna vir sapientia, cum Romanis saepe pugnabat. 10. Si pacem conciliaverint naves conservabunt.

### Vocabulary 7

<i>Arma</i> , -orum, n. pl....arms	<i>Locuplêto</i> , -are...to enrich
<i>Britanni</i> , -orum, m. pl....Britons	<i>Mente agitare</i> ...to ponder in mind, to meditate
<i>Ceteri</i> , -ae, -a...all other (plural)	<i>Pax</i> , <i>pâcis</i> , f....peace
<i>Coelum</i> , -i, n....the sky	<i>Pecûnia</i> , -ae, f....money
<i>Conciliare pacem</i> ...to make peace	<i>Populus</i> , -i, m....a people
<i>Cupiditas</i> , -tatis, f....desire	<i>Summus</i> , -a, -um...very great
<i>Gubernare</i> , -are...to govern	<i>Tôtus</i> , -a, -um...whole
<i>Hamilcar</i> , -is, <sup>1</sup> m....Hamilcar	<i>Virtûs</i> , -tûtis, f....virtue, valour
<i>Hannibal</i> , -is, <sup>2</sup> m....Hannibal	
<i>Hiems</i> , -êmis, f....winter	

### Some Third Declension Latin Nouns Used in English

Look up the verbs in the vocabulary for their meaning.

#### I. Ending in -or.

##### (a) From First Conjugation roots.

	Verb.
creator . . .	<i>creo</i>
curator . . .	<i>curo</i>
liberator . . .	<i>libero</i>
agitator . . .	<i>agito</i>
spectator . . .	<i>specto</i>
violator . . .	<i>violo</i>
educator . . .	<i>educo</i> (I nourish)

<sup>1</sup> Pronounce the genitive Ha-milc'-âris.

<sup>2</sup> " " " Ha-nib'-âlis.

(b) *From Second Conjugation roots.*

motor	.	.	.	<i>moveo</i>
doctor	.	.	.	<i>doceo</i>
monitor	.	.	.	<i>moneo</i>

(c) *From Third Conjugation roots.*

creditor	.	.	.	<i>credo</i>
captor	.	.	.	<i>capio</i>
victor	.	.	.	<i>vinco</i>
rector	.	.	.	<i>rego</i>
pastor	.	.	.	<i>pasco</i> (I feed)

2. *Ending in other terminations.*

sanitas  
 crux  
 index (a pointer)  
 omen  
 animal  
 apex  
 axis (axle)

## Latin Phrases

1. *ars gratia artis* (*motto of Metro-Goldwyn Films*).
2. *ars est celare artem*.
3. *honoris causa*.
4. *in loco parentis*.
5. *homo sum, et nihil humanum alienum est mihi*.—  
*Terence* (adapted)
6. *quot homines, tot sententiae*.—*Proverb*.

Live Today !

Non est, crede mihi, sapientis dicere " Vivam ".

Sera nimis vita est crastina : vive hodie.

—*Martial*.

*Crede* and *vive* are imperatives ; *crede mihi*—" believe me ", *vive*—" live ! " (v. Lesson XXV).

## LESSON VIII

### THIRD DECLENSION: NEUTER NOUNS.—MOTION TO AND FROM A PLACE

All *neuter* nouns of the third declension have the accusative singular and plural the same as the nominative and vocative singular and plural respectively.

The nominative plural usually ends in *-a* and the genitive plural in *-um* ; but if the nominative singular is stem + *e*, the ablative singular has *-i*, the nominative plural has *-ia*, and the genitive plural *-ium*.

Thus, *tempus*, *temporis*, n., time, *nōmen*, *nōminis*, n., name, have *-a* and *-um* ; but *mare*, *maris*, n., sea, has *marī*, *maria*, *marium*.

Learn the fully declined nouns off by heart and practise those in the list given after :—

*Nomen*, n....a name.

	Singular.	Plural.
N., V. & Acc.	Nōmen	Nōmin-a
Gen.	Nōmin-is	Nōmin-um
Dat.	Nōmin-i	Nōmin-ibus
Abl.	Nōmin-e	Nōmin-ibus

*Tempus*, n....time.

	Singular.	Plural.
N., V. & Acc.	Tempus	Tempor-a
Gen.	Tempor-is	Tempor-um
Dat.	Tempor-i	Tempor-ibus
Abl.	Tempor-e	Tempor-ibus

*Mare*, n....a sea.

	Singular.	Plural.
N., V. & Acc.	Mar-e	Mar-ia
Gen.	Mar-is	Mar-ium
Dat. & Abl.	Mar-ī	Mar-ibus

*Vectigal*, n....a tax.

	Singular.	Plural.
N., V. & Acc.	Vectigal	Vectigāl-ia
Gen.	Vectigāl-is	Vectigāl-ium
Dat. & Abl.	Vectigāl-i	Vectigāl-ibus

The stems of nouns like *mare* usually end in *-al*, *-il*, *-ar*, and in a few like *vectīgal* the *e* of the nominative singular has been lost. Do not confuse these with masculine nouns in *-al*, *-il*, *-ar*, as *sal*, m., salt, *lar*, m., household god.

Practise the following : *Cognōmen*, *-inis*, n., surname ; *munus*, *-eris*, n., gift ; *foedus*, *-eris*, n., treaty ; *genus*, *-eris*, n., class, kind ; *lītus*, *-oris*, n., shore ; *hastile*, *-is*, n., spear shaft ; *sedile*, *-is*, n., seat ; *animal*, *animālis*, n., animal.

### Motion To and From a Place

1. *Hannibal pecuniam Roma ad Africam portavit.*  
Hannibal brought the money from Rome to Africa.

2. *Romam ab Africa navigāvimus.* To Rome from Africa we sailed.

*Rule.*—Express motion to a place in Latin by a preposition with the accusative, but use the accusative with no preposition in the case of a town or small island.

Express motion from a place with a preposition and the ablative, except in the case of a town or small island, when you omit the preposition.

### Exercise 8 (a)

1. Hamilcar, cognomine Barca, magna <sup>1</sup> cum classe in Italiam navigavit. 2. Et mari et terra Poenos Romani superaverunt. 3. Non enim suae est virtutis <sup>2</sup> pacem rogare. 4. Societatem foedere confirmabant.

<sup>1</sup> "With a large fleet." Latin prefers this order of words.

<sup>2</sup> Latin says "it is of my valour" (*est* with genitive). English says "it is in keeping with my valour."

5. Foedera Karthaginienses violaverunt. 6. Romam ad Caesarem<sup>1</sup> munera magna portant. 7. Melita Romam magna difficultate navigavimus. 8. Animal providum est homo. 9. Cunctorum animalium providentissimum est homo. 10. Ferrum ex hastili in corpore erat.

### Vocabulary 8

<i>Caesar, āris, m....</i> Caesar	<i>Marī et terrā...by</i> land and sea
<i>Confirmo, -are...to</i> ratify, to make strong	<i>Melita, -ae, f....</i> Malta
<i>Copia, -ae, f....</i> amount, supply	<i>Navigatiō, -ōnis, f....</i> voyage
<i>Copiae, -arum, f....</i> forces	<i>Navigo, -are...to</i> sail, to voyage
<i>Corpus, corpōris, n....</i> body	<i>Providentissimus, -a, -um...most</i> prudent
<i>Cunctus, -a, -um...all</i>	<i>Providus, -a, -um...prudent,</i> foreseeing
<i>Difficultas, -tātis, f....</i> difficulty	<i>Societas, -tatis, f....</i> alliance
<i>Ferrum, -i, n....</i> iron, steel	<i>Supero, -are...to</i> surpass
<i>Hōmō, -inis, m....</i> man	<i>Terra marique<sup>2</sup>...by</i> land and sea
<i>Karthaginiensis, -is, m....</i> Carthaginian	<i>Violo, -are...to</i> violate, to break
<i>Londinium, -ii, n....</i> London	
<i>Longus, -a, -um...long</i>	

### Latin Phrases

1. a verbis ad verbera.
2. O tempora, O mores.—*Cicero*.
3. ex tempore.
4. mens sana in corpore sano.—*Juvenal*.

### An Anonymous Epitaph

5. Balnea, vina, Venus corrumpunt corpora nostra.  
Sed vitam faciunt balnea, vina, Venus.

—*Martial*.

<sup>1</sup> *Romam ad Caesarem*. "To Caesar at Rome." The Romans say "To Rome to Caesar", putting (logically) the place first.

<sup>2</sup> There are a number of little words in Latin which are put at the end of other words and cannot stand alone. These are called *enclitics*. Thus *que* = and; hence *marique* = and by sea.

## LESSON IX

A FEW HINTS ON THE THIRD DECLENSION.—  
PLACE WHERE

You will find this the hardest declension in Latin, because of its variety and the consequent difficulty in giving good general rules. Below are given a few examples of well-marked classes of nouns in this declension. In future try when you come across a noun to think which noun it is like among those you know, and so get the nouns into groups in your mind. The declension will become quite easy by practice. If you try to learn it all at once you will only become confused. See that the case-endings are thoroughly mastered and leave the rest to time and experience.

Practise yourself in these nouns and remember the type of formation.

	stem				
<i>Natiō</i> , f., nation	<i>nation</i>	} Acc. Gen. Dat. Abl.	-em, -is, -i, -e, etc.		
<i>Ratiō</i> , f., reason, method	<i>ration</i>				
<i>Mentiō</i> , f., mention	<i>mention</i>				

There are many nouns like these in the declension.

	stem				
<i>Civitas</i> , f., State	<i>civitāt</i>	} Acc. Gen. Dat. Abl.	-em, -is, -i, -e, etc.		
<i>Cupiditas</i> , f., greed, desire	<i>cupiditāt</i>				
<i>Calamitas</i> , f., disaster	<i>calamitāt</i>				

You may perhaps have noticed by this time that a *d* or *t* in the stem is dropped before *s* in the nominative singular.

	stem				
<i>Fortitūdō</i> , f., bravery	<i>fortitudin</i>	} Acc. Gen. Dat. Abl.	-em, -is, -i, -e, etc.		
<i>Multitūdō</i> , f., multitude	<i>multitudin</i>				
<i>Consuetūdō</i> , f., custom	<i>consuetudin</i>				
<i>Imago</i> , f., image	<i>imagin</i>				

So commonly with nouns in *do* and *go*.

### Gender in the Third Declension

The gender in this declension in the case of sexless things is rather perplexing. The following three rules will help you, but there are numerous exceptions :—

1. If the nominative of the noun ends in *-o*, *-or*, *-os*, *-er*, or in *-es* with more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative, it is generally *masculine*.

2. If the nominative ends in *-as*, *-aus*, *-is*, *-do*, *-go*, *-io*, *-x*, *-s* following a consonant, or in *-es* without more syllables in the genitive than in the nominative, it is generally *feminine*.

3. Nouns ending in *-l*, *-a*, *-n*, *-c*, *-e*, *-t*, *-ar*, *-ur*, *-en*, *-us* are usually *neuter*. Remember the word *lancet* and it will help you.

### Place Where. Locative Case

*Caesar Romae habitat, Caius Athēnis.* Caesar lives at Rome, Caius at Athens.

*Caesar in Africa nunc habitat.* Caesar is now living in Africa.

These sentences give examples of how to translate *place where* in Latin. The Rule is—Generally use *in* and the *ablative* : but with the name of a town or a small island (*i.e.* an island consisting only of a town with the same name) which is a singular noun of the First or Second Declension use the *genitive*, with all

others the *ablative*, i.e. with plural nouns of First and Second Declension and all nouns of Third, Fourth and Fifth.

### Exercise 9 (a)

1. Zamae autem Hannibalem Scipio superavit. 2. Syracusis quidem Cicero annum unum habitavit. 3. Magnam hostium multitudinem Caesar oppugnavit. 4. Karthagine bellum mente agitabamus. 5. Caesar fortitudine cunctos superabat. 6. In Africa multae et magnae ferae sunt. 7. Athenis, Atheniensium urbe, multa et pulchra templa sunt. 8. Hac ratione Hannibal magnae civitatis amicitiam conciliavit. 9. Pecuniae cupiditate multi homines flagrant. 10. Non est meae consuetudinis diu Cumis habitare.

### Vocabulary 9

*Amor*, -ōris, m....love  
*Athēnae*, -arum, f....Athens  
*Atheniensis*, -is, m....Athenian  
*Bellicōsus*, -a, -um...warlike  
*Carthāgo*, -inis, f....Carthage  
*Cumae*, -arum, f....Cumae  
*Fama*, -ae, f....glory  
*Fera*, -ae, f....wild beast  
*Habito*, -are...to live, to dwell  
*Hāc*...abl. fem. of *Hic* = this  
*Lux*, *lucis*, f....light  
*Natio*, -nis, f....tribe, nation

*Pompeius*, -i, m....Pompeius (a famous Roman)  
*Prima luce*...at break of day (abl. of time)  
*Quidem*...indeed (adverb)  
*Statua*, -ae, f....statue  
*Syracusae*, -arum, f....Syracuse (in Sicily)  
*Templum*, -i, n....temple  
*Unus*, -a, -um...one  
*Zama*, -ae, f....Zama (town near Carthage)

### Latin Sayings

1. *infra dignitatem*.
2. *Solitudinem faciunt, pacem appellant*.—*Tacitus*, "Agricola" (said by the British chieftain about the Romans).

3. Beneficium accipere libertatem est vendere.
4. Magna est veritas et praevalebit (prevail).

## False Teeth

5. Thais habet nigros, niveos Laecania dentes.

Quae ratio est? emptos haec habet, illa suos.

—*Martial*.

*haec*, lit. "this (woman) here", "the latter".

*illa* „ "that" „ "there", "the former".

## LESSON X

## ADJECTIVES, CLASS II.—AMANS.—GENITIVE OF PRICE

The remaining adjectives in Latin should not give any trouble. You remember the adjectives we have had already ended in the nominative in *-us*, *-a*, *-um*, and were declined like nouns of the First and Second Declensions. The other adjectives are declined like nouns of the Third Declension, or are indeclinable (that is, they have one form for all cases). The former are easily declined, because, with the exception of the *Present Participle* and the *comparative form* (to be explained later), they have all *-i* for the ablative singular, *-ium* for the genitive plural, and *-ia* for the nominative neuter plural respectively. Here is an example of each kind :—

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	
1.	<i>Omnis</i>	<i>omnis</i>	<i>omne</i>	all
2.	<i>Acer</i>	<i>ācris</i>	<i>ācre</i>	keen, spirited
3.	<i>Ingens</i>	<i>ingens</i>	<i>ingens</i>	huge

From this you infer that in the nominative they may be of one, two or three terminations; but they all form the remaining cases in a similar manner. Below, each is declined in full. Note the similarity between the case-endings and those of the nouns of the Third Declension.

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom. & Voc.	Omnis	omne	Omnēs	omnia
Acc.	Omnem	omne	Omnēs	omnia
Gen.	Omnis		Omnium	
Dat. & Abl.	Omni		Omnibus	

	Singular.			Plural.	
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom. & Voc.	Ācer	ācris	ācre	Ācrēs	ācria
Acc.	Ācrem		ācre	Acrēs	ācria
Gen.	Ācris			Ācrium	
Dat. & Abl.	Acri			Acribus	

	Singular.		Plural.	
	Masc. Fem. & Neut.		Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom. & Voc.	Ingens		Ingentēs	ingentia
Acc.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Ingentēs	ingentia
	Ingentem	ingens		
Gen.	Ingentis		Ingentium	
Dat. & Abl.	Ingenti		Ingentibus	

Note that in all three the masculine, feminine and neuter are the same in the genitive singular and plural, and in the dative and ablative singular and plural, and that *the ablative sing. ends in -i*.

### Amans

You remember we got the Present stem of *am-o* by dropping the personal ending *-o*. If we add to this

-ans we get *am-ans*, which means *lov-ing*. This part of the verb, because it is *partly* a verb and *partly* an adjective, we call the *Participle*; and since it refers to present time we call it the *Present Participle*. It is declined exactly like *ingens*, but has -e in the ablative singular (*amante*), when it functions as a participle, but -i when it is used as an adjective.

### Examples of the Ablative Singular

Similarly, Present Participle, *monēre* — *monens*,  
*monentis*, etc.

„ „ „ *regere* — *regens*,  
*regentis*, etc.

„ „ „ *audire* — *audiens*,  
*audientis*, etc.

*Ab amanti filia*, “by a loving daughter”, but *Ab amante puerum filia*, “by a daughter loving (*i.e.* who loves) a boy”.

### Genitive of Price

*Hoc donum maximi aestimo*. I value this gift at a very great price.

In cases like this the price is sometimes put as the *genitive* of an *adjective*. This is called the *genitive of price*.

Similarly *magni*, “at a great price”.

### Exercise 10 (a)

1. Hostes quidem sese armantes fugavimus. 2. Jam enim omnes inimicos superaverat. 3. Tum post tridie ingens hostium multitudo Caesarem oppugnabat.

4. Namque prudentem maximi semper aestimamus.  
 5. Scipio quoque uxorem suam amore acri amabat.  
 6. Mox acribus equis Carthaginienses oppugnabitis et fugabitis. 7. Catonem magni, pluris Caesarem Romani aestimabant. 8. Hamilcar enim non solum hostes a muris Carthaginis fugavit, sed etiam ingentem pecuniae copiam comparavit. 9. Tum consilia ducis omnia milites maximi aestimabant. 10. Fortibus militibus praemia ingentia Caesar dabat.

### Vocabulary 10

<i>Acer, acris, ācre</i> ...passionate, fiery	<i>Nam</i> or <i>namque</i> , conj....for
<i>Aestimo, -are</i> ...count, reckon	<i>Non solum . . . sed etiam</i> ...not only . . . but also
<i>Cato, ōnis, m.</i> ...Cato (a famous Roman)	<i>Parvus, -a, -um</i> ...little
<i>Comparo, -are</i> ...to prepare	<i>Parvi</i> ...at a low value
<i>Do, dare</i> ...to give	<i>Plus, pluris</i> ...more
<i>Dux, -cis, m.</i> ...general	<i>Postridiē</i> ...on the next day
<i>Etiam</i> ...still (conj.)	<i>Praemium, -ii, n.</i> ...reward
<i>Explōro, -are</i> ...to explore	<i>Quoque</i> ...also
<i>Fortis, -e</i> ...brave, strong	<i>Sēsē</i> ...himself, themselves, etc.
<i>Fugo, -are</i> ...to put to flight	(acc.) another form of <i>se</i>
<i>Miles, -itis, m.</i> ...soldier	<i>Suus, -a, -um</i> ...his own, her own, its own
<i>Mox</i> ...soon	

### Revision of Vocabulary:

Out of the Latin words you have already learnt, write down those to which the following English words are related—

conservative, imperial, propagate, virile, cupidity, popular, corporal, amorous, defamatory, plural, bus.

### Latin Phrases

1. Fortuna favet fortibus.
2. Annus mirabilis.

## Latin Extracts

3. Omnia vincit amor.—*Virgil*.  
 4. Sed fugit interea, fugit irreparabile tempus.—  
*Virgil*.  
 5. Amantium irae amoris integratio est.—*Terence*.  
 6. Ars longa, vita brevis.  
 7. *To an Unpopular Poet* (Nimis poeta es)

Et stanti legis et legis sedenti,  
 currenti legis et legis jacenti.

In *thermas* <sup>1</sup> fugio : sonas ad aurem.

*Piscinam* <sup>2</sup> peto : non *licet* <sup>3</sup> natare.

Ad cenam propero : tenes *euntem*.<sup>4</sup>

Ad cenam venio : fugas edentem.

Lassus dormio : suscitās jacentem.

Vir justus, probus, innocens *timeris*.<sup>5</sup>

—*Martial*.

## LESSON XI

FOURTH DECLENSION.—PRESENT AND IMPERFECT  
SUBJUNCTIVE.—FINAL CLAUSES

	<i>Exercitus</i> , m....army.		<i>Cornu</i> , n....horn.	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Exercit-us	-ūs	Corn-ū	-ua
Acc.	Exercit-um	-ūs	Corn-ū	-ua
Gen.	Exercit-ūs	-uum	Corn-ūs	-uum
Dat.	Exercit-ūi	-ibus	Corn-ūi	-ibus
Abl.	Exercit-ū	-ibus	Corn-u	-ibus

You will find this declension very easy. The nominative always ends in *-us* in masculine and feminine nouns, and in *-u* in neuter nouns. The genitive always

<sup>1</sup> Baths.                      <sup>2</sup> Swimming-pool.

<sup>4</sup> (Me) going, *i.e.* as I go.

<sup>3</sup> It is allowed.

<sup>5</sup> You are feared.

ends in *-ūs* (pronounced like *oo* in *mood*). The nouns are declined like the two above.

Here is an irregular noun which is so common that it should be learned off by heart. In some cases, it will be observed, it takes Second Declension forms.

*Domus*, f....house.

	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Dom-us	Dom-ūs
Acc.	Dom-um	Dom-ōs
Gen.	Dom-ūs	Dom-uum or -ōrum
Dat.	Dom-ūi	Dom-ibus
Abl.	Dom-ō	Dom-ibus

*Domī* means "at home"; *domō*, "from home"; *domum*, "homewards". N.B.—*Domī* is an old "place-where" or locative case.

### Present and Imperfect Subjunctive

Hitherto in our lessons on the verb we have talked only of the *Indicative Mood*, but there is another mood, called the *Subjunctive Mood*. In this mood there are four tenses—the *Present*, *Imperfect*, *Perfect* and *Pluperfect*. The meaning of the mood is best learned by practice.

The Present Subjunctive is formed from the present stem *am-*.

	Singular	Plural.
1.	Am-em	Am-ēmus
2.	Am-ēs	Am-ētis
3.	Am-ēt	Am-ent

You may notice that each person, save the first, is got by changing *a* of the *Present Indicative* into *e*, and so with all verbs of the First Conjugation.

The present subjunctive of *monere* is *moneam, moneas*, etc.

„ „ „ *regere* is *regam, regas*, etc.

„ „ „ *audire* is *audiam, audias*, etc.

„ „ „ *esse* is *sim*  
*sis*  
*sit*  
*simus*  
*sitis*  
*sint*.

The Present Infinitive of *amō* is *am-āre*, to love. To get the Imperfect Subjunctive add *-m* to this, and conjugate as follows :—

Singular.	Plural.
1. <i>Amāre-m</i>	<i>Amarē-mus</i>
2. <i>Amāre-s</i>	<i>Amarē-tis</i>
3. <i>Amāre-t</i>	<i>Amāre-nt</i>

The imperfect subjunctive of *monēre* is *monērem*, etc.

„ „ „ *regere* is *regerem*, etc.

„ „ „ *audire* is *audīrem*, etc.

„ „ „ *esse* is *essem*, etc.

You will observe that every tense, Indicative or Subjunctive, which you have had so far ends in all its persons in *-m* (or *-o*), *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt*. These are the letters you add to the Present Infinitive to make the Imperfect Subjunctive. This is so in almost every verb in Latin. If you know the Present Infinitive, then, of any verb, you can always form the Imperfect Subjunctive.

Purpose or Final Clauses, expressed by *Ut* and *Ne*

He is arming his soldiers *to attack* the enemy.

He has armed his soldiers *in order to attack* the enemy.

He will arm his soldiers *for the purpose of attacking* (that he may attack, etc., etc.) the enemy.

On consideration of these sentences, it will be found that the three versions after "soldiers" all express the same purpose, although they use different words. In Latin the translation for each and all is commonly the same :—

*Milites armat (armavit, armabit) ut hostes oppugnet.*

*Literally*, His soldiers he is arming (etc.) that the enemy he may attack.

### Sequence of Tenses

The Present Subjunctive is used in such clauses expressing a purpose after a Present, Perfect (with "have") or Future tense in the main clause.

*Note.*—The Perfect must mean "has or have armed", etc., not simply "armed".

But the *Imperfect Subjunctive* is used in such clauses after an *Imperfect, Perfect* (without "have") or *Pluperfect* in the main clause.

*E.g.* he was arming (armed, had armed) his soldiers to attack (that he might attack, etc., etc.) the enemy. *Milites armabat (armavit, armaverat) ut hostes oppugnaret.*

After this we shall call the Present, Perfect (with "have") and Future *primary tenses*; the Imperfect, Perfect and Pluperfect we shall call *historic tenses*.

Note that "that not" is *ne*. For example: *Milites armabat ne hostes urbem oppugnarent.* He was arming his soldiers *that* the enemy might *not* attack the city.

## Exercise II (a)

1. Itaque Carthaginienses magno cum exercitu in Italiam navigaverunt ut Romanos oppugnarent. 2. Prima luce equitatus magnam Poenorum manum fugavit. 3. Cives postea tres exercitus comparabunt ne urbem hostes oppugnent. 4. Interim Gallos concitabat ut saltum noctu occuparent. 5. Cum omnibus gentibus Romani pugnauerunt. 6. Cornua caprorum sunt maxima et dura. 7. Hannibal et legati postridie domi cenaverunt. 8. Tertio mense igitur Romam domo navigabimus. 9. Itaque sese armavit ut domum conservet. 10. Namque hoc consilium comprobaveratis ut casum vitaretis.

## Vocabulary II

*Casus*, -ūs, m....disaster  
*Ceno*, -are...to dine  
*Domi*...at home (called the locative case of *Domus*)  
*Durus*, -a, -um...hard  
*Equitatus*, -ūs, m....cavalry  
*Exercitus*, -ūs, m....army  
*Igitur*...therefore (never first in the sentence)  
*Interim*...meanwhile  
*Legātus*, -i, m....officer

*Magistrātus*, -ūs, m....magistrate  
*Manus*, -ūs, f....(1) hand, (2) band  
*Mensis*, -is, m....month  
*Noctū*...by night (adv.)  
*Occupo*, -are...to seize  
*Saltus*, -ūs, m....defile  
*Tertius*, -a, -um...third  
*Tres*, *tria*, n....three  
*Vito*, -are...to avoid

## Fourth Declension Latin Words in English

*hiatus*...yawning, gap  
*prospectus*...forward looking  
*apparatus*...(look up *apparo* in vocab.)  
*consensus*...(look up *consentio*)

*impromptu*...(in *promptu* dicere "to have something in readiness to say")  
*in situ*...in position  
*in statu quo* (*status*, -ūs...position)  
*pari passu*...with equal step

## Outside a Roman Theatre in Spain

(An inscription on a stone discovered in Spain and now in the British Museum.)

CIRCUS PLENUS  
IANUAE CLAUSAE <sup>1</sup>  
CLAMOR INGENS

## One Author to Another

Cur non mitto meos tibi,<sup>2</sup> Pontiliane, libellos? <sup>3</sup>

Ne mihi <sup>4</sup> tu mittas, Pontiliane, tuos.—*Martial*.

## The Motto of the S.C.M.

Ut omnes unum sint.

## LESSON XII

FIFTH DECLENSION.—PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT  
SUBJUNCTIVE.—*CUM* AND SUBJUNCTIVE

Of the nouns there is only one declension left—the *Fifth*. This again is a small and easy one. The nouns are all declined like the one given below. Their genitive ends in *-ei*, the nominative in *-es*; there are only two nouns in the declension in which the plural is found complete—*dies*, *diēi*, m. or f., a day; *res*, *rei*, f., a thing.

<sup>1</sup> *Ianuae*, "doors". *Clausae*, "shut"—past participle passive of *claudo* (I shut).

<sup>2</sup> *tibi*, "to you".

<sup>3</sup> "little books." Diminutive of *liber*, "book".

<sup>4</sup> *mihi*, "to me".

	<i>Dies, m., f.<sup>1</sup>...a day.</i>		<i>Res, f....a thing.</i>	
	Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. & V.	Di-ēs	di-ēs	R-ēs	r-ēs
Acc.	Di-em	di-ēs	R-em	r-ēs
Gen.	Di-ēi	di-ērum	R-ei	r-ērum
Dat.	Di-ēi	di-ēbus	R-ei	r-ēbus
Abl.	Di-ē	di-ēbus	R-ē	r-ēbus

We called *am-āre* the Present Infinitive, and added *-m* to form the Imperfect Subjunctive. To form the Perfect Subjunctive and Pluperfect Subjunctive we go to a different stem—the *Perfect stem*, which in the First Conjugation is formed by adding *-v* to the present stem, e.g. *amavi*. This stem is, in this verb, *amāv-*. To this add the terminations given below and you get the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive.

The Infinitive which means *to have loved* is called the *Perfect Infinitive*, because it denotes a completed action. This is always formed by adding *-isse* to the *Perfect stem*, e.g. *amavisse*, and it is worth noting that the Pluperfect Subjunctive is formed from it by adding *-m*, *-s*, *-t*, *-mus*, *-tis*, *-nt* (compare the formation of the Imperfect Subjunctive). The meanings of these two tenses will also be best learned by practice.

PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.		PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
1. Amāv-erim	amāv-erimus	Amāv-issem	amāv-issēmus
2. Amāv-eris	amāv-eritis	Amāv-issēs	amāv-issētis
3. Amāv-erit	amāv-erint	Amāv-isset	amāv-issent

Similarly, the Perfect Subjunctive of *monēre* is *monuerim*,  
etc.

„ „ „ „ *regere* is *rexerim*,  
etc.

<sup>1</sup> In the plural this noun is masculine only.

Similarly, the Perfect Subjunctive of *audire* is *audierim*,  
etc., or *audi-*  
*verim*, etc.

„ „ „ „ *esse* is *fuerim*  
Similarly, the Pluperfect Subjunctive of *monere* is *monu-*  
*issem*, etc.

„ „ „ „ *regere* is *rexis-*  
*sem*, etc.

„ „ „ „ *audire* is *audis-*  
*sem*, etc., or  
*audivissem*,  
etc.

„ „ „ „ *esse* is *fuissem*

For full conjugations see Tables of Verbs in Part III.

### Cum and Subjunctive

1. *Cum Hannibal Hispanos concitaret, bellum in mente agitabant Romani.*

2. *Cum Hannibal Hispanos concitavisset, bellum renovaverunt Romani.*

1. Since (When) Hannibal was stirring up the Spaniards, the Romans began to think of war.

2. When (Since) Hannibal had stirred up the Spaniards, the Romans renewed the war.

*Since* or *when*, with a past tense in English, is translated by *cum* (sometimes written *quum*) with Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive in Latin.

When the English tense denotes a *continuous action* (like *was stirring*) use the *Imperfect Subjunctive*.

When the English tense denotes a *completed action* (like *had stirred*) use the *Pluperfect Subjunctive*.

### Exercise 12 (a)

1. Tum magna sperabatis, cogitabatis maesta. 2. Boni et bonae virtutem, sapientiam, fidem amant.

3. Itaque cum primam aciem superavisset, secundam oppugnavi. 4. Hodie haud dubie aciem hostium fugabunt. 5. Cum igitur in acie Romani starent, pugnare dubitavimus. 6. Cum Galli legiones Romanas superavissent, urbs Roma erat in magno periculo. 7. Summa enim spe Romam navigavimus. 8. Cum deos multa<sup>1</sup> oravisset, viros armavit. 9. Hannibal contra summa fide pacem conservabat.

## Vocabulary 12

<i>Acies</i> , -ēi, f....line of battle, battle array	<i>Hic</i> ....abl. plur. of <i>Hic</i> = this
<i>Considero</i> , -are...to consider, to think	<i>Hodie</i> ...to-day (adv.)
<i>Contra</i> ...on the other hand (adv.)	<i>Legio</i> , <i>legionis</i> , f....legion
<i>Deus</i> , <i>dei</i> , m....god	<i>Maestus</i> , -a, -um...sad
<i>E contrario</i> ...on the contrary (adv. phrase)	<i>Oro</i> , -are...to pray, ask for...
<i>Fides</i> , -ēi, f....good faith	<i>Primus</i> , -a, -um...first
<i>Haud</i> ...not	<i>Respublica</i> , <sup>a</sup> <i>rei publicae</i> , f....commonwealth
<i>Haud dubiē</i> ...without doubt (literally: not doubtfully) (adv.)	<i>Sapientia</i> , -ae, f....wisdom
	<i>Secundus</i> , -a, -um...second
	<i>Spes</i> , <i>spei</i> , f....hope
	<i>Sto</i> , <i>stare</i> <sup>3</sup> ...to stand

## Fifth Declension Words in English

- series (look up *sero*, "I join").
- species (originally "appearance", later "sort", "kind").
- a.m. stands for *ante meridiem*.  
p.m. stands for *post meridiem*.

What do these words mean? See vocabulary.

- sine die.
- prima facie.

<sup>1</sup> Note.—*Oro* can take two accusatives, one, the person asked, and the other, the thing asked for. "Ask many things of the gods."

<sup>2</sup> Note.—This word is a compound of *res* and the feminine of *publicus* = public. Decline it like any noun and adjective—*respublica rem publicam, rei publicae*, etc.

<sup>3</sup> Note.—The perfect, *stēti*, is irregular.

## Two Famous Lines

1. *Moribus antiquis res*<sup>1</sup> *stat Romana virisque.*—*Ennius.*

2. *Sunt lacrimae rerum*<sup>2</sup>; *mentem mortalia tangunt.*—*Virgil.*

## Phrases

1. In medias res.
2. Mox nox, in rem.
3. Salus reipublicae suprema lex.

## LESSON XIII

SUPINE, FUTURE PARTICIPLE ACTIVE AND PAST PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.—SUPINE AFTER A VERB OF MOTION.—NOUN AND PARTICIPLE FOR ENGLISH ABSTRACT NOUN.—PRONOUNS

Omitting the *Gerund* and *Gerundive*, and the *Imperative*, which we shall treat of farther on, we have now had all the *Active Voice* of the First Conjugation except one or two parts which come from a stem we have not mentioned yet. In *amo* this stem is *amat-*, which you get by dropping the termination *-um* in a part of the verb called the *Supine*—*amatum*. This form has the same translation in English as the *Present Infinitive* (*to love*, for example), but is used in one special case. We say in Latin :—

*Ad Hispaniam navigavit hostes oppugnatum.*  
He sailed to Spain to attack the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> *res Romana*, i.e. the Roman state; cf. *respublica*.

<sup>2</sup> *rerum*—does this mean “of things” or “for things”? A famous, beautiful and untranslatable line.

In Latin the Present Infinitive *oppugnare* would be quite wrong. You could have used, however, *ut* and the *Imperfect Subjunctive* (Lesson XI). The *Supine*, then, may be used to denote *purpose* after a *verb of motion*.

From this stem *amat-* you can form three other parts of the verb. (No matter what the verb is, the principle is the same.)

1. Supine stem + *-u* gives the *Second Supine*: thus *amat* + *-u* = *amatu*, meaning *in loving*. This is not often used except in poetry. It follows adjectives only and corresponds to the English adjective and infinitive.

e.g. *mirabile dictu*—wonderful to tell.

2. Supine stem + *-urus, -a, -um*, gives the *Future Participle Active*: thus *amat-urus, -a, -um*, meaning *about to love, likely to love, or intending to love*.

3. Supine stem + *-us, -a, -um*, gives the *Past Participle Passive*: thus *amatus, -a, -um*, meaning *having been loved*. These two participles are just like adjectives; when they go with nouns or pronouns, they must agree with them in gender, number and case as adjectives do. They are declined like adjectives of Class I. (Look back to Lesson V as a reminder.)

For practice, look up the Supine stem of *moneo, rego, audio*, and then write down the Future Participle Active and Past Participle Passive of each verb, as we have already done with *amo*. (V. p. 291 ff., and Key, p. 254.)

English derivatives are usually taken from the Supine, e.g., *monitor, rector, auditor*, etc.

### Note on the Past Participle Passive

The Latin Past Participle Passive denotes an action which is past in time and passive in sense. Thus *amatus* means *having been loved*, and nothing else. English in many cases uses its participles loosely. We say, "Mounting his horse he rode away", "Drawing his sword he slew the man", "Charging at full speed they routed the enemy", where in each case we mean, strictly speaking, "having mounted", "having drawn", "having charged", etc. We must never use our Participles in this loose way in Latin. The verb must denote a completed action before the Past Participle Passive can be used. There is no Past Participle Active in Latin.

### Abstract Nouns in English and Latin

As a rule Latin does not like abstract nouns (such nouns as conquest, rout, etc.), and has a very neat expression with the Past Participle Passive to get rid of them. Thus "before the preparation of the feast" becomes "before the feast prepared", *ante convivium paratum*; "before the rout of the Romans" becomes *ante Romanos fugatos*; "after the end of the supper" becomes *post cenam dimissam*. *Post* and *ante* are prepositions governing *convivium* and *cenam* in the accusative, and the Participles are in agreement with the nouns.

### The Four Parts of a Verb

As a general rule, then, in Latin you must know four parts before you can conjugate the verb :—

The *Present Indicative*.

The *Perfect Indicative*.

The *Supine*.

The *Present Infinitive*.

This last part tells the Conjugation—First, Second, Third or Fourth. The above four parts in the First Conjugation end as a rule in *-ō*, *-āvi*, *-ātum*, *-āre*, and it will be sufficient to note merely the irregular formations. Any verb, then, when given in the Present Indicative will easily be turned into the other stems by dropping of *-o* and the addition of these terminations *-āv-*, *-āt-*. There are only a few verbs which do not form their stems thus. Two common ones are—

*Dō, dēdi, dātum, dāre*, to give (note short *ā*).  
*Stō, stēti, stātum, stāre*, to stand.

### Pronouns. *Ego* and *tu*

Latin has pronouns to translate our English “I” and “you”, but remember as nominatives they are employed only when very emphatic. *Ego*, I, is declined thus :—

	Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>Ego</i>	I	<i>Nos</i>	we
Acc.	<i>Me</i>	me	<i>Nos</i>	us
Gen.	<i>Mei</i>	of me	<i>Nostrum</i> or <i>Nostri</i> <sup>1</sup>	of us
Dat.	<i>Mihi</i>	to me	<i>Nobis</i>	to us
Abl.	<i>Me</i>	from me	<i>Nobis</i>	from us

The Pronoun *Tu*, thou or you (singular) is declined thus :—

	Singular.		Plural.	
Nom.	<i>Tu</i>	thou (you)	<i>Vos</i>	you
Acc.	<i>Te</i>	thee (you)	<i>Vos</i>	you
Gen.	<i>Tui</i>	of thee (you)	<i>Vestrum</i> or <i>Vestri</i> <sup>1</sup>	of you
Dat.	<i>Tibi</i>	to thee (you)	<i>Vobis</i>	to you
Abl.	<i>Te</i>	from thee (you)	<i>Vobis</i>	from you

<sup>1</sup> *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are partitive genitives, e.g. *Unus nostrum*, “one of us”. *Nostri* and *vestri* are objective genitives, e.g. *Memor vestri*, “mindful of you”.

Note there is the same form for the masculine and feminine. Be careful to notice when the English "you" is singular and when plural, and to use the singular or plural accordingly in Latin.

### *Is, ea, id*

The Latin word for *that, those*, is declined as follows :—

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Is	ea	id	Eī (ii)	eae	ea
Acc.	Eum	eam	id	Eōs	eas	ea
Gen.	Eius (all genders)			Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Eī (all genders)			Eīs (iīs) (all genders)		
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō	Eīs (iīs) (all genders)		

The forms given in brackets are less common.

When used alone as a *pronoun* this means *he, she, it*, etc., as *Puer eam amat*, the boy loves *her*; but, *Puer eam puellam amat*, the boy loves *that* girl.

### Exercise 13 (a)

1. Cum autem Hannibal eam urbem occupaverit, manus dabimus. 2. Jovi optimo maximo hostiam immolatum Romam navigaverat. 3. Post occupatam urbem fines explorabitis. 4. Id factum initio risum spectantibus concitabat. 5. Deinde exercitum in litore collocatum oppugnabunt. 6. Eas hostium manus oppugnaturus magnas copias comparavit. 7. Hostes castra clam oppugnatos Romani subito fugaverant. 8. Oppida abalienata ut recuperaremus ad Africam navigaveramus. 9. Eum exercitum superatum spectaturi sunt. 10. Quot e magnis eis exercitibus patriam rursus spectaturi erant?

## Vocabulary 13

<i>Castra</i> , -orum, n....camp (Latin always plural)	<i>Jupiter optimus maximus</i> ...Jove most high and holy (acc.)
<i>Clam</i> ...secretly (adv.)	<i>Jovem</i> , gen. <i>Jovis</i> , dat. <i>Jovi</i> , abl. <i>Jove</i> )
<i>Collocō</i> , -āre...to station	<i>Manūs dare</i> ...to surrender ( <i>liter-</i> <i>ally</i> , to give hands)
<i>Deinde</i> ...next (adv.)	<i>Quot</i> ?...how many? (indeclinable pronoun)
<i>E</i> , <i>ex</i> ...out of ( <i>Ex</i> before vowel or <i>h</i> )	<i>Recupero</i> , -are...to recover
<i>Factum</i> , -i, n....deed, action	<i>Risus</i> , -ūs, m....laughter
<i>Hostia</i> , -ae, f....victim	<i>Rursus</i> ...again (adv.)
<i>Immolo</i> , -are...to sacrifice	<i>Subito</i> ...suddenly (adv.)
<i>Initio</i> ...in the beginning	
<i>Initium</i> , -ii, n....beginning	

## Latin Phrases

1. i.e. stands for *id est*.
2. *Pax vobiscum*.
3. *moriturus te saluto* (see *morior*).
4. *Non mihi, non tibi, sed nobis* (motto of a Public Library).
5. *Dictum* (*lit.* "a thing said"). *Obiter dictum*, "a remark by the way".
6. *Data* (*lit.* "things given").
7. *Erratum* (*lit.* "a thing erred"), i.e. a mistake.

## Latin Extracts

1. *Graecia capta* <sup>1</sup> *ferum victorem cepit*.<sup>2</sup>—*Horace*.
2. *Difficilis, facilis, jucundus, acerbus es idem* :  
*Nec tecum possum vivere nec sine te*.—*Martial*.

<sup>1</sup> Past participle of *capio*.

<sup>2</sup> Perfect of *capio*.

## LESSON XIV

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.—SE, SESE

Before doing the following exercises, you should revise the tenses of *all four conjugations*, as given in the Tables of Verbs in Part III. In fact it will help you to learn by heart at any rate the Present, Imperfect, and Future Indicative of each conjugation, noting carefully where the endings are different. Practice going through the tenses in other verbs besides *moneo*, *rego*, etc.

## Ablative Absolute

In Latin there is a common construction called the *Ablative Absolute*. Look at these examples :—

*Hac pugna pugnata urbem occupavit.* This battle having been fought, he seized the city.

*Urbibus abalienatis Carthaginem oppugnaverunt.* The cities having been estranged, they attacked Carthage.

*Hac pugna pugnata* and *urbibus abalienatis* have no grammatical connection with the rest of the sentence, and they are therefore put into the ablative case. We are less fond of using past participles in English, and would probably say instead: *After the battle*, and *When the cities had been estranged*. The Latin construction is briefer and neater.

The Ablative Absolute must never be used if it is possible to make the participle agree with the subject or object of the sentence; e.g. *The soldiers burnt the city which they had captured* must be translated *Milites captam urbem incenderunt*, not *Urbe capta, milites eam incenderunt*.

### Participles

The use of Participles in Latin can be seen from examples, *e.g.*

1. *Magister deceptus celeriter fugit.*

"When the master was tricked, he quickly fled."

2. *Magistrum deceptum pueri riserunt.*

"When the master was tricked, the boys laughed at him."

3. *Magistro decepto, pueri gaudebant.*

"When the master was tricked, the boys rejoiced."

N.B.—The Present Participle (*v.* Lesson XV) can similarly be used, *e.g.*

1. *Magistro errante, pueri gaudebant.*

"As the master was making a mistake, the boys rejoiced."

2. *Magistrum errantem pueri riserunt.*

"The boys laughed at the erring master."

### Se, Sese

Learn this pronoun off by heart.

Acc. <i>Se</i> or <i>sese</i>	} These forms are both singular and plural, masculine and feminine. They mean respectively—themselves, himself, herself, itself; of themselves, of himself, etc., etc.
Gen. <i>Sui</i>	
Dat. <i>Sibi</i>	
Abl. <i>Se</i> or <i>sese</i>	

This is called the *Reflexive Pronoun*, because it is used only when the *subject* of the verb is denoted as acting on itself, that is, the action of the verb is bent back (*re* = back, *flecto* = I bend) on its subject.

*Hostes sese interficiunt.* The enemy are slaying themselves.

*Mortem sibi adsciscit.* He commits suicide (adjudges death to himself).

## Suus

Connected with the reflexive pronoun in Latin is the possessive adjective *suus*, *sua*, *suum*, "his, her, its", which is used only when we are referring to the subject of the sentence. Otherwise *his* would be *ejus*. In fact, however, unless there is some stress on the adjective or pronoun, or unless some ambiguity would arise if it were omitted, Latin does not use possessive adjectives or pronouns at all. Compare Sentences 5 and 8 of Exercise 14 (a) for the use of these words, and also the following :—

*Patrem suum interfecit.* He killed his own father.

*Patrem ejus interfecit.* He killed his (somebody else's) father.

## Exercise 14 (a)

1. Magnam pecuniae copiam habemus et semper habebimus. 2. Nunc omnes gentes vincunt et semper vincent. 3. In Hispaniam magnum exercitum ducam. 4. Romanos tertio die videbunt et vincent. 5. Ante ejus adventum et mari et terra male res gerebant. 6. Hamilcar ubi bellum gerit nunquam hostes vincit. 7. Sed extremo prope ad desperationem perveniunt. 8. Oppida Africae valentissima imperio suo tenet. 9. At Hamilcar magnas res secunda fortuna gerit. 10. Hamilcaris perpetuum odium erga Romanos secundum bellum Punicum concitabit.

## Vocabulary 14

*Adventus*, -ūs, m....arrival

*Ante*...before (prep. governing acc.)

*At*...but (conj.)

*Desperatio*, -nis, f....despair (act of despairing)

*Duco*, *duxi*, *ductum*, *ducere*...to lead

*Erga*...towards, for (prep. governing acc.)

*Extremō*...at last (adv.)

*Fortūna*, -ae, f....fortune

*Gero*, *gessi*, *gestum*, *gerere*...to wage, to carry out

*Habeo*, *habui*, *habitu* *habere*...to have

<i>Malè</i> ...badly (adv.)	<i>Secundus</i> , -a, -um...favourable
<i>Odium</i> , <i>odii</i> , n....hatred	or second
<i>Oppidum</i> , -i, n....town	<i>Teneo</i> , <i>tenui</i> , <i>tentum</i> , <i>tenēre</i> ...to hold
<i>Perpetuus</i> , -a, -um...undying	<i>Valentissimus</i> , -a, -um...very strong, strongest
<i>Pervenio</i> , -vēni, -ventum, -venire ...to arrive	<i>Video</i> , <i>vidi</i> , <i>visum</i> , <i>vidēre</i> ...to see
<i>Prōpe</i> ...almost (adv.)	<i>Vinco</i> , <i>vici</i> , <i>victum</i> , <i>vincēre</i> ...to conquer
<i>Punicus</i> , -a, -um...Punic, Carthaginian	

## Latin Phrases

1. D.V. (stands for *Deo volente*).
2. vice versa (*i.e.* a change having been made).
3. Fortis qui se vincit.
4. Homo doctus in se semper divitias habet.

## LESSON XV

INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLES.—ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.—*HIC, HAEC, HOC*

In the First Conjugation, if we add -ans to the present stem, we get the *Present Participle*—

Am-ans.

Similarly, adding -ens to the other three, but inserting *i* before it in the Fourth Conjugation, we get—

Mon-ens, reg-ens, aud-iens  
(Genitive) Mon-entis, reg-entis, aud-ientis.

Remember the terminations of the Present Infinitives—*-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ere*, *-īre*.

## The Perfect Stem

When the verb is regular, to get this stem add to the present stem in the—

First Conjugation	<i>av</i>	.	.	<i>amāv-</i>
Second Conjugation	<i>u</i>	.	.	<i>monu-</i>
Third Conjugation	<i>s</i>	.	.	<i>rex-</i> (for <i>regs</i> )
Fourth Conjugation	<i>iv</i>	.	.	<i>audīv-</i>

If the verb is irregular consult the Dictionary or Vocabulary, or the table of irregular verbs, and learn the Perfect by heart.

Note in *reg-o* that *g + s* gives *x*.

In each case if to this stem we add *-isse* we get the *Perfect Infinitive* :—

<i>Amāv-isse</i>	.	.	to have loved
<i>Monu-isse</i>	.	.	to have warned, advised
<i>Rex-isse</i>	.	.	to have ruled
<i>Audiv-isse</i>	.	.	to have heard

### The Supine Stem

The *Supine* must be learned from the Table of Verbs at the end of the volume, and then the stem is got by dropping *-um*; by adding *-u* to this you get the *Second Supine*; by adding *-ūrus* you get the *Future Participle* (which is declined like an adjective) :—

SUPINE.		SECOND SUPINE.		FUTURE PARTICIPLE.
Amāt-um	gives	amāt-ū	and	amat-ūrus (-a, -um, etc.)
Monit-um	„	monit-ū	„	monit-ūrus (-a, -um, etc.)
Rect-um	„	rect-ū	„	rect-ūrus (-a, -um, etc.)
Audīt-um	„	audīt-ū	„	audīt-ūrus (-a, -um, etc.)

Join to the Future Participle the Present Infinitive of the verb *esse* (to be), and you get the *Future Infinitive* :—

<i>Amaturus esse</i>	.	.	to-be about-to-love
<i>Moniturus esse</i>	.	.	to-be about-to-advise
<i>Recturus esse</i>	.	.	to-be about-to-rule
<i>Auditurus esse</i>	.	.	to-be about-to-hear

### Accusative and Infinitive

*Scio eum stultum esse* means either “ I know him to be a fool ”, or “ I know that he is a fool ”. Latin has only one way, *i.e.* the first, of expressing *Indirect Statement*.

After a verb of *saying* or *thinking*, English usually has a “ that ” clause, which we call a noun clause; but

in Latin a peculiar construction is used, called the accusative and infinitive. Thus the subject of each of the above "that" clauses, nominative in English, becomes accusative in Latin; and the verb becomes, though Indicative in English, Infinitive in Latin, while "that" is dropped. The tense used is the tense of the actual words of the speaker.

Thus, *Dicit Romānos arma adversariis*  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} tradere \\ tradidisse \\ tradituros esse \end{array} \right.$  means

He says that the Romans  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{are surrendering} \\ \text{have surrendered} \\ \text{will surrender} \end{array} \right.$  their arms to the enemy.

The words used in each case by the speaker were :—

1. "The Romans are surrendering". Therefore use here the Present Infinitive.
2. "The Romans have surrendered". Therefore use here the Perfect Infinitive.
3. "The Romans will surrender". Therefore use here the Future Infinitive.

If we had had "he" for "the Romans" and the sentences had been "He says that he is surrendering, has surrendered," etc., the pronoun "he" might have given some trouble. If you had translated it by *eum*, you would have meant "He says that somebody else"; if by *se*, "He says that he himself", etc. *Se* and *suus* in the accusative and infinitive clause usually refer to the subject of the main sentence. E.g. *Dixit se suam magis quam ejus patriam amāre*, "He said that he loved his own more than that man's country". The English does not show clearly what were the man's actual words; the Latin does.

N.B. "I say that...not". Latin does not say *dico...non*, but *nego* (I deny), e.g. *Nego hoc verum esse* = "I say that this is not true".

Remember the Future Participle agrees with its subject in gender, number and case. Thus :—

He says that that {man  
woman} will surrender {his  
her} arms.

*Dicit {eum  
eam} arma {traditurum esse.  
tradituram esse.*

*Hic, haec, hoc...* this (pronoun and adjective)

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hōc	Hi	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hōc	Hōs	has	haec
Gen.	Hūius (all genders)			Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic (all genders)			His (all genders)		
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc }			

This pronoun may be used as an adjective with a noun. Thus :—

(Pronoun) *Hi totam abalienaverunt Africam.* These estranged all Africa.

(Adjective) *Hi montes ardui sunt.* These mountains are steep.

### Exercise 15 (a)

1. Hamilcar se putat hujus belli finem facturum esse.
2. Hic eum putat horum bellorum finem facere.
3. Haec eum putat hoc fecisse.
4. Si hic negaverit se hoc bellum compositurum esse, ex Sicilia decedemus.
5. In Africam veniemus hunc interfectum et Carthaginem deletum.
6. Vettones eum in proelio pugnantes interfecerunt.
7. Astantes dicunt hunc esse fortem virum.
8. Ex Sicilia prima luce se decessuros esse dicunt.
9. Ex Sicilia decessuri cum hoc rege pacem conciliatis.
10. Cras Romam advenient.

## Vocabulary 15

<i>Adstantes</i> ...bystanders (nom. mas. plur. partic.)	<i>Decēdo, decessi, decessum, decēdere</i> ...to depart, to leave (with the abl.)
<i>Adsto, adstiti, adstare</i> ...to stand by (no Supine)	<i>Dīco, dixi, dictum, dīcere</i> ...to say
<i>Advenio, -vēni, -ventum, -venire</i> ...to arrive	<i>Facio, fēci, factum, facere</i> <sup>1</sup> ...to make or do
<i>Compōno, -posui, -positum, -ponēre</i> ...to settle, to end	<i>Interficio, -fēci, -fectum, -ficere</i> , <sup>1</sup> ...to slay
<i>Crās</i> ...to-morrow (adv.)	<i>Puto, -are</i> ...to think
<i>Deleo, delēvi, delētum, delēre</i> ...to destroy	<i>Venio, vēni, ventum, venire</i> ...to come

## Revision of Vocabulary:

Out of the Latin words you have already learnt, write down those to which the following English words are related—

manuscript, initial, Lancaster, fact, recuperate, belligerent, invincible, delete, malefactor.

I do not love you, Dr. Fell

Non amo te, Sabidi<sup>2</sup>; nec possum dicere quare;

Hoc tantum possum dicere, "non amo te".

—*Martial*.

## The Primrose Way

Facilis descensus Averno;<sup>3</sup>

Noctes atque dies patet atri janua Ditis:<sup>4</sup>

Sed revocare gradum superasque<sup>5</sup> evadere ad auras,

Hoc opus, hic labor est.

—*Virgil, Aen. VI.*

<sup>1</sup> Verbs in *-io* with infinitive in *-ere* belong to the Third Conjugation, but are conjugated in the parts from the Present stem like verbs of the Fourth. The Present Imperative usually ends in *e*. *Dico, duco, facio* have, however, Present Imperative *Dic, duc, fac*.

<sup>2</sup> The vocative of masculine nouns ending in *-ius* ends in *-i*. *E.g. Corneli, "O Cornelius"*.

<sup>3</sup> The Lower World.

<sup>4</sup> Dis is another name for Pluto.

<sup>5</sup> *-que* joined to the end of a word = *et*.

## LESSON XVI

ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE.—QUI, QUAE, QUOD.—  
ADJECTIVES WITH -IUS IN THE GENITIVE AND -I  
IN THE DATIVE.—IPSE, -A, -UM

Before doing the following exercises, revise the Perfect, Pluperfect and Future Perfect tenses (*v.* Tables of Verbs at end of book) of all four conjugations.

## Some More Hints on the Accusative and Infinitive

1. *Dixit se arma trādere or tradidisse.*
2. *Dixit se arma tradidisse.*
3. *Dixit se arma traditurum esse.*
1. He said that he surrendered.
2. He said that he had surrendered.
3. He said that he would surrender.

In the previous Chapter we made the verb of *saying* Present tense in each case; when this verb is *Past* the difficulty is greater.

In each sentence you must find the actual words of the speaker in order to get the tense of the *Infinitive* to use. You must try to find out the exact words which the speaker said.

Thus, in sentence 1 the speaker said,

- either* (a) I surrender, *or* I am surrendering  
*or* (b) I surrendered (*e.g.* when I was captured).

If (a) gives the actual words used, use the *Present Infinitive*.

If (b) gives the actual words used, use the *Perfect Infinitive*. The English is not clear: you can tell which was used only by the sense. As far as the English goes, either meaning may be implied.

So, when translating from Latin, after a Past tense of a verb of *saying* the Present and Perfect Infinitive are both translated by the form used in sentence 1.

In sentence 2 the actual words were *I have surrendered* : therefore translate this by the *Perfect Infinitive*.

In sentence 3 the actual words were *I shall surrender* : therefore translate this by the *Future Infinitive*.

### Qui, quae, quod

The Relative Pronoun, *who, which*, is declined as follows in Latin. You will observe all these pronouns we have given are irregular in declension, yet have similarities worth remarking.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Qui	quae	quod	Qui	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quod	Quos	quas	quae
Gen.	Cujus	cujus	cujus	Quorum	quarum	quorum
Dat.	Cui	cui	cui	Quibus	quibus	quibus
Abl.	Quo	quā	quō	Quibus	quibus	quibus

### Construction of the Relative

The Relative pronoun takes :—

(1) its *number* (singular or plural), *gender* and *person* from the word in the main clause to which it refers (sometimes called the *antecedent*, “the thing that goes before”), but

(2) its case from its own clause, *i.e.* depending on whether it is the subject or object, etc., of the verb.

The following examples will illustrate this important rule. Learn them carefully.

- (1) *Imperator urbes delevit quas superavit.*

The general destroyed the cities which he conquered.

- (2) *Delevit urbes quae erant valentissimae.*

He destroyed the cities which were the strongest.

- (3) *Delevit urbes quarum incolae erant inimici.*

He destroyed the cities whose inhabitants were hostile.

*N.B.*—In English the Relative pronoun is often omitted. In Latin it never is.

*e.g.* Sentence 1 might be translated in English :—

“The general destroyed the cities he conquered.”

### Adjectives with *-ius* in the Genitive and *-ī* in the Dative

This is a class of adjectives which, from the terminations of the nominative singular, you would expect to belong to Class I, and which really do belong in declension to this class *except in the genitive and dative singular*. These cases, instead of ending in *-i*, *-ae*, *-i* and *-o*, *-ae*, *-o*, have *-ius* and *-ī*. Thus *solus*, *-a*, *-um*, adj. = *alone*, is declined as follows :—

	Singular.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Sol-us	-a	-um
Acc.	Sol-um	-am	-um
Gen.	Sol-ius (all genders)		
Dat.	Sol-ī (all genders)		
Abl.	Sol-ō	-ā	-ō

The plural is quite regular, like *bonus*.

Similarly are declined *unus*, one; *totus*, whole; *ullus*,

any; *nullus*, not any, no one; *alter*, one of two; *uter*? which of two? *neuter*, neither of two.

(*Uter* and *neuter* are like *ater* in the nominative—*uter*, *utra*, *utrum*. *Alter* is like *asper* in the nominative—*alter*, *altera*, *alterum*.)

### *Iipse, ipsa, ipsum*

*Iipse*, a pronoun meaning “-self”, also used like an adjective, is declined exactly like *solus*, but has *-e* instead of *-us* in the nominative masculine singular. Thus, *ipse*, *ipsa*, *ipsum*, etc.

*Puer ipse cantat.* The boy himself sings.

*Ipsi cantamus.* We ourselves are singing.

It simply emphasises the noun or pronoun to which it refers. In the first sentence it is an adjective and emphasises *puer*; in the second it is a pronoun and emphasises the subject (*we*) of *cantamus*, to which it refers.

### Exercise 16 (a)

1. *Ipsi negavimus eos belli finem facturos esse.* 2. Hannibal *ipse* dixerat se solum hoc bellum composuisse. 3. Si dixeritis eos belli finem facturos, Carthaginem prima luce navigabunt. 4. *Ipsi* putavistis hos magno cum dedecore domum rediisse. 5. Qui Corinthum veniunt, statuas inspiciunt. 6. *Ii ipsi* dixerunt se solos a muris Carthaginis hostes removisse. 7. Neuter dixerat se captivos occidere. 8. *Alter* putavit eos haec dicere; *alter* negavit. 9. Videratis eum quem Catulus apud Aegates insulas superavit. 10. *Uter* dixit Caesarem eis solis provincias dedisse?

## Vocabulary 16

*Aedificium*, -ii, n....building  
*Alter* . . . *alter*...the one . . . the other  
*Captivus*, -i, m....captive  
*Dēdecus*, -oris, n....disgrace  
*Inspicio*, *inspexi*, *inspectum*, *inspicere*...to look at, to examine  
 (see footnote 1 to Vocabulary 15)  
*Ita* (*ita*)...so (adv.)

*Occido*, *occidi*, *occisum*, *occidere* ...to kill  
*Patria*, -ae, f....country (in the sense of fatherland)  
*Provincia*, -ae, f....province  
*Redire*, *rediisse* <sup>1</sup>...to return, to have returned  
*Removeo*, -mōvi, -mōtum, -movēre ...to remove  
*Rēstitūo*, -stitui, -stitūtum, -stituere...to restore

*Note*.—As in the ninth sentence of Exercise 16 (a), “the man who” is always rendered in Latin by *is* . . . *qui*, he . . . who.

## Latin Phrases

1. Nulli secundus.
2. ipso facto.
3. A famous line of Horace :—

Coelum, non animum mutant, qui trans mare currunt.

## 4. “Writ on wind and water.”

Nulli se dicit mulier mea nubere <sup>2</sup> malle <sup>3</sup>

Quam <sup>4</sup> mihi, non si se Juppiter ipse petat.

Dicit : sed mulier cupido quod dicit amanti,

In vento et rapida scribere oportet <sup>5</sup> aqua.

—*Catullus*.

<sup>1</sup> Neglect the other parts for the present. The verb is irregular.

<sup>2</sup> “To be married to” (of a woman).

<sup>3</sup> Present infinitive of *malo*.

<sup>4</sup> “rather than”.

<sup>5</sup> Here—“she ought” (*lit.* it is necessary

## LESSON XVII

## CONSECUTIVE CLAUSES.—ILLE, ISTE

For this lesson revise the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of the verbs of each conjugation. Learn these by heart from the table at end of book.

Consecutive or Result Clauses with *ut*

1. *Tam ferox est ut Catulum oppugnet.*  
He is so bold that he is attacking Catulus.
2. *Adeo ferox erat ut Catulum oppugnaret.*  
He was so bold that he was attacking Catulus.
3. *Adeo ferox erat ut Catulum oppugnaverit.*  
He was so bold that he attacked Catulus.

In each sentence here the “that” clause expresses a result or consequence. In Latin such a clause is introduced by *ut* = that, and always has its verb in the Subjunctive. The next point to decide is which tense of the Subjunctive to use. You remember in *final clauses* you could only use the Present or Imperfect Subjunctive: here any tense is possible according to the sense. Thus, in the first sentence the result is an action in the present: therefore the tense of the Subjunctive is *Present*. In the second the result was a continuous action in the past: therefore the *Imperfect Subjunctive* is the tense. In the third the result was an act in the past: therefore use the *Perfect Subjunctive*. You need not consider the tense of the verb in the first or principal clause at all: all you need look to is the actual meaning of the verb. The rule given by Dean Bradley is: *Use the tense you would use if the verb were, as in English, in the Indicative Mood.*

Do not confuse these clauses with *Final Clauses*.

In *Final Clauses* "that" means "in order that". In *consecutive* clauses it means "in such a way that", or "to such an extent that", and has almost always an adverb like *ita*, *adeo* or *sic* (all meaning so) in the main clause to prepare you for it, or *tam* followed by an adjective, an adverb, or a correlative such as *tantus* (so great), *talis* (such), etc. If the consecutive clause were negative (that is, had a "not" in it) you would use *ut non*, never *ne*. (See also Note at end of Vocabulary 17.)

### *Ille, Iste*

Turn back now and make sure of the declension of the adjectives with *-ius* and *-i* in the Genitive and Dative. Then learn these two pronouns :—

Singular.				Singular.			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Ille	illa	illud	Nom.	Iste	ista	istud
Acc.	illum	illam	illud	Acc.	Istum	istam	istud
Gen.	Illius (all genders)			Gen.	Istius (all genders)		
Dat.	Illī (all genders)			Dat.	Istī (all genders)		
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō	Abl.	Istō	istā	istō

In the plural both are declined like *boni, bonae, bona*, etc.

*Ille* means "that yonder" near *him*; *Iste* means "that near *you*". They can both be used with nouns as *adjectives*, or alone as pronouns meaning *he, him*, etc.

*Illum librum legi.* I have read that book yonder.

*Istum librum legi.* I have read that book of yours.

*Ille istum librum legit.* Yon man (*he*) has read that book of yours.

*Note.*—*Ille* is often used to imply respect, and *iste* contempt. E.g. *ille dux*—"that famous leader"; *iste homo*—"that man again!"

## Exercise 17 (a)

1. Romam tanta ferocia oppugnamus ut nullam salutis spem habeatis. 2. Ille tam ferociter Erycem defenderat ut Marcellus negaret se eum unquam capturum esse. 3. Istam urbem sic defenditis ut nullam victoriae spem habeamus. 4. Adeo feroces erant ut negarent se urbem tradituros esse. 5. Ita male Poeni bellum gerunt ut oppida totius Africae amittant. 6. Istius fortitudo gentis tanta erat ut semper adversarios superarent. 7. Adeo sapiens erat ille ut intellegeret haec esse falsa. 8. Tantum in Africa intestinum bellum exarsit ut, O Poeni, nunc omnia oppida amittatis. 9. Neuter adeo ferox est ut cum illo pugnet. 10. Diximus nunc tandem eos imperium totius Africae amisisse.

## Vocabulary 17

<i>Amitto, amisi, amissum, amittere</i> ...to lose	<i>Intellego, intellexi, intellectum,</i> <i>intellegere</i> ...to perceive, to see
<i>Capio, cēpi, captum, capere</i> <sup>1</sup> ...to take, to capture	<i>Intestinus, -a, -um</i> ...internal
<i>Defendo, defendi, defensum, defendere</i> ...to defend	<i>Marcellus, -i, m.</i> ...Marcellus
<i>Eryx—Erycis, m.</i> ...a mountain in Sicily.	<i>Nunc tandem</i> ...now at length (adv.)
<i>Exardesco, exarsi, exarsum, exardescere</i> ...to blaze up, to break out	<i>Salus, salutis, f.</i> ...safety
<i>Falsus, -a, -um</i> ...false	<i>Sapiens, sapientis</i> ...wise (adj.)
<i>Ferociter</i> ...boldly, with bravery (adv.)	<i>Tantus, -a, -um</i> ...so great
<i>Ferox, ferocis</i> ...bold (one termination)	<i>Trado, tradidi, traditum, tradere</i> ...to surrender, to hand over
<i>Fortitudo, -inis, f.</i> ...bravery	<i>Tuus, -a, -um</i> ...your (when "you" is singular)
	<i>Vester, -ra, -rum</i> ...your (when "you" is plural)

*Note.*—It may be as well here to say something of the Negative and Negative sentences. If there is a

<sup>1</sup> See footnote to Vocabulary 15.

"not" in a sentence, or a "no", or a word compounded of either, such as "none", "no one", "nor", "neither", we say these sentences are negative; and "not" we call the Negative, the others being negative words. Note carefully that in Final sentences "that not" is *nē*, in Consecutive sentences *ut nōn*.

Here is a beautiful picture from Virgil of Aeneas and the Sibyl entering the Lower World at night:—

### Night

Ibant <sup>1</sup> obscuri sola sub nocte per umbram  
perque domos Ditis vacuas et inania regna :  
quale <sup>2</sup> per incertam lunam sub luce maligna  
est iter in silvis, ubi caelum condidit umbra  
Juppiter, et rebus nox abstulit <sup>3</sup> atra colorem.

—*Aeneid*, VI, 269.

## LESSON XVIII

### ALIUS.—THE GERUND

Revise the Perfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive of all four conjugations, and re-read now the previous chapter, on Consecutive clauses, and the lesson (XII) on *Cum* with the Subjunctive when it translates "when" with a past tense in English.

### *Alius, alia, aliud*

The Latin word for "other" is *alius, alia, aliud*. Compare this with *ille, illa, illud* and *iste, ista, istud*. Note carefully the genitive and dative singular.

<sup>1</sup> "They went." Imperfect of *eo*, "I go".

<sup>2</sup> "just as" agreeing with *iter*: introduces a simile.

<sup>3</sup> "has taken away from the world" (*lit.* "from things").

	Singular.			Plural.		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Alius	alia	aliud	Alii	aliae	alia
Acc.	Alium	aliam	aliud	Alios	alias	alia
Gen.	Alius	alius	alius	Aliorum	aliarum	aliorum
Dat.	Alii	ali	ali	Aliis	aliis	aliis
Abl.	Alio	alia	alio	Aliis	aliis	aliis

Note.—Alii...alii = some...others.

### The Gerund

*Am-andum Mon-endum Reg-endum Aud-iendum*

Each is declined like a neuter noun of the Second Declension—*amandum*, -i, -o, -o, etc., but has no nominative.

The Gerund is always formed from the Present stem :—

In the First Conjugation by adding - <i>andum</i> .	
„ Second „ - <i>endum</i> .	„
„ Third „ - <i>endum</i> .	„
„ Fourth „ - <i>iendum</i> .	„

It is a *verbal noun*, i.e. it is declined like a noun, but acts in certain ways like a verb. For instance, it is modified by adverbs and can govern a case. It is translated by the corresponding English noun in “-ing”—loving, advising, ruling, hearing.

*Haec sunt utilia ad scribendum.*

These things are useful for writing.

*Nullum locum nocendi eis dedit.*

He gave them no opportunity (place) of injuring.

In the following sentence it has an adverb with it :—

*Haec sunt utilia ad bene vivendum.*

These things are useful for living well (for a good life).

In this one it governs a case :—

*Parcendo hostibus vincemus.*

By sparing the enemy we shall conquer.

Here *parcendo* (from the verb *parcere*, to spare)

governs a *dative*, because *parcere* governs a *dative*, as it is really an intransitive verb meaning "to be merciful".

### Exercise 18 (a)

1. Illo tempore tam magnopere timebamus ut auxilia ab Romanis petiverimus atque impetraverimus. 2. Cum Poeni in Sicilia omnia amisissent pacem conciliaverunt. 3. Erycem tanta fortitudine defendebant ut Romani de victoria desperarent. 4. Cum, O Romani, belli finem facere statuissetis, rem Regulo permisistis. 5. Adeo cupiditate bellandi flagrabat ut recusaverit ex Sicilia decedere. 6. Alii studio pugnandi flagrabant, alii decedendi. 7. Cum haec inutilia ad bene vivendum cognovissent abjecerunt. 8. Tot mercenarii milites desciverunt ut Poeni desperent. 9. Aliis studium bellandi permittitis. 10. Parcendo vitae aliorum amorem et amicitiam conciliabitis.

### Vocabulary 18

<i>Abicio, abiēci, abiectum, abicere</i> <sup>1</sup>	<i>Perdo, perdidi, perditum, perdere</i>
...to cast away	...to destroy
<i>Bello, -are</i> ...make war	<i>Permitto, -misi, -missum, -mittere</i>
<i>Benē</i> ...well (adv.)	...to entrust, impart, allow
<i>Bona, -orum, n.</i> ...property (plural of bonus)	<i>Peto, petivi (or petii), petitur, petere</i> ...to seek
<i>Cognosco, cognōvi, cognitum, cognoscere</i> ...to discover, to know	<i>Regulus, -i, m.</i> ...Regulus (a famous Roman)
<i>Descisco, descivi, descitum, desciscere</i> ...to revolt	<i>Statuo, statui, statutum, statuere</i>
<i>Despēro, despēravi, despēratum, despērare</i> ...to despair	...to resolve
<i>Etiam</i> ...even (adv.)	<i>Studium, -ii, n.</i> ...desire
<i>Inutilis, -e</i> ...useless	<i>Timeo, timui, timēre</i> ...to be afraid
<i>Magnopere</i> ...greatly (adv.)	<i>Tot</i> ...so many (indeclinable pron.)
<i>Mercenarius, -a, -um</i> ...mercenary	<i>Vita, -ae, f.</i> ...life
	<i>Vivo, vixi, victum, vivere</i> ...to live

<sup>1</sup> See footnote to Vocabulary 15.

### Latin in English

1. referendum.
2. modus operandi (" of working ").
3. modus vivendi.
4. innuendo (*lit.* " by nodding ").
5. solvitur ambulando.

### A Line of Ennius

Unus homo nobis cunctando <sup>1</sup> restituit rem.

The man was Quintus Fabius, the Roman general, who saved the Roman State by his delaying tactics in the Second Punic War and was called " Cunctator " in consequence.

### A Proverb

Nihil agendo homines male agere discunt.

### The Death of a Pet Sparrow

These charming and sympathetic lines are from a poem written by *Catullus* to his lady-love on the death of her pet bird. Read them aloud before you try to translate them. The metre is called Hendecasyllables (eleven syllables). Tennyson copied it in a poem beginning " O you chorus of indolent reviewers ". It scans as follows :—

" Look I	cóme to the	tést a	tíny	póem,
All com	posed in a	metre	of Cat	ullus ", etc.
Pásser	mórtuus	ést me-	aé pu-	éllae.

<sup>1</sup> " by delaying."

## Lines from Catullus

Passer mortuus est meae puellae,  
 Passer deliciae meae puellae,  
 Quem plus illa oculis suis <sup>1</sup> amabat,  
 Nam mellitus erat suamque norat <sup>2</sup>  
 Ipsam <sup>3</sup> tam bene quam puella matrem.  
 Nec sese a gremis illius movebat,  
 Sed circumsiliens modo huc modo illuc  
 Ad solam dominam usque pipilabat.  
 Qui nunc it <sup>4</sup> per iter tenebricosum  
 Illuc, unde negant redire quemquam.<sup>5</sup>  
 O factum male, vae miselle <sup>6</sup> passer !  
 Tua nunc opera meae puellae  
 Flendo turgiduli <sup>6</sup> rubent ocelli.<sup>6</sup>

A most successful translation of this poem has been made into the dialect of Burns by G. S. Davies :—

Weep, weep, ye Loves and Cupids all,  
 And ilka Man o' decent feelin' :  
 My lassie's lost her wee, wee bird,  
 And that's a loss, ye'll ken, past healin'.

The lassie lo'ed him like her een :  
 The darling wee thing lo'ed the ither,  
 And knew and nestled to her breast,  
 As ony bairnie to her mither.

<sup>1</sup> Ablative of comparison, "than her eyes".

<sup>2</sup> *norat*, contraction for *noverat*.

<sup>3</sup> Servants called their "mistress" *ipsa*.

<sup>4</sup> *it*, "goes", from *eo*, "I go".

<sup>5</sup> *quemquam*: acc. of *quisquam*, "anyone" (usually in negative sentences).

<sup>6</sup> Diminutives of *miser*, *turgidus*, *oculus*, expressing affection or pity. "Poor little . . ."

Her bosom was his dear, dear haunt—  
So dear, he cared na lang to leave it;  
He'd nae but gang his ain sma' jaunt,  
And flutter piping back bereavit.

The wee thing's gane the shadowy road  
That's never travelled back by ony :  
Out on ye, Shades ! ye're greedy aye  
To grab at aught that's brave and bonny.

Puir, foolish, fondling, bonnie bird,  
Ye little ken what wark ye're leavin' :  
Ye've gar'd my lassie's een grow red,  
Those bonnie een grow red wi' grievin'.

## LESSON XIX

### PERFECT TENSES OF THE PASSIVE AND SUM, ETC.— A AND ABLATIVE

We cannot take the verb in the passive until we know the conjugation of the verb *esse*, "to be". This is an irregular verb, so called because it does not form its tenses and persons according to the rules laid down for the four conjugations previously given. Turn to the Table of Verbs (p. 288), and learn the tenses that come from the Present stem, both *Indicative* and *Subjunctive*. Note the following points :—

1. The *Present Indicative* is very irregular.
2. The *Imperfect Indicative* has just the terminations and nothing more of the Pluperfect Active of the regular verb, *eram*, *eras*, *erat*, etc.
3. The *Future Indicative* has just the Future Perfect terminations of the regular verb, but instead of *erint* we have *erunt*.

4. The *Imperfect Subjunctive* has the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* endings of the regular verb, with *e* for *i*.

These hints should aid your memory considerably. If now we take the *Supine stem* in each Conjugation—

Amatum      Monitum      Rectum      Auditum

and change the final *m* into *s*, we get the *Past Participle Passive*—

<i>Amātus</i> , -a, -um	.	.	Having been loved
<i>Monītus</i> , -a, -um	.	.	Having been warned (or advised)
<i>Rectus</i> , -a, -um	.	.	Having been ruled
<i>Auditus</i> , -a, -um	.	.	Having been heard

declined in each case like an adjective of the first class. If you combine this with the Present Indicative of *sum* you get the *Perfect Indicative Passive*—

<i>Amātus</i> (-a, -um) <i>sum</i>	I have been loved or I was loved
<i>Amātus</i> (-a, -um) <i>es</i>	Thou hast been loved or thou wast loved
<i>Amātus</i> (-a, -um) <i>est</i>	He has been loved or he was loved
<i>Amāti</i> (-ae, -a) <i>sumus</i>	We have been loved or we were loved
<i>Amāti</i> (-ae, -a) <i>estis</i>	You have been loved or you were loved
<i>Amāti</i> (-ae, -a) <i>sunt</i>	They have been loved or they were loved

If you combine it with the Imperfect Indicative of *sum* you get the *Pluperfect Indicative Passive*—

<i>Amātus</i> (-a, -um) <i>eram</i>	.	.	I had been loved
<i>Amātus</i> (-a, -um) <i>eras</i>	.	.	Thou hadst been loved
<i>Amātus</i> (-a, -um) <i>erat</i>	.	.	He had been loved
<i>Amāti</i> (-ae, -a) <i>eramus</i>	.	.	We had been loved
<i>Amāti</i> (-ae, -a) <i>eratis</i>	.	.	You had been loved
<i>Amāti</i> (-ae, -a) <i>erant</i>	.	.	They had been loved

If you combine it with the Future of *sum* you get the *Future Perfect Indicative Passive*—

<i>Amatus</i> (-a, -um) <i>erō</i>	.	.	I shall have been loved
<i>Amatus</i> (-a, -um) <i>eris</i>	.	.	Thou wilt have been loved
<i>Amatus</i> (-a, -um) <i>erit</i>	.	.	He will have been loved
<i>Amāti</i> (-ae, -a) <i>erimus</i>	.	.	We shall have been loved
<i>Amāti</i> (-ae, -a) <i>eritis</i>	.	.	You will have been loved
<i>Amāti</i> (-ae, -a) <i>erunt</i>	.	.	They will have been loved

In a similar way you may form the corresponding Passive tenses in the other four Conjugations (see the Table of Verbs). You observe that the subject of the verb is in all these cases being acted on. The forms of the verb which show that the subject is being acted on are called the *Passive* voice of the verb (Latin *patior*, to suffer). Remember you must make *amatus*, or whatever Perfect Participle you are using, agree with the subject of the verb in gender, number and case (always nominative, of course).

#### Ablative of Agent and Instrument

1. *Caesar a Bruto interfectus est.*  
Caesar was killed by Brutus.
2. *Caesar pugione interfectus est.*  
Caesar was killed with a dagger.

In the first sentence, the action is performed by a living person, Brutus. We call him the *agent*. In the second, the action is performed by an inanimate thing—a dagger. We call this the *instrument*.

The agent is always put into the ablative case with the preposition *a* or *ab*. (*Ab* is always used when the following word begins with a vowel or with *h*; before other words *a* is generally used.) The instrument is always put into the ablative, but without a preposition. We may combine both in one sentence—

*Caesar a Bruto pugione interfectus est.*

#### Exercise 19 (a)

1. Cum in Sicilia essemus ab urbe discessit.
2. Spectandi causa statuas diu Athenis illi erant.
3. Caesar ubi Romae erit (see Note at end of Vocabulary)

19) leges conservabit. 4. Tunc festinabant ut Romae illo die essent. 5. Ille pugnans a Gallo ingenti corpore occisus est. 6. Illi captivi post pugnam Cannensem ab Hannibale occisi erant. 7. Tunc quidem ex Graecia decedemus ubi ab Romanis victi erimus. 8. Si hoc proelio victi erunt Carthaginienses, in magno periculo erunt. 9. Post subactas bellicosissimas gentes a servo in itinere interfectus est. 10. Femina a servo, cui multa dona dederat, prodita est.

### Vocabulary 19

<i>Bellicōsissimus</i> , -a, -um...very warlike, most warlike	<i>Ingens, ingentis</i> ...huge
<i>Cannensis</i> , -e...at Cannae (literally: belonging to Cannae, a town in Italy) (adj.)	<i>Iter, itinēris</i> , n....journey
<i>Capitōlium</i> , -ii, n....the Capitol	<i>Lex, lēgis</i> , f....law
<i>Causa</i> , (prep.) with gen....for the purpose of	<i>Nunc quidem</i> ...just now
<i>Discēdo</i> , -cessi, -cessum, -cēdere...to depart	<i>Prōdo</i> , -didi, ditum, -dēre...to betray
<i>Diu</i> ...long, for a long time (adv.)	<i>Profecto</i> ...certainly (adv.)
<i>Femīna</i> , -ae, f....woman	<i>Pugiō</i> , <i>pugiōnis</i> , m....dagger
<i>Festīno</i> , -avi, -atum, -are...to hasten	<i>Pugna</i> , -ae, f....battle
<i>Graecia</i> , -ae, f....Greece	<i>Servus</i> , -i, m....slave
	<i>Subigo</i> , <i>subēgi</i> , <i>subactum</i> , <i>subigere</i> ...to subdue
	<i>Tunc</i> or <i>tum</i> ...then (adv.)
	<i>Tunc quidem</i> ...just then, then indeed (adv.)

*Note.*—In the third sentence of Exercise 19 (a), and in the third and fourth of Exercise 19 (b), note that the meaning is: “When Caesar shall be”, not “shall have been”; “If I shall be” and “When you shall be”, not “If I shall have been” and “When you shall have been”.

## LESSON XX

PERFECT TENSES OF SUM.—THIRD PERSON SINGULAR  
PASSIVE OF VERBS.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM

The tenses of the verb *esse* (to be) which come from the Perfect stem (which is *fu-*) are formed quite regularly. You merely add the terminations you have learned already for these tenses to this stem *fu-*. Turn now to the table of the verb *esse* and learn these before going farther.

Note that there is no Supine in the verb *to be* : but there is a Future Participle, *futūrus*, -a, -um, “about to be”. Add *esse* (to be) to this and you form the Future Infinitive, *futurus esse*, “to be about to be”.

## General Hint on the Passive Voice

One general hint about the Passive Voice of the regular verbs may be given here. If to the third person singular and plural of the tenses formed from the Present stem you add *-ur* you get the corresponding Passive form in each case. Thus, *amat* means “he loves”, *amatur* “he is loved”; so *amant*, *amantur*. And again *amābat* means “he was loving”, *amābatur* “he was being loved”; so *amābant*, *amābantur*. And so you may form this person in all the tenses (Indicative and Subjunctive) formed from the *Present stem* in each Conjugation. (Consult the tables for illustrations.) So, for example, if you wish to form the third person singular Imperfect Subjunctive Passive of *audio*, find the Active and add *-ur*; thus *audiret*, *audiretur*. Observe this holds good only in the third person singular and in the third person plural.

## Compounds of Sum

Once you have mastered *sum* you can conjugate a good many verbs without any difficulty, as *sum* forms many compounds. These compounds, it is worth remembering, usually take a *dative* after them. Two common ones are *prōsum*, "I benefit, I do good to", and *praesum*, "I am at the head of". These are simply *sum* with the prefixes *pro* and *prae*. However, in *prosum* (and in *prosum* only), if the *o* of *pro* is followed by an *e* you insert a *d* between the two. Thus, *prodes*, *prodest*; but *profui*, *prosunt*, and so on.

*Exercitui praefuit* or *praeerat*. He was at the head of the army.  
*Rei publicae proderat*. He used to do good to the State.

## Exercise 20 (a)

1. Erycem sic defendimus ut bellum eo loco gestum esse non videretur. 2. Tanta bella tum exarserunt ut hae urbes paene delerentur. 3. Cum centum milia facta essent militum mercenariorum, a muris Karthaginis eos removit. 4. Illa urbs maximo barbarorum numero obsidebatur. 5. Tam ferociter pugnauerunt ut hostes expellerentur. 6. Locorum angustiis clausae feminae fame ac morbo interficiebantur. 7. Romae Hannibal fuit, non Romani Carthagine. 8. Ante urbem ab Hispanis obsessam magnus Poenorum numerus interfectus est. 9. Fuerant sapientes, fortes, bellicosi, omnibus in rebus satis periti. 10. Eis malis adeo sunt mulieres perterritae ut auxilium petiverint.

# Vocabulary 20

<i>Angustiae, -arum, f....narrowness</i> (narrow places, straits)	<i>Milia, -ium, n. pl....thousands</i> (noun)
<i>Barbārus, -i, m....barbarian</i>	<i>Morbus, -i, m....disease</i>
<i>Centum...a hundred (numeral</i> adj., not declined)	<i>Mulier, -eris, f....woman</i>
<i>Claudo, clausi, clausum, claudere</i> ...to shut in	<i>Obsideo, -sēdi, -sessum, -sidere...</i> to besiege
<i>Expello, -puli, -pulsum, -pellere...</i> to drive out	<i>Paene...almost (adv.)</i>
<i>Fames, famis, f....famine, hunger</i>	<i>Peritus, -a, -um...skilled</i>
<i>Loca, -orum, n. pl....places, position</i>	<i>Perterreo, -terrui, -territum, -terrere...</i> to terrify
<i>Mala, orum, n. pl....ills</i>	<i>Plures, plura...more (adj.)</i>
<i>Malus, -a, -um...bad</i>	<i>Satis...enough, sufficiently (adv.)</i>
	<i>Similis, -e...like (adj.)</i>
	<i>Vexo, -avi, -atum, āre...to harass</i>

## Revision of Vocabulary:

Out of the Latin words you have already learnt, write down those to which the following English words are related—

inspection, patriotic, provincial, ferocious, intellectual, abject, perdition, itinerary, expulsion, vexatious.

## A Night Scene from Virgil

Nox erat, et placidum carpebant fessa soporem <sup>1</sup>  
 Corpora per terras, silvaeque et saeva quierant <sup>2</sup>  
 Aequora, cum medio volvuntur sidera lapsu, <sup>3</sup>  
 Cum tacet omnis ager, pecudes pictaeque <sup>4</sup> volucres,  
 Quaeque lacus late liquidos quaeque aspera dumis <sup>5</sup>  
 Rura tenent, somno positae <sup>6</sup> sub nocte silenti  
 Lenibant <sup>7</sup> curas et corda oblita <sup>8</sup> laborum.

<sup>1</sup> *sopor*, "sleep".

<sup>2</sup> *quierant* is contracted for *quieverant*, pluperfect of *quiesco*, "I rest".

<sup>3</sup> *medio . . . lapsu, lit.* "the stars are rolled round in the middle movement", i.e. midway in their gliding path.

<sup>4</sup> *pictae*, "painted", i.e. of various colours.

<sup>5</sup> *dumus*, "a thicket".

<sup>6</sup> *positae*; v. *pono*.

<sup>7</sup> *lenibant*, contraction for *leniebant*, "smoothed".

<sup>8</sup> *oblita laborum*, "forgetful of labours".

## HINTS FOR LATIN TRANSLATION

We are now ready to read two short passages taken from *Cornelius Nepos*, one of the lesser Roman historians. He lived in the time of Cicero and Julius Caesar, in the first century before the birth of Christ. Most of his works are lost, but from what remains he is not among the great Roman writers. However, the plainness of his style and his usually short sentences and limited vocabulary are an advantage to beginners. He wrote some short biographies of famous men, and of these we have chosen for reading the lives of Hamilcar and Hannibal, father and son. They were in turn military leaders of Carthage, a flourishing merchant city on the north coast of Africa, which for a long time struggled with Rome for supremacy in the Mediterranean. In the first war Hamilcar was the Carthaginian leader; in the second, his more famous son, Hannibal, who carried the war even to the gates of Rome. He crossed the Alps with an army and with elephants, made a lightning march southward, and came very near to destroying the Roman power in the ancient world.

Read the whole piece through slowly in Latin, first to yourself and then aloud, trying to see the natural thought-groups into which the sentences fall. From this you will begin to see something of the general meaning of the passage, and you have now to consider it in detail.

Look first for a verb in the Indicative Mood; this is usually found at or near the end of the sentence. See whether this is singular or plural, and then look for the

subject, which of course will be a noun or pronoun in the Nominative Case, and singular or plural according as the verb is singular or plural. The subject is usually near the beginning of the sentence. From the meaning of the verb (which you will find, if you do not know it already, in the general Vocabulary at the end of the book) you will be able to tell if it requires an object. If it does, look for this next. The object will be a noun or pronoun in the Accusative Case. You will notice, as a general rule in Latin, at the beginning of each clause a word, usually a conjunction or relative pronoun, joining the sentence to the preceding one. With the nouns in the nominative or accusative there may be adjectives in agreement. Besides these four things, connective, nominative or subject (with adjectives), accusative or object (with adjectives), and verb, some words or phrases may be left. These are frequently nouns and adjectives in the ablative, dative or genitive. The first two are nearly always connected with the verb; the genitive is more commonly connected with some noun. Thus the ablative, from what you know already, may tell the time at which the action of the verb took place, the place where it occurred, or the means by which it was performed. The genitive often describes some quality of the thing or person named by the noun—*vir summi ingenii*, a man of the greatest ability. The dative is usually closely connected with some verb. Though it is helpful at first to analyse a Latin sentence in this way, noticing particularly the terminations rather than the beginnings of words, you should try also to comprehend the meaning in the Latin order. In a long and involved sentence this is

often difficult, but it is well worth acquiring the habit, as the Latin order is the order of the Latin thought and no small clue to its meaning.

Now let us tackle, with these hints, the first sentence in the passage No. 1 given on p. 111 :—

You have to look to the second last word for the verb—*coepit*. *Praeesse* is of course a verb, but you will at once see it is not Indicative Mood. *Coepit* is third person singular (ending in *-it*). Looking up the Vocabulary you find it is Perfect tense and means “began”. *Coepit*, then, is third person singular Perfect Indicative. A glance at the beginning presents *Hamilcar* as the first nominative; but in quick succession you get *pater*, *Barca*, *Karthaginiensis*, all evidently Nominative Case. Here, then, are four nominatives, four subjects to the verb! Not so: the three later nominatives must be in apposition, else the verb would be plural, for two or more singular nominatives, as in English, require a verb in the plural. You now translate *Hamilcar coepit*, “Hamilcar began”, and you feel you require an object, to tell you what he began; but on looking you find no noun in the Accusative Case. The word *praeesse* gets us out of the difficulty. Very often a verb which you feel requires an object in the Accusative Case takes an Infinitive to fill out its meaning. Translating *praeesse* now you get, “Hamilcar began to be in command”. The remainder of the sentence consists of three phrases, *primo Poenico bello*, *temporibus extremis*, *in Sicilia*; with an adverb *admodum*, a nominative *adulescentulus*, an ablative *cognomine*, and a dative *exercitui*. *Adulescentulus* must

apposition. The first two phrases may be ablative or dative : you will find they cannot be translated as datives. Try them with "to" or "for" after the verb *coepit* : "He began to the last times", "to the first Punic war". This makes no sense. They must, then, be ablatives. Try them as Ablatives of Time : "Hamilcar, in the first Punic war, but in the last times, began to be in command". This gives some sense, so we go on. *In Sicilia* offers no difficulty : it means "in Sicily", *in*, the preposition, taking the Ablative Case. *Cognomine* is the ablative singular of *cognomen*, "a surname", by, with, or from a surname, that is, "Barca by name". The Vocabulary tells you *admodum* is an adverb, meaning "very", "quite". It goes, then, with a *verb*, *adjective* or *adverb*. Adverbs usually precede the words they go with. It must, then, go with *adulescentulus*, which is practically an adjective : "quite a young man" gives good sense. If it went with the verbs *praeesse* or *coepit*, it would be placed nearer them. *Exercitui* alone remains, and you remember *praeesse* governs a dative (being a compound of *sum*). This, then, will naturally be dative after *praeesse*. Your sentence now runs :—

"Hamilcar, father of Hannibal, by surname Barca, a Carthaginian, in the first Punic War, but in the last times (*or* days), quite a young man, began in Sicily to be in command of the army."

Now, all the passages—and all Latin sentences, in fact—must be treated carefully after this manner. The process is slow at first ; but, if faithfully followed out, it soon makes the work very easy, and is the only way to ensure accuracy. Pay particular attention to

the endings of the words : they are the most important parts of words in Latin. Without them you could do nothing : a sentence deprived of them would at once become nonsense. Never pass a noun without being able to tell what case it is in and why it is in that case. Never pass a verb without telling its mood, number and tense. Above all, never be in a hurry : always take plenty of time to the sentence you are at. Do not worry about it. If you find a sentence beats you, pass on to the next one, and return to the difficulty when the light of the remainder of the passage has been thrown on it. *Never write nonsense as a translation*, or anything which you do not understand *yourself*. The passages *all* have a meaning. After you have done your best and think your version is fairly correct, turn to the Key at the end of the book and compare your translation with it. If you use this Key to *solve* the difficulties, you will never go far in Latin. You will remain in the state of the man who never tries to swim without the swimming-belt. Two translations will be given at first—one very close to the Latin, not proper English at all; the other rather freer and more like what an Englishman would write. If you have not exactly the same translation as the Key, you are not necessarily wrong. See if the *meaning* is the same in your copy and in the Key. There is always a variety of translations for any passage in any language.

No special vocabularies will be given now. You must make your own vocabulary. This is the plan you ought to adopt in all your future reading. When a word occurs which you do not know, or a phrase which you think worth remembering, jot it down in a special

note-book. This consultation of the general Vocabulary at the end will prepare you for the use of a dictionary after you have finished this book and started to read for yourself.

N.B.—The key to the following passages—*Life of Hamilcar, Life of Hannibal*, etc.—is given in Part III..

### Passage No. I

#### LIFE OF HAMILCAR, FATHER OF HANNIBAL

Hamilcar, Hannibalis pater, cognomine Barca, Karthaginiensis, primo Poenico bello, sed temporibus *extremis* admodum adulescentulus in Sicilia praeesse coepit exercitui. *cum* ante eius adventum et mari et terra male res *gererentur* Karthaginensium, ipse, ubi adfuit, numquam *hosti* cessit neque locum nocendi dedit, saepeque e contrario *occasione data* lacessivit semperque *superior* discessit. *quo facto*, cum paene omnia in Sicilia Poeni amisissent, ille Erycem sic defendit, *ut* bellum eo loco gestum non *videretur*. interim Karthaginenses classe apud insulas Aegates a C. Lutatio, consule Romanorum, superati,<sup>1</sup> statuerunt <sup>2</sup> belli facere finem eamque rem arbitrio permiserunt Hamilcaris.

#### Notes on the Words in Italics

*Extremis*: this is a superlative with no positive. Its comparative is *exterior*, and means "outer". It is therefore irregular. It means "outmost" or "last".

*Cum*: We have said this with a Past tense takes the Subjunctive and means *when* or *since*; it may also mean *although*. This is the meaning here.

*Gererentur*: find what *gererent* is, and this is the Passive of it.

---

<sup>1</sup> *Superati classe*, "defeated by a fleet".

<sup>2</sup> *Statuo* takes the Infinitive after it.

*Hosti*: is dative after *cessit* (from *cedo*). If you have any difficulty in finding the Present of the verb in the Vocabulary owing to the change (as, for example, *cedo, cessi*) from Present to Perfect, or for any other reason, consult the Table of Irregular Verbs given at the end of the book.

*Occasione data*: you can be pretty sure when an ablative has a Participle with it that it is Ablative Absolute, as here.

*Superior*: the positive of this adjective is *superus*, upper, applied to a thing which is above another; comparative is *superior* as here, higher, superior; superlative is *supremus* or *summus*, highest.

*Quo facto*: note the relative connecting this sentence to the one before, where we would say "on this being done". *Quo facto* is, of course, Ablative Absolute.

*Ut . . . videretur*: this is consecutive *ut*, "so that". *Esse* should be understood after *gestum*.

## LESSON XXI

### PRESENT, IMPERFECT AND FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE.—GERUNDIVE

These are tenses formed from the Present Stem. They are each formed from the Active in the same way.

To the first person singular ending in a vowel add *r*. Thus *amo*; Active; *amor*, Passive. When ending in *m* change *m* into *r*—*amābam*, *amābar*.

For the second person singular change *s* into *ris* or *re*—*amās*, *amāris* or *amāre*.

For the third person singular (as explained in Lesson XX) add *ur*—*amat*, *amātur*.

For the first person plural change *s* into *r*—*amāmus*, *amāmur*.

For the second person plural change *tis* into *mini*—*amātis*, *amāmini*.

For the third person plural (as explained in Lesson XX) add *ur*—*amant*, *amantur*.

Thus also—

*Moneō* gives *moneor*;

*Regō* gives *regor*;

*Andiō* gives *audior*.

*mones* gives *monēris* or *monēre*, etc.

*regis* gives *regēris* or *regēre*, etc.

*andīs* gives *andīris* or *andīre*, etc.

In the second person singular Present Indicative of the Third Conjugation you find *regēris* where you might expect *regiris*, and in the second person singular Future Indicative of the First and Second Conjugations *amāberis* where you might expect *amabiris*, and *monēberis* where you might expect *monebiris*.

In the first and second persons plural by these rules

Monēmus <i>gives</i> monēmur;	monētis <i>gives</i> monēmini, etc.
Regimus <i>gives</i> regimur;	regitis <i>gives</i> regimini, etc.
Audimus <i>gives</i> audimur;	auditis <i>gives</i> audimini, etc.

and similarly you form the other two tenses.

### The Gerund and Gerundive

The *Gerundive* is an adjective got by changing the *m* of the Gerund into *s*. Thus *amandum*, *amandus*. It is declined like an adjective of the first class (*-us*, *-a*, *-um*), and means "to-be-loved, advised", etc.

If we wish to translate a sentence like the following into Latin, we must use the nominative of the Gerund:—

We must pay regard to peace.

*Paci a nobis serviendum est.*

(There is a need-to-pay-regard to peace by us.)

But if *servio* had been a transitive verb (taking the accusative case), we must have used the *Gerundive*. Thus *servare* (to preserve) is a transitive verb, and therefore takes an accusative case. The sentence "We must preserve peace" is in Latin therefore *Pax nobis servanda est* (not *Pacem nobis servandum est*), "Peace is to-be-preserved by us". With the Gerund and Gerundive in this sense, the agent is put in the dative, not in the ablative with *a* or *ab*—unless, as in the first sentence above, there is a dative with the verb already, when the ablative is used to prevent ambiguity.

*Rule.*—With an intransitive verb use the nominative of the Gerund to express necessity and the dative of the agent (the person on whom the necessity rests), or the ablative with *a* or *ab* if there would be confusion with another dative. With a transitive verb the verbal adjective, *i.e.* the Gerundive, in the nominative case, in agreement with the noun.

### Examples

1. They must spare the enemy.

*Hostibus ab eis parcendum est.*

(There is a necessity-to-be-merciful to the enemy by them.)

*Parcere*, "to spare", is intransitive, taking a dative after it.

2. The Romans must attack the city.

*Urbs Romanis oppugnanda est.*

(The city is necessary-to-be-attacked by the Romans.)

*Oppugnare* is a transitive verb taking the accusative.

Compare these remarks now with those in Lesson XVIII on the Gerund.

3. *Urbem sacerdotibus defendendam tradunt.*

They hand over the city to be defended by the priests.

### The Gerundive Construction

In Lesson XVIII you were taught how to translate a sentence like :—

*Vincemus hostibus parcendo.*

We shall conquer by sparing the enemy.

But this is not always a possible construction if the Gerund has the accusative after it. Thus we might say,

*Hi pacem conciliandi causa venerunt.*

These men have come for-the-sake-of-making peace (to make peace).

where we have used the genitive of the Gerund followed by an accusative. But the Romans preferred to say,

*Hi pacis conciliandae causa venerunt.*

These men have come for-the-sake-of peace necessary-to-be-made.

N.B.—*causa* usually follows the Gerundive.

In the second construction we have used the Gerundive in agreement with the noun, the whole phrase being in the *case* the Gerund would have been in. This Gerundive construction *must* always be used when the Gerund would be in the accusative or dative. In the ablative and genitive either Gerund or Gerundive may be used. *Hi ad pacem conciliandum venerunt* must never be used, but *Hi ad pacem conciliandam venerunt*. So *Decemviros legibus scribendis creaverunt*: They appointed Decemvirs for laws necessary-to-be-drawn-up, *that is*, for the drawing up of laws or to draw up laws; not *leges scribendo* (dative of Gerund). But you may have either, *Colendo agros divites erimus* or *Colendis agris divites erimus*: We shall be rich by cultivating the fields; and *pacis conciliandae causa* or *pacem conciliandi causa*: For the sake of making peace. But the Gerundive is more usual.

When the noun in the genitive is plural and is of the first or second declension, and the genitive if used would cause two consecutive words to end in *-orum* or *-arum*, the Gerundive is never employed. Thus *Romanorum videndorum causa* would never be used for *Romanos videndi causa*: For the sake of seeing the Romans.

### Summary of Gerund and Gerundive Constructions

1. The Gerund is a Verbal Noun, is *active* and is declined in the singular.

2. The Gerundive is a Verbal Adjective, is *passive* and is declined in both singular and plural.

3. The *Gerund* of an Intransitive verb in the *nominative* case involves the idea of "must".

e.g. *Mihi est eundum* = I must go.

4. In all other cases there is no idea of "must".

e.g. *Studiosus erat canendi* = He was keen on singing.

### Exercise 21 (a)

If you are still uncertain of the conjugation of the passive voice, this short exercise will give you practice. Turn the following sentences from active to passive, or from passive to active (for Key see p. 262):

1. *Milites urbem obsident.* 2. *Femina servis rosas dedit.*<sup>1</sup> 3. *Cleopatra Antonium maxime amabat.* 4. *Castra aggeribus contra hostes munit.* 5. *Puellae a barbaris captae sunt.* 6. *Omnia in Hispania ab isto imperatore iam amissa sunt.*

### Passage No. 2

#### LIFE OF HAMILCAR (*continued*)

In this piece there are one or two rather difficult things. It will help you if you consult the fuller notes in the Key.

*Compositurum* : supply *esse* after this word.

*Nisi ille . . . decederent* : "unless he and his friends should depart" (*ille cum suis* takes a plural verb).

*Periturum* : supply *esse* after this word.

*Quam rediret* : "than (he would) return home".

*Ut succumbente patria* : this is the consecutive clause after  *tanta fuit ferocia*.

*Suae esse virtutis* : "to be the (quality) of his valour", so "to be consistent with his valour".

---

<sup>1</sup> For principal parts of *do* see Vocabulary.

Ille, etsi flagrabat bellandi cupiditate, tamen paci serviendum putavit, quod patriam exhaustam sumptibus, diutius calamitates belli ferre<sup>1</sup> non posse<sup>2</sup> intellegebat, hoc consilio pacem conciliavit, in quo tanta fuit ferocia, cum Catulus negaret bellum *compositurum*, nisi ille cum suis, qui Erycem tenuerant, armis relictis Sicilia *decederent*, ut *succumbente patria* ipse periturum se potius dixerit, quam cum tanto flagitio domum *rediret*: non enim *suae esse virtutis* arma a patria accepta adversus hostes adversariis tradere. huius pertinaciae cessit Catulus.

### Latin Gerundives in English

1. Amanda (*i.e.* lovable).  
Miranda (*i.e.* admirable).
2. agenda.
3. propaganda.
4. memoranda.
5. addenda.
6. corrigenda.
7. mutatis mutandis (*lit.*, "the things to be changed having been changed"—Ablative Absolute).

### Latin Phrases and Thoughts

1. De gustibus non disputandum.
2. Q.E.D.—quod erat demonstrandum.
3. Q.E.F.—quod erat faciendum.
4. Delenda est Carthago.—*Cato*.
5. Nil desperandum.—*Horace*.

<sup>1</sup> *Ferre*: Present Infinitive = to bear, to endure. An irregular verb: see Lesson XXVIII.

<sup>2</sup> *Posse*: Present Infinitive = to be able. An irregular verb: see Lesson XXVI.

6. Nunc est bibendum, nunc pede libero  
pulsanda tellus (understand "est").—*Horace*.  
7. Quidquid erit, superanda omnis fortuna ferendo est.  
—*Virgil*.

## LESSON XXII

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.—ABLATIVE OF COMPARISON.—GENITIVE AFTER SUPERLATIVES.—IRREGULAR COMPARISONS

## The Comparison of Adjectives

In English we can talk of one thing being *hard*, of another being *harder*, and of a third being *hardest* of all. These three forms express different degrees, as they are called, of the quality named by the adjective. The first is called the Positive Degree, the second the Comparative Degree, the third the Superlative Degree. In English the two latter are usually formed by adding *-er* and *-est* to the Positive form. In Latin we add *-ior* and *-issimus* to the stem of the adjective (got by dropping the genitive termination). Thus Positive *durus*, Genitive *duri*, hard, gives Comparative *durior*, harder, Superlative, *durissimus*, hardest. Similarly Positive *ingens*, Genitive *ingentis*, Comparative *ingentior*, Superlative *ingentissimus*.

Adjectives like *asper* and *niger*, however, in the superlative double the *r* and add *-imus*. Thus :—

Positive.	Genitive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Asper	asperī	asperior	asperrimus
Niger	nigrī	nigrior	nigerrimus

Adjectives of the Third Declension like *acer*, *acris*, *acre*, also come under this rule. Thus :—

Acer	acris	acrior	acerrimus
------	-------	--------	-----------

You notice in these, from the presence of *e*, that the superlative is not formed from the genitive, but from the nominative.

### Exceptions

*Facilis*, -e, easy      *Humilis*, -e, low      *Similis*, -e, like  
*Difficilis*, -e, difficult      *Gracilis*, -e, slender      *Dissimilis*, -e, unlike

These adjectives form the superlative in a similar manner by doubling the *l* and adding *-imus* :—

Facilis                  facilior                  facillimus

The Superlative forms are declined like adjectives of the First Class, *asperimus*, -a, -um, etc.

The Comparatives are declined thus :—

Singular.			Plural.	
	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Durior	durius	Duriōrēs	duriōra
Acc.	Duriorem	durius	Duriōrēs	duriōra
Gen.	Duriōris		Duriōrum	
Dat.	Duriōri		Duriōribus	
Abl.	Duriōre		Duriōribus	

Sometimes the comparative, instead of expressing a higher degree, expresses too high a degree of the quality named by the adjective. Thus :—

*Hoc est durius.* This is too hard.

Similarly the superlative may express a very high degree :—

*Hoc est durissimum.* This is very hard.

When two things are compared, after the comparative you may use *quam* (than) and put the two things in the same case, or omit the *quam* when the second thing is put in the ablative case :—

*Illud est durius quam hoc* (nom. sing. neut.). That is harder than this.

*Illud est hoc* (abl. sing. neut. *durius*). That is harder than this.

The superlative usually has a genitive after it :—

*Hoc est omnium durissimum.* This is the hardest of all things.

### Irregular Comparisons :

Some adjectives are very common and yet do not form their comparatives and superlatives regularly. One or two of them you may have noticed already. Thus :—

<i>Bonus</i> , good,	gives <i>melior</i> , better,	<i>optimus</i> , best.
<i>Malus</i> , bad,	„ <i>pejor</i> , worse,	<i>pessimus</i> , worst.
<i>Magnus</i> , great,	„ <i>major</i> , greater,	<i>maximus</i> , greatest.
<i>Parvus</i> , small,	„ <i>minor</i> , smaller,	<i>minimus</i> , smallest.
<i>Multus</i> , many (in plur.)	„ <i>plus</i> (n.), more (gen. <i>pluris</i> ),	<i>plurimus</i> , most.

The following four are irregular in the superlative; you have seen most of them already :—

( <i>Exterus</i> , outer),	<i>exterior</i> , outer, <i>extremus</i> , extreme, outmost.
( <i>Inferus</i> , lower,	<i>inferior</i> , lower, <i>infimus</i> , <i>imus</i> , lowest.
( <i>Posterus</i> , later, next),	<i>posterior</i> , later, <i>postremus</i> ( <i>postumus</i> ), last.
<i>Superus</i> , upper,	<i>superior</i> , upper, <i>supremus</i> , <i>summus</i> , highest.

*Propior*, nearer, and *proximus*, nearest, are also worth noting, also *prior*, former, and *primus*, first. These have no positive adjective.

Sometimes in English we form our comparatives and superlatives by prefixing “more” and “most”, and this method is occasionally used in Latin, the adverb being *magis*, more, and *maxime*, most. This is especially common with adjectives that end in *-ius*. E.g. *magis dubius*, more doubtful; *maxime impius*, most wicked.

### Examples :

*Id postero die Flaminius senatui detulit.*

Flaminius reported that to the senate on the next day.

*In imo monte constiterunt.*

They halted at the bottom of the hill (at the hill lowest).

*In summo monte constiterunt.*

They halted on the top of the hill (on the hill top-most).

Note *primum*, firstly, *primo*, at first (adverbs); similarly *postremum*, lastly, *postremo*, at last.

The positives of the adjectives in these sentences may be neglected at present : they are rarely used.

### Latin Comparatives and Superlatives in English

You will notice that many Latin comparatives have become English words, e.g. *inferior* and *superior*. Others are

*ulterior* (further)

*excelsior* (higher)

*junior* (younger)

*senior* (older)

*interior* (further inside)

Similarly superlatives—e.g. *minimum*, *maximum*.

### Latin Phrases

1. corruptio optimi pessima.
2. a fortiori.
3. a priori.

Tacitus (*adapted*) on the English Climate

Coelum imbribus ac nebulis foedissimum.

## A Female Bluebeard

Inscriptis <sup>1</sup> tumulis septem scelerata virorum  
 "Se fecisse" <sup>2</sup> Chloe. quid pote <sup>3</sup> simplicius? <sup>4</sup>  
 —*Martial*.

Professor F. A. Wright has neatly turned this into a limerick :—

"A much married lady was Sue;  
 She thought seven husbands her due.  
 When the last one had gone,  
 She inscribed on their stone  
 'Susan's work'—and quite natural too!"

## Catullus Pays Cicero a Compliment

Disertissime Romuli <sup>5</sup> nepotum,  
 quot sunt quotque fuere, <sup>6</sup> Marce <sup>7</sup> Tulli,  
 quotque post aliis erunt in annis,  
 gratias <sup>8</sup> tibi maximas Catullus  
 agit <sup>8</sup> pessimus omnium poeta,  
 tanto <sup>9</sup> pessimus omnium poeta  
 quanto <sup>9</sup> tu optimus omnium es patronus.

<sup>1</sup> Perfect of *inscribo*.

<sup>2</sup> Perfect Infinitive of *facio*.

<sup>3</sup> *pote* = *potest*. Third singular of *possum*, "I am able".

<sup>4</sup> *simplicior* is the comparative of *simplex*, "simple".

<sup>5</sup> "Of Romulus", the builder of Rome and founder of the Roman race. His "descendants" mean all Romans.

<sup>6</sup> *fuere*, for *fuere*.

<sup>7</sup> *i.e.* Marcus Tullius Cicero.

<sup>8</sup> *gratias agere*, "to thank".

<sup>9</sup> *tanto . . . quanto*, "by so much . . . by how much"—"as . . . so".

## Passage No. 3

At ille, ut <sup>1</sup> Karthaginem venit, multo aliter ac <sup>2</sup> sperarat <sup>3</sup> *rem publicam se habentem* <sup>4</sup> cognovit. namque diuturnitate externi mali tantum exarsit intestinum bellum, *ut* numquam in pari periculo *fuert* Karthago, nisi cum deleta est. primo mercenarii milites, quibus adversus Romanos usi erant, <sup>5</sup> desciverunt: quorum numerus erat *viginti milium*. <sup>6</sup> hi totam abalienarunt <sup>7</sup> Africam, ipsam Karthaginem oppugnarunt. <sup>7</sup> *quibus* malis adeo sunt Poeni perterriti, ut etiam auxilia ab Romanis petierint eaque impetrarint. <sup>8</sup> sed extremo, cum prope iam ad desperationem pervenissent, Hamilcarem imperatorem fecerunt. is non solum hostes a muris Karthaginis removit, cum *amplius* centum milia facta essent armatorum, sed etiam *eo* compulit, *ut* locorum angustiis clausi plures fame quam ferro interirent.

<sup>1</sup> *Ut* with ind. means "as" or "when".

<sup>2</sup> *Aliter ac*: "otherwise than". Latin says, "otherwise and".

<sup>3</sup> *Sperarat* for *speraverat*.

<sup>4</sup> *Res publica aliter se habet*: "the republic is in a different condition"; *literally*, "the republic is holding itself otherwise".

<sup>5</sup> *Quibus usi erant*: *utor, uti, usus sum*, a deponent, takes the Ablative Case after it. It means "to use". For Deponent Verbs see Lesson XXXVIII.

<sup>6</sup> *Viginti milium*: *mille* is an adjective, indeclinable, meaning "thousand"; but in the plural *milia* is a noun meaning "thousands", and is declined: Nom. *milia*, Acc. *milia*, Gen. *milium*, Dat. and Abl. *milibus*. Thus: *mille equites*, adj., a thousand horsemen; *tria milia equitum*, three thousands of horsemen.

<sup>7</sup> *Abalienarunt, oppugnarunt*: -arunt for -averunt.

<sup>8</sup> *Impetrarint* for *impetraverint*.

N.B.—Consult Key for notes on the words in italics.

## LESSON XXIII

PRESENT AND IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE.—  
INDIRECT COMMAND OR PETITION

These two tenses are formed from the Active by the same changes as were explained in Lesson XXI. Thus :—

<i>Amem</i>	gives <i>amer</i>	<i>Amēs</i>	gives <i>amēris</i>
<i>Moneam</i>	„ <i>monear</i>	<i>Moneās</i>	„ <i>moneāris</i>
<i>Regam</i>	„ <i>regar</i>	<i>Regās</i>	„ <i>regāris</i>
<i>Audiam</i>	„ <i>audiar</i>	<i>Audiās</i>	„ <i>audiāris</i>
<i>Amēmus</i>	gives <i>amēmur</i>	<i>Amētis</i>	gives <i>amēmini</i>
<i>Moneāmus</i>	„ <i>moneāmur</i>	<i>Moneātis</i>	„ <i>moneāmini</i>
<i>Regāmus</i>	„ <i>regāmur</i>	<i>Regātis</i>	„ <i>regāmini</i>
<i>Audiāmus</i>	„ <i>audiāmur</i>	<i>Audiātis</i>	„ <i>audiāmini</i>

and similarly with the Imperfect Subjunctive.

## Indirect Command or Petition

This is expressed quite differently in English and in Latin. In English we say :—

He advised him to do this.

He ordered his soldiers to do this.

But Latin says :—

*Monuit eum ut hoc faceret.* He advised him that he should do this.

*Militibus imperavit ut hoc facerent.* He ordered the soldiers that they should do this.

*Ut* in these sentences does not mean “in order that”, nor yet does it mean “in such a way that”. It introduces neither a clause of consequence nor a clause of purpose. This is a new use altogether. In fact in each case *ut* introduces a clause exactly equivalent to a noun or pronoun after the verb. Thus in the second clause “to do this” is equivalent to “this” in “He

commanded *this* to the soldiers ". This *Noun clause*, as we may call it, introduced by *ut* and having its verb in the Subjunctive, is always used in Latin after verbs of *commanding* or *entreating* and the like. Such a clause is called a Substantival clause (substantive equals noun), and this use of *ut* is called the Substantival use.

The *Rule* is: Verbs of entreating, commanding, decreeing, advising, persuading, striving, effecting, take a clause introduced by *ut* and followed by the Subjunctive in Latin. If there is a *not* or any other negative in the clause, instead of *ut* use *ne*. The tense of the Subjunctive follows the rule of Sequence of Tenses in Purpose clauses (v. Lesson XI).

### Examples

I ask you to do this.	<i>A te peto ut hoc facias.</i>
I ask you not to do this.	<i>A te peto ne hoc facias.</i>
The senate decreed that he should do this.	<i>Senatus decrevit ut is hoc faceret.</i>
He made it his aim to defeat the enemy.	<i>Id egit ut hostes superaret.</i>
He effected that he should be sent into Spain as general (he brought it to pass that he was sent).	<i>Id effecit ut imperator in Hispaniam mitteretur.</i>

Here one example of each verb has been given. The principal parts of these verbs are given below :—

*Peto, petivi or petii, petitum, petere*, to ask, to entreat.  
*Decerno, decrēvi, decrētum, decernere*, to decree.  
*Ago, ēgi, actum, agere*, to do (*id ago*, I make it my aim).  
*Efficio, effēci, effectum, efficere*, to effect.

*Exceptions*.—*Jubeo* (I bid) and *Veto* (I forbid) take the accusative and infinitive. E.g. *Te jubeo abire*, "I bid you go away".

## Books as Presents

Exigis ut nostros donem tibi, Tucca, libellos.

Non faciam : nam vis <sup>1</sup> vendere, non legere.

—*Martial*.

## Passage No. 4

Omnia oppida abalienata, in his Uticam atque Hipponem, valentissima totius Africae, restituit *patriae*. neque eo fuit contentus, sed etiam fines *imperii* propagavit, *tota Africa* tantum otium reddidit, *ut* nullum in ea bellum *videretur multis annis* fuisse.

Rebus his *ex sententia* peractis *fidenti animo* atque infesto Romanis, quo facilius <sup>2</sup> causam bellandi reperiret, effecit, ut imperator cum exercitu in Hispaniam mitteretur, eoque secum duxit filium Hannibalem annorum novem.<sup>3</sup> Erat praeterea cum eo adulescens illustris, formosus, Hasdrubal; de hoc ideo mentionem fecimus, quod Hamilcare occiso ille exercitui praefuit resque magnas gessit, et *princeps* largitione vetustos pervertit mores Karthaginensium, eiusdemque post mortem Hannibal ab exercitu accepit imperium.

## LESSON XXIV

## PERFECT AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE PASSIVE.

## —VERBS WITH DATIVE

These two tenses are combinations of the Perfect Participle Passive and the Present and Imperfect

<sup>1</sup> Second singular of *volo*, "you wish", *v.* Table of Verbs.

<sup>2</sup> *Quo facilius*. When there is a comparative adjective or adverb in the Final clause, instead of *ut* Latin uses *quo*. Thus—

"By which he might find more easily."

"That he might find more easily."

<sup>3</sup> *Annorum novem*. This is a descriptive genitive, "his son nine years old".

Subjunctive respectively of the verb "to be".  
Thus :—

Perfect Subjunctive.

*Amatus sim*  
*Monitus sim*  
etc.

Pluperfect Subjunctive.

*Amatus essem*  
*Monitus essem*  
etc.

### Verbs Governing a Dative

Many *intransitive* verbs in Latin take a dative, because they require to have their sense completed by *indirect objects*. English requires us to translate them by a transitive verb, though that is not their true meaning.

E.g.,

*Parco hostibus.* I-am-sparing to the enemy, *i.e.* I spare.

*Prosum urbi.* I-am-of-advantage to the city, *i.e.* I benefit.

*Praesum exercitui.* I-am-at-the-head for the army, *i.e.* I command.

*Impero militibus.* I-give-orders to the soldiers, *i.e.* I order.

The main verbs in Latin taking a dative are comprised in the following lists :—

*Confido*, -ēre...to trust (*lit.*, to be trusting to)

*Faveo*, -ēre...to favour (*lit.*, be favourable to)

*Impero*, -are...to give an order.  
*Eis imperat ut hoc faciant*: he orders them to do this

*Invideo*, -ēre...to envy. *Eis invideo*: I envy them (*lit.*, I am envious)

*Minor*, -ari...to threaten. *Pueris minatur*: he threatens the boys

*Obedio*, -ire...to be obedient to  
*Pareo*, -ēre...to obey. *Parentibus pareo*: I obey my parents

*Persuadeo*, -ēre...to persuade.

*Eis persuadeo ut hoc faciant*: I persuade them to do this (*lit.*, I am persuasive of something to them)

*Prosum*, -desse...to profit. *Prosum tibi*: I do you good.

*Resisto*, -ēre...to resist. *Hostibus resistamus*: let us resist the enemy

*Servio*, -ire...to be of service to. *Regi servimus*: we serve a king.

*Suadeo*, -ēre...to advise. See *Persuadeo*.

*Subvenio*, -ire...to help. *Eis subvenio*: I help them (*lit.*, I come up helpfully)

Some of these verbs occasionally take an accusative of the thing and dative of the person.

*Haec militibus imperat.*

He gives these commands to the soldiers.

*Mortem eis minatur.*

He threatens death to them ("them with death" in English).

*Haec tibi invideo.*

I envy these things to you (I envy you these things).

There are of course many other verbs taking a dative, but they are less important. We have had already *cedo*, I yield to; and do not forget that the compounds of *sum*, save *possum*, take a dative.

### Latin Quotations

1. Animo imperabit sapiens, stultus serviet.—*P. Syrus*.
2. Tempori parendum.
3. Victrix <sup>1</sup> causa deis placuit, sed victa <sup>2</sup> Catoni.

### Passage No. 5

(With this passage we finish the Life of Hamilcar. There is only one thing to note in it before attempting the translation; the verb *mallet*, the last word, is the Imperfect Subjunctive of an irregular verb, *malle*, to prefer. It will be explained more fully in Lesson XXIX.)

At Hamilcar, *posteaquam mare transiit*, in Hispaniamque *venit*, magnas res *secunda* gessit *fortuna*: maximas bellicosissimasque gentes subegit, equis, armis, viris, pecunia *totam* locupletavit *Africam*. *hic cum in Italiam bellum inferre meditaretur, nono anno*

<sup>1</sup> Adjective, "conquering".

<sup>2</sup> Past participle passive of *vinco*, "I conquer".

postquam in Hispaniam venerat, in proelio pugnans adversus Vettones occisus est. huius perpetuum odium erga Romanos maxime concitasse <sup>1</sup> videtur secundum bellum Poenicum. namque Hannibal, filius eius, assiduis patris obtestationibus eo est perductus, ut interire quam Romanos non experiri mallet.

## LESSON XXV

## IMPERATIVE, INFINITIVE PASSIVE.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.—JUSSIVE SUBJUNCTIVE AND PROHIBITIONS

Turn to the Table now and learn the Imperative in each conjugation. The second person singular Present Imperative Active is always got by dropping *-re* of the Present Infinitive: *amare*, *ama*; *monere*, *mone*, etc. The third person plural is always got by adding *o* to the same person of the Present Indicative: *amant*, *amantō*; *monent*, *monentō*, etc., but this is rare.

The second person singular Present Imperative Passive is always the same as the Present Infinitive Active. Then change *-te* of the Imperative Active into *-minī* and add *r* to the remaining tenses, neglecting the forms ending in *-tote*: *amāte*, *amāminī*; *amātō*, *amātor*, etc.

The Imperative expresses a command (*impero*—*are*, “I command”)—

e.g. *Mihi pare*—“obey me” (addressed to one person).

*Mihi parēte*—“obey me” (addressed to two or more persons).

<sup>1</sup> Contracted for *concitavisse*.

*Negative Commands* (sometimes called *Prohibitions*) are expressed in two ways :—

(1) By the Imperative of *nolo*, “ I am unwilling ”, i.e. *noli* (sing.) and  *nolite* (plur.) followed by the Infinitive (v. Table of Verbs).

e.g. *Noli venīre, puer*—“ don’t come, boy ”.

*Nolite venīre, pueri*—“ don’t come, boys ”.

(2) Less commonly by *ne* with the Perfect Subjunctive.

e.g. *Ne, puer, hoc dixeris*—“ don’t say this, boy ”.

*Ne, pueri, hoc dixeritis*—“ don’t say this, boys ”.

### *Jussive Subjunctive.*

The Indicative mood states facts, the Subjunctive thoughts and suppositions. Therefore the Subjunctive is used to express wishes.

e.g. *Bene regam*—“ may I rule well ! ”

*Bene rex regat*—“ may the king rule well ! ”

*Aremus*—“ let us love ”.

A negative wish is expressed by *ne* with the present subjunctive.

e.g. *Ne nunc moriar*—“ let me not die now ! ”

Wishes for the past (i.e. unfulfilled wishes) are expressed by *utinam* followed by the Imperfect or Pluperfect Subjunctive.

e.g. *Utinam vivus esses*—“ would that you were alive ! ”

*Utinam hic fuisses*—“ would that you had been here ! ”

## Infinitive Passive

For the Present Infinitive Passive change the final *-e* of the Present Infinitive Active into *-ī*; but in the Third Conjugation change *-ere* into *-i*, thus: *regere, regi*.

The Future Infinitive Passive is formed from the Supine and the Present Infinitive Passive of *eo, iri*, to go: *amatum īrī*, "to be being gone for the purpose of loving", that is, "to be about to be loved".

Note that in such a sentence as *Dixit eum amatum iri* (he said that man was going to be loved) *amatum* governs *eum*, and does not agree with it.

## Conditional Clauses

1. "If he had done this he *would have* paid the penalty."

This is what is called a conditional sentence, a sentence with a condition expressed in it, contained in the "if" clause. On looking at it you will see that it refers to the past, and that it is implied that the condition was not fulfilled; that is, he did not do it, and was not punished. Such a sentence in Latin contains two Pluperfect Subjunctives:—

*Si hoc fecisset poenas dedisset*, which means "if he had done that, he would have been punished".

2. Now consider this sentence:—

"If he were to do (or did) this he *would* be punished."

This sentence obviously refers to the Future. If he were to act in a certain way in the future, he would pay the penalty in the future. Such a conditional sentence has two Present Subjunctives in Latin:—

*Si hoc faciat poenas det*.

Never mind the fact that "would be" suggests an Imperfect Subjunctive. It refers to the future and must be Present tense in Latin.

3. Distinguish this carefully from a conditional sentence like that given in Lesson VI.

*Si hoc fecerit poenas dabit.*

If he does (shall have done) this he *will* pay the penalty.

Notice how much more exact Latin is than English in this last example. The time or the "if" clause precedes that of the main sentence, and therefore the *future perfect* tense is more logical than the present.

### Imperatives Familiar in English

1. Recipe.
2. Nota bene (N.B.).
3. Cave<sup>1</sup> canem.
4. Festina lente.
5. Vade mecum.
6. Carpe<sup>2</sup> diem.
7. Ave atque vale.
8. Noli<sup>3</sup> me tangere<sup>4</sup>

### From the Prayer Book

1. Cantate Domino.
2. Benedicite,<sup>5</sup> omnia opera.
3. Venite exultemus<sup>6</sup> Domino.

### Sir Christopher Wren's Epitaph in St. Paul's

Si monumentum requiris, circumspice.

<sup>1</sup> "beware of".

<sup>2</sup> Literally, "pluck".

<sup>3</sup> Imperative of *nolo*. Literally, "be unwilling" and so "don't".

<sup>4</sup> "to touch".

<sup>5</sup> "Bless-ye."

<sup>6</sup> "Let us rejoice."

## A Drunkard's Promises

Omnia promittis, cum tota nocte bibisti;  
Mane nihil praestas.<sup>1</sup> Pollio, mane bibe.

—*Martial*.

## A Humble Invitation

Aude,<sup>2</sup> hospes, contemnere opes et te quoque dignum  
Finge deo,<sup>3</sup> rebusque veni non asper egenis.

—*Verg. Aen.* VIII 364.

## May She Meet the Wife!

Omnes quas habuit, Fabiane, Lycoris amicas  
Extulit.<sup>4</sup> Uxori fiat<sup>5</sup> amica meae.—*Martial*.

## Latin Phrases and Sayings

1. Exeat.<sup>6</sup>
2. Caveat emptor.
3. Aut bibat aut abeat.<sup>7</sup> (Proverb.)
4. Ruat coelum, fiat<sup>8</sup> justitia.
5. Absit<sup>9</sup> omen.
6. Cedant arma togae.<sup>10</sup>—*Cicero*.
7. Dum vivimus, vivamus.
8. Requiescat in pace. (R.I.P.)

<sup>1</sup> *praesto*, "I furnish or provide".

<sup>2</sup> *aude*—imperative of *audeo*.

<sup>3</sup> *Dignus* governs an ablative. In English we say "worthy of".

<sup>4</sup> Irregular perfect of *effero*, "I carry outside"—i.e. "to burial".

<sup>5</sup> Subjunctive of *fi*, "I become".

<sup>6</sup> *Literally*, "let him (or her) go out". *exit*—"he goes out",  
*exeunt*—"they go out" (*v.* Table of Verbs).

<sup>7</sup> "let him go away" (from *ab-eo*).

<sup>8</sup> *Fio* is used as the passive of *facio* (*v.* Table of Verbs).

<sup>9</sup> Subjunctive of *absum*, "Let it be absent!"

<sup>10</sup> The robe of a Roman senator, and so here used for the arts of civil life.

Here are some lines of *Martial* on a rival, who is bursting with envy because he is famous. "Then let him burst" is his wish in the last line.

### On a Rival

Rumpitur <sup>1</sup> invidia quidam, carissime Iuli,  
 quod me Roma legit, rumpitur invidia.  
 rumpitur invidia quod turba semper in omni  
 monstramur digito, rumpitur invidia.  
 rumpitur invidia tribuit quod Caesar uterque <sup>2</sup>  
 ius mihi natorum, <sup>3</sup> rumpitur invidia.  
 rumpitur invidia quod rus mihi dulce sub urbe est  
 parvaque in urbe domus, rumpitur invidia.  
 rumpitur invidia quod sum iucundus amicis,  
 quod conviva frequens, rumpitur invidia.  
 rumpitur invidia quod amamur quodque probamur.  
 rumpatur quisquis rumpitur invidia.

### Passage No. 6 <sup>4</sup>

Cornelius Nepos, *Life of Hannibal*

(Passages 6-18)

### *His Hatred of Rome*

Hannibal, Hamilcaris filius, Karthaginiensis. si verum est, quod nemo dubitat, <sup>5</sup> ut populus Romanus

<sup>1</sup> "is being burst", i.e. "is bursting".

<sup>2</sup> Titus and Domitian, the two emperors reigning in Martial's time.

<sup>3</sup> The father of three children at Rome had certain privileges.

<sup>4</sup> The preceding passages embrace the Life of Hamilcar. The remaining passages contain the Life of his more famous son, Hannibal. Don't be confused because the first sentence contains no verb: it is a sort of heading to the Life—"Hannibal, the son of Hamilcar, a Carthaginian".

<sup>5</sup> *Quod nemo dubitat*: quod is the relative—"If it is true, which no one doubts".

omnes gentes virtute superarit,<sup>1</sup> non est infitiandum<sup>2</sup> Hannibalem tanto<sup>3</sup> praestitisse ceteros imperatores prudentia, quanto<sup>3</sup> populus Romanus antecedit fortitudine cunctas nationes. nam quotienscumque cum eo congressus est in Italia, semper discessit superior. quod nisi<sup>4</sup> domi civium suorum invidia debilitatus esset, Romanos videtur superare potuisse.<sup>5</sup> Sed multorum obtrectatio devicit unius virtutem.

Hic autem velut hereditate<sup>6</sup> relictum odium paternum erga Romanos sic conservavit, ut prius animam quam id deposuerit, qui quidem, cum patria pulsus esset et alienarum opum indigeret, nunquam destiterit<sup>7</sup> animo bellare cum Romanis.

## LESSON XXVI

### POSSUM.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES—Continued

There are seven common irregular verbs in Latin :—

Possū, I am able	Volo, I am willing
Eō, I go	Nōlō, I am unwilling
Ferō, I carry	Mālō, I prefer
Fiō, I become, I am made : Passive of facio.	

<sup>1</sup> *Ut...superarit* : this is a substantival clause subject to *verum est*—"If it is true that the Roman people has surpassed". *Superarit* is contracted for *superaverit*.

<sup>2</sup> *Infitiandum* is Gerund of *infitari*, a deponent verb, "to deny".

<sup>3</sup> *Tanto*, "by so much"; *quanto*, "by how much".

<sup>4</sup> *Quod nisi* : literally, "as to which unless". We should say, "but if . . . not".

<sup>5</sup> *Videtur superare potuisse* : literally, "he seems to have been able to conquer". We would say, "it seems he would have been able to conquer". Latin uses *videtur* personally, English impersonally, that is, without a person as subject. *Potuisse* is the Perfect Infinitive of an irregular verb = to have been able. See Lesson XXVI.

<sup>6</sup> *Velut hereditate* : "left as if by a legacy".

<sup>7</sup> *Qui nunquam destiterit* : the relative here takes the Subjunctive instead of the Indicative because it means "since he" (who since).

They are irregular only in the tenses derived from the Present stem, that is, in the Present, Imperfect and Future. For their conjugation *v.* Part III, Table of Verbs.

Turn now to the table and learn the conjugation of *possum*, I am able. It will help you to remember that *possum* is *pot-* + *sum*, the *t* being changed to *s* before the parts of *sum* that begin with *s*, and the *f* in the Perfect tenses being dropped. Thus *Pos-sum*, *Pot-es*, and *Pot-ui* (not *potfui*).

Note this verb has only a Present and Perfect Infinitive, and has no Participles, Gerund or Supines.

### Conditional Clauses—*Continued*

“ If he were now doing this he would now be paying the penalty.”

This sentence refers to the Present, and it is implied that he is not now doing this, and is not now paying the penalty. This is expressed in Latin by two Imperfect Subjunctives :—

*Si hoc faceret, poenas daret.*

You remember if the Condition referred to the past, and its non-fulfilment was implied, we said two Pluperfect Subjunctives were used. These, however, may be either or both Imperfect Subjunctives, if you do not wish to talk of a completed, but of a continuous action or state. Thus “ If he had been doing this he would have paid the penalty ” would be *Si hoc faceret poenas dedisset*. Similarly “ If he had done this he would have been paying the penalty ” would be *Si hoc fecisset poenas daret*. And again *Si hoc faceret poenas daret* may mean, as above, “ If he were doing this he

would be paying the penalty" (present time) or "If he had been doing this he would have been paying the penalty". Only the context or the insertion of an adverb such as *nunc* or *tum* can tell you which is really meant.

### Two Famous Lines

1. *Tantum religio potuit suadere malorum.*—*Lucretius*.

2. *Possunt quia posse videntur.*—*Virgil*.

Note.—*Religio* is nearer our "superstition" than "religion".

### Paula

Martial does not want to marry Paula as she is too old, or rather not old enough. If she had been a little older, she might have been worth marrying in the hope of succeeding to her wealth after her death.

Nubere <sup>1</sup> Paula cupit nobis, ego ducere <sup>2</sup> Paulam  
nolo : anus est. vellem, <sup>3</sup> si magis <sup>4</sup> esset anus.

### Passage No. 7

*Hannibal at 26 is made commander-in-chief of the Carthaginian army. He conquers Spain and crosses the Alps.*

Hic igitur, post Hamilcaris obitum, Hasdrubale imperatore suffecto, equitatus omni praefuit. hoc quoque interfecto exercitus summam imperii <sup>5</sup> ad eum

<sup>1</sup> "to marry", of the bride. *Lit.*, "to veil oneself", for the bridegroom.

<sup>2</sup> "to marry", of the man. *Lit.*, "to lead".

<sup>3</sup> Impf. subj. of *volo* (*v.* Table of Verbs).

<sup>4</sup> *magis*, "more", comparative adv. of *magnus*.

<sup>5</sup> *Summam imperii*, "the total of the power", "the chief control".

detulit. id Karthaginem delatum publice<sup>1</sup> comprobatum est. sic Hannibal minor septem et viginti annis natus<sup>2</sup> imperator factus proximo triennio<sup>3</sup> omnes gentes Hispaniae bello subegit: Saguntum, foederatam<sup>4</sup> civitatem, vi expugnavit,<sup>5</sup> tres exercitus maximos comparavit. Ex his unum in Africam misit, alterum cum Hasdrubale fratre in Hispania reliquit, tertium<sup>6</sup> in Italiam secum duxit. saltum Pyrenaeum transiit. quacumque iter fecit, cum omnibus incolis confligit: neminem nisi victum dimisit. ad Alpes posteaquam venit, quae Italiam ab Gallia seiungunt, quas nemo unquam cum exercitu ante eum praeter Herculem Graium transierat (quo facto<sup>7</sup> is hodie saltus Graius appellatur), Alpico conantes prohibere transitu<sup>8</sup> concidit, loca patefecit, itinera muniit,<sup>9</sup> effecit ut ea<sup>10</sup> elephantus ornatus<sup>11</sup> ire posset, qua antea unus homo inermis vix poterat repere. hac copias traduxit in Italiamque pervenit.

You should now be able to read a beautiful, though

<sup>1</sup> *Publice*: not "publicly", but "in the name of the State".

<sup>2</sup> *Minor quinque et viginti annis natus*: this is a very peculiar Latin idiom meaning "less than five and twenty years of age", literally "born less than five and twenty years".

<sup>3</sup> *Proximo triennio*, "within the next three years".

<sup>4</sup> *Foederatam* is an adjective and implies that the State had a special treaty of alliance with Rome.

<sup>5</sup> *Vi expugnare* means "to storm" ("to capture by force").

<sup>6</sup> *Unum... alterum... tertium*, "one... another... the third".

<sup>7</sup> *Quo facto*: This is not an Ablative Absolute. It means "from that deed", "by reason of that (which) deed".

<sup>8</sup> *Prohibere transitu*, "to keep from the passage". *Transitu* is an Ablative of Separation.

<sup>9</sup> *Itinera muniit* is simply "made roads", not "fortified roads", although *munire* means strictly "to fortify".

<sup>10</sup> *Ea...qua*, "by that road by which"—both adverbs formed from Ablative of pronouns.

<sup>11</sup> *Elephantus ornatus*, "an elephant with its equipment".

untranslatable poem of *Catullus*, in which he pictures himself and Lesbia at the height of their love, showering kisses on each other, regardless of what the world may say.

### Come, Live with Me and be My Love

Vivamus, mea Lesbia, atque amemus,  
rumoresque senum severiorum  
omnes unius aestimemus assis.<sup>1</sup>  
soles occidere et redire possunt :  
nobis cum semel occidit brevis lux,  
nox est perpetua una dormienda.  
da mi <sup>2</sup> basia mille, deinde centum,  
dein mille altera, dein secunda centum,  
deinde usque <sup>3</sup> altera mille, deinde centum.  
dein, cum milia multa fecerimus,  
conturbabimus <sup>4</sup> illa, ne sciamus,  
aut ne quis malus invidere <sup>5</sup> possit,  
cum <sup>6</sup> tantum <sup>7</sup> sciat esse basiorum.<sup>7</sup>

## LESSON XXVII

### EŌ.—CONDITIONAL SENTENCES.—QUIN AND QUOMINUS

*Eō, īre, īi or īvi, ītum* . . . to go

Turn to the Table and learn this verb off by heart.  
Note again that only the Present stem tenses are

<sup>1</sup> *assis*, gen. of price. The “*as*” was a copper coin worth a little more than a farthing.

<sup>2</sup> Abbreviation for “*mihi*”.

<sup>3</sup> *usque*, “continuously”, “without interruption” (adv.).

<sup>4</sup> *conturbo*, “confuse”, *i.e.* mix them up and lose count. It was considered bad luck to count your blessings too accurately.

<sup>5</sup> *invidere*, more than “envy” here; “to cast an evil eye upon”.

<sup>6</sup> *cum*, since. *cum* with subjunctive often has a causal sense.

<sup>7</sup> *Lit.*, “so much of kisses”, *i.e.* “so many kisses”.

irregular. It is a very useful verb, since it forms many compounds. These always form the Perfect in *-ii*, not *-ivi* :—

<i>Reddō</i>	<i>redī</i>	<i>reddtum</i>	<i>redire</i>	.	.	to return
<i>Inēō</i>	<i>intī</i>	<i>inttum</i>	<i>inire</i>	.	.	to enter
<i>Abēō</i>	<i>abtī</i>	<i>abittum</i>	<i>abire</i>	.	.	to go away
<i>Adēō</i>	<i>adtī</i>	<i>adttum</i>	<i>adire</i>	.	.	to approach

### Conditional Sentences—*Continued*

There is a large class of conditional sentences in which nothing is implied as to the fulfilment of the condition. (a) "If he is doing this he is a fool". In this sentence we neither imply that he is doing it, nor yet that he is not doing it. We simply say, "if he is, he is a fool". Similarly in sentences like (b) "If he said this he was a fool", (c) "If he was saying this he was a fool". These in Latin, as in English, have the Indicative Mood.

- (a) Si hoc facit, stultus est.
- (b) Si hoc dixit, stultus erat.
- (c) Si hoc dicebat, stultus erat.

### Quin and Quominus

*Eum inhibuit quominus rediret.* He prevented him from returning.

*Vix inhiberi potuit quin rediret.* Scarce was he able to be prevented from returning (but that he should return).

*Non dubium est quin hac mente semper futurus sim.* There is no doubt but that I shall always be of this mind.

*Nemo est quin hoc putet.* There is no one but thinks this.

*Non dubitavit quin hoc ita esset.* He did not doubt but that this was so.

*Non fieri potest quin hoc ita sit.* It is impossible but that this is so (that this is not so).

They are used thus : *Quominus* with the Subjunctive after a verb of hindering is translated in English by "from" and the Participle. *Quin* is found only after negative verbs and phrases, *i.e.* verbs and phrases with a "not" expressed or implied, and is usually translated by "but" or "who . . . not".

### Passage No. 8

*Hannibal defeats P. C. Scipio at the Trebia. He loses an eye and advances on Rome.*

Confluxerat apud Rhodanum cum P. Cornelio Scipione consule eumque pepulerat. cum hoc eodem Clastidii <sup>1</sup> apud Padum *decernit* sauciumque inde ac fugatum *dimittit*. tertio idem Scipio cum collega Tiberio Longo apud Trebiam adversus eum venit. cum iis manum conseruit : utrosque profligavit. inde per Ligures <sup>2</sup> Appenninum <sup>3</sup> transit, petens Etruriam <sup>4</sup> hoc itinere <sup>5</sup> adeo gravi morbo *adficitur oculorum*, ut postea numquam dextro <sup>6</sup> aeque bene usus sit.

Qua valetudine cum etiamtum premeretur lecticaque ferretur, C. Flaminium consulem apud Trasumenum cum exercitu insidiis *circumventum occidit*, neque multo post C. Centenium praetorem cum delecta manu saltus

<sup>1</sup> At Clastidium, locative.

<sup>2</sup> *Ligures* : these were a tribe in the north of Italy, dwelling round the Gulf of Genoa.

<sup>3</sup> *Appenninum* : The great central range of Italy. We talk of "the Apennines", the Romans spoke of "the Apennine".

<sup>4</sup> *Etruriam* : the district of Italy north of Rome and the Tiber.

<sup>5</sup> Note the way in which the meaning of *iter* varies—now "a road", now "a march", now "a journey".

<sup>6</sup> *Nunquam dextro* : "He never had the proper use of his right eye". This disease, in fact, is said to have made the right eye blind.

occupantem. hinc in Apuliam pervenit. ibi *obviam ei venerunt* duo consules, C. Terentius et L. Aemilius. utriusque exercitus uno proelio fugavit, Paulum consulem occidit et aliquot praeterea *consulares*, in iis Cn. Servilium Geminum, qui superiore anno fuerat consul.

Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est nullo resistente. in propinquis urbi montibus moratus est. cum aliquot ibi dies castra *habuisset* et Capuam *reverteretur*. Q. Fabius Maximus, dictator Romanus, in agro *Falerno* ei se obiecit.

#### Notes.

*Decernit, dimittit, adfcitur* : The present tense is used here, as often in Latin, to give vividness to the story. In English we should more naturally use the past tense, "he contended . . . he sent . . . he was affected . . ."

*Adeo gravi morbo . . . ut* : This is a consecutive clause introduced by *ut*.

*Circumventum occidit* : Latin uses a past participle and a finite verb : in English we use two finite verbs—"he surrounded and slew".

*Obviam ei venerunt* : literally, "came in the way to him". *Obviam ire* and *obviam venire* are regular Latin phrases for "to meet".

*Consulares* : While a Roman held the chief magistracy he was consul. On the expiry of his year in office he became *consularis* or ex-consul.

*Habuisset et reverteretur* : Note the difference in the tenses, the first denoting a completed action, the second one in process of completion—continuous.

*In agro Falerno* : *ager* may mean a single field, or it may mean territory as here.

#### A Passage from the New Testament

The New Testament was originally written in Greek, but was translated several times into Latin. The most famous of the Latin translations was the *Biblia Sacra*

*Vulgatae Editionis*, now known as the "*Vulgate*", by St. Jerome in the 4th century A.D. This is a slightly simplified extract from Luke ii, verses 8-14.

### Shepherds in the Fields

Erant in regione eadem pastores in agris excubantes <sup>1</sup> et custodientes noctu <sup>2</sup> gregem suum. Et Domini nuntius adstitit <sup>3</sup> eis, et Domini gloria circumfulsit <sup>4</sup> eos et timuerunt magno timore. Et dixit eis nuntius, "Nolite timere: ecce enim vobis gaudium magnum nuntio, quod toti populo erit: quia vobis hodie natus est servator, qui est Christus Dominus, in urbe Davidi. Et hoc vobis signum erit: invenietis infantem circumdatum incunabulis <sup>5</sup> et iacentem in stabulo.<sup>6</sup>" Et subito erat cum nuntio multitudo e caelesti <sup>7</sup> exercitu laudantes <sup>8</sup> Deum et dicentes,<sup>8</sup> "Gloria in altissimis Deo, et in terra pax in hominibus bonae voluntatis."<sup>9</sup>

### LESSON XXVIII

#### FERO.—QUESTIONS, DIRECT AND INDIRECT

Now turn again to the Table and learn the Irregular verb *Fero*, I carry, I bring. It is irregular only in certain tenses. It is not irregular in the Imperfect and Future Indicative, nor in the Present Subjunctive. Its passive, too, is formed from the Active according to

<sup>1</sup> "sleeping out".

<sup>2</sup> "by night".

<sup>3</sup> "stood by them".

<sup>4</sup> "shone around".

<sup>5</sup> "swaddling-clothes".

<sup>6</sup> "stable".

<sup>7</sup> "heavenly".

<sup>8</sup> plural, "men praising" in apposition to *multitudo*.

<sup>9</sup> "wish", "will".

the usual rules. This again is a very useful verb, forming many compounds :—

*in* + *fero* gives *in-fĕro*, *in-tŭli*, *il-lātum*, *in-ferre*, to carry into.

Note before *l*, *n* becomes *l*.

*ad* + *fero* gives *af-fĕro*, *at-tŭli*, *al-lātum*, *af-ferre*, to carry to.

Note the *d* changing to *f*, to *t*, to *l*.

*ex* + *fero* gives *ef-fĕro*, *ex-tŭli*, *e-lātum*, *ef-ferre*, to carry out.

Note the changes the preposition undergoes.

These are some of the common compounds, but you must notice the others as they occur. Try always to understand the force of the preposition with which the verb is compounded.

### Questions

In English we mark a question by altering the order of the words, or by introducing the sentence by some interrogative word. The first method is not used in Latin. To show that a sentence is a question in Latin we put a little word *-ne*, or *num*, at the beginning of the sentence—*num* at the beginning, *-ne* after the first emphatic word. If the question expects the answer “yes”, e.g. Surely you have done it? we employ *nonne*.

*Librumne tulisti* ? Have you brought the book ?

*Num librum tulisti* ? You haven't brought the book, have you ? (expecting the answer “no”).

*Nonne librum tulisti* ? Have you not brought the book ? (expecting the answer “yes”).

### Indirect Questions

All these are direct questions. But “He asked me whether I had brought the book” is an indirect question—that is, a reported question. The following are some further examples of this :—

1. *A me petivit num librum tulissem* (or *librumne tulissem*).
2. *A me petivit quando librum laturus essem*.
3. *A me petivit quem librum ferrem*.

1. He asked me if I had brought the book.
2. He asked me when I would bring the book.
3. He asked me what book I was bringing.

We call words like *if*, *when*, *what*, interrogative particles, and these sentences always have one of these at the beginning. "If" may be *num* or *-ne*, but *-ne* must be put directly after the first word of the sentence and joined to it. It is never *sī*, as of course it is not a condition, but equivalent to "whether". "When" in such a sentence is not *cum*, but *quando*. "What", of course, is some part of *quis*. The *interrogative* pronoun, "who", "which", "what", is just the same as the relative given in Lesson XVI, but has *quis* and *quid* as well as *qui* and *quod* in the nominative singular masculine and neuter. *Qui* and *quod*, however, are used as adjectives with nouns; *quis* and *quid* alone, as pronouns. These sentences must be introduced by an interrogative word, and must have their verb in the Subjunctive. The tense follows the usual rules of sequences :—

Present Subjunctive after Primary tenses } denoting con-  
Imperfect Subjunctive after Historic tenses } tinuous action.

Perfect Subjunctive after both } denoting com-  
Pluperfect Subjunctive after Historic tenses } pleted action.

Future Subjunctive. Future Participle + *sim* (or *essem*, in historic sequence).

Compare the following :—

*A me petit* { *num librum feram.*  
                  { *librumne feram.* } He asks me if I am bringing the book.

*A me petit librumne tulerim.* He asks me if I have brought the book.

*A me petit num librum laturus sim.* He asks me if I will bring the book.

### Passage No. 9

*Hannibal's army is entrapped by Q. Fabius Maximus, but H. extricates it at night by a trick without loss.*

(In this passage there are frequent examples of *Participle + Finite verb* in Latin, equal to *two Finite verbs* in English.)

Hic clausus locorum angustiis noctu sine ullo detrimento exercitus se expedivit Fabioque, callidissimo imperatori, dedit verba.<sup>1</sup> namque obducta nocte sarmenta in cornibus iuvenorum deligata incendit eiusque generis multitudinem magnam dispalatam immisit.<sup>2</sup> quo repentino obiecto visu tantum terrorem iniecit exercitui Romanorum, ut egredi extra vallum nemo sit ausus. hanc post rem gestam non ita multis diebus<sup>3</sup> M. Minucium Rufum, magistrum equitum pari ac dictatorem imperio,<sup>4</sup> dolo productum in proelium fugavit. Tiberium Sempronium Gracchum, iterum consulem, in Lucanis absens in insidias inductum sustulit.<sup>5</sup> M. Claudium Marcellum, quinquies consulem, apud Venusiam pari modo interfecit. longum est<sup>6</sup> omnia enumerare proelia. quare hoc unum satis

<sup>1</sup> *Lit.*, "gave (empty) words", so "tricked".

<sup>2</sup> *Magnam dispalatam immisit*: let loose a great multitude, "having straggled", or, perhaps, "having been scattered", that is, "let loose far and wide".

<sup>3</sup> *Non ita multis diebus*: Ablative of time within which.

<sup>4</sup> *Pari ac dictatorem imperio*, "with power the same as the dictator".

<sup>5</sup> Irregular perfect of *tollo*, "take away", so "destroy".

<sup>6</sup> *Longum est*: Latin says "it is long" where we say "it would be long".

erit dictum, ex quo intelligi possit,<sup>1</sup> quantus ille fuerit : <sup>2</sup> quamdiu in Italia fuit, nemo ei in acie restitit, nemo adversus eum post Cannensem pugnam in campo castra posuit.

### Two Epigrams of Catullus

The first is on Cæsar, who was a contemporary of Catullus. Catullus did not like him, and was not afraid to say so. In the second line his contempt is suggested by his complete indifference whether Cæsar is dark or fair.

#### Indifference

Nil <sup>3</sup> nimium studeo, Cæsar, tibi velle <sup>4</sup> placere,  
nec scire utrum <sup>5</sup> sis albus an <sup>5</sup> ater homo.

The following epigram is the perfect expression of the bitter-sweet of love. Catullus has been disappointed in love and lost his respect for Lesbia, but cannot stop desiring her.

To be wroth with one we love  
Doth work like madness in the brain.

—Coleridge.

Odi <sup>6</sup> et amo : quare id faciam, fortasse requiris.  
nescio, sed fieri <sup>7</sup> sentio et excrucior.<sup>8</sup>

*I hate yet love her. Will you ask me why ?  
I know not. But I feel. 'Tis agony.*

<sup>1</sup> *Ex quo possit* = *ut ex eo possit*, "that it may be perceived" : a *qui* Final clause. See Lesson XXXIII.

<sup>2</sup> *Quantus ille fuerit* : Indirect question.

<sup>3</sup> *nil*—abbrev. for *nihil*, "not at all".

<sup>4</sup> inf. of *volo*.

<sup>5</sup> *utrum...an*, "whether...or".

<sup>6</sup> *Odi*—perfect of a defective verb, "I hate".

<sup>7</sup> *fieri*—Inf. of *fi*, used as a passive of *facio*, "to be done, to happen".

<sup>8</sup> *excrucior*—"I am being tortured".

## A Christmas Hymn

This hymn appears to have been written in the seventeenth century, but we do not know by whom. The well-known English translation, "O come, all ye faithful" dates from the nineteenth century.

Adeste,<sup>1</sup> fideles,  
laeti triumphantes;  
Venite, venite in Bethlehem:  
natum videte  
regem angelorum:  
Venite adoremus Dominum.

Deum de Deo,  
Lumen de lumine  
Parturit Virgo Mater,  
Deum Verum,  
genitum<sup>2</sup> non factum.  
Venite adoremus Dominum.

en grege relicto,  
humiles ad cunas,<sup>3</sup>  
vocati pastores appropinquant.  
et nos ovanti<sup>4</sup>  
gradu festinemus  
Venite, adoremus Dominum.

stella duce,<sup>5</sup> Magi  
Christum adorantes,

<sup>1</sup> *adeste*, imperative second pers. plur. of *adsum*, "be present".

<sup>2</sup> *genitum*, past partic. pass. from *gigno*, "born".

<sup>3</sup> *cunas*, "cradle".

<sup>4</sup> *ovanti*, "rejoicing".

<sup>5</sup> *stella duce*, "under the leadership of a star". *Lit.*, "a star being leader"—ablative absol. (v. Lesson XIV).

aurum, thus,<sup>1</sup> myrrham,<sup>2</sup> dant munera.

Jesu infanti

corda praebeamus :

Venite adoremus Dominum.

aeterni<sup>3</sup> parentis

splendorem aeternum,

velatum sub carne videbimus,

Deum infantem,

pannis<sup>4</sup> involutum,

Venite adoremus Dominum.

cantet nunc hymnos,

chorus angelorum ;

cantet nunc aula caelestium,

Gloria

in excelsis Deo !

Venite adoremus Dominum.

## LESSON XXIX

### VŎLO, NŎLŎ, MĀLŎ AND VERBS WITH INFINITIVE

The three verbs *volo*, I am willing, *nolo*, I am not willing, *malo*, I prefer (I am more willing), are so much alike that they had better be learned together.

*Nolo* is simply *non* + *volo*, as you will see by a look at the present tense. Sometimes the *non* is kept entire, sometimes the *v* of *volo* is simply changed into *n*. Thus *nonvis*, *nonvult*; but *nolumus*, *nolunt*.

Similarly *malo* is simply *ma-* (for *magis*, more) and *volo*, "I am more willing", that is, "I prefer".

<sup>1</sup> *thus*, "incense".

<sup>3</sup> *aeterni*, "eternal".

<sup>2</sup> *myrrham*, "myrrh".

<sup>4</sup> *pannis*, "rags".

Note all three form the Imperfect Indicative alike by adding *-ebam*, etc.; the Perfect Indicative by adding *-ui*, *-uisti*, *-uit*, etc.; the Future Indicative by adding *-am*, *-es*, *-et*, etc.; the Present Subjunctive by adding *-im*, *-is*, *-it*, etc., to the Present stem; and the Imperfect Subjunctive by adding *-m*, *-s*, *-t*, etc., to the Infinitive. They all lack the Passive voice.

### Verbs with the Infinitive in Latin

Not every verb which is followed by an Infinitive in English takes an Infinitive in Latin. If you think of the English form of a Latin Final or Consecutive or Substantival clause, or of the Supine construction after verbs of motion, you will at once see that this is so. In fact you must always be careful when putting an Infinitive after a Latin verb. The verbs which take this in Latin belong to three great classes :—

1. Verbs which denote Possibility or the Reverse.
2. Verbs which denote Beginning or Ceasing.
3. Verbs which denote Desire or Endeavour.

There are a good many more which do not come under these heads, but these are the commoner ones. The following list gives some of the Latin verbs :—

1. *Possum*, I am able, I can: *Non possumus haec facere*, we cannot do this.

2. *Coepe*, *incipio*, I begin: *Praeesse exercitui coeperat*, he began to be at the head of the army. See note on *odi* (p. 151).

3. *Cupio*, I desire: *Cupio haec cognoscere*, I desire to know these things.

*Volo*, *nolo*, *malō*.

*Conor*, I attempt.

*Statuo*, I resolve: *Romanis bellum inferre statuit*, he resolved to attack the Romans.

Of the others the more common are :—

*Debeo*, I ought: *Inimicis ignoscere debemus*, we ought to pardon our enemies.

*Videor*, I seem.

*Scio*, I know } *Scio (disco) hoc facere*, I know (I am learning) how  
*Disco*, I learn } to do this.

*Odi*, I hate (only used in the Perfect Tenses, the Perfect having a present meaning. Similarly *coepi*).

In translation, then, when you come across one of these verbs, you must always look for an Infinitive to complete the meaning.

### Passage No. 10

*Hannibal is recalled to Carthage, and is defeated by Scipio at Zama.*

Hinc invictus patriam defensum <sup>1</sup> revocatus bellum gessit adversus P. Scipionem, filium eius Scipionis, quem ipse primo apud Rhodānum, iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam fugaverat. cum hoc exhaustis iam patriae facultatibus cupivit in praesens <sup>2</sup> bellum componere, quo valentior <sup>3</sup> postea congredetur. In colloquium convenit: condiciones non convenerunt. <sup>4</sup> post id factum paucis diebus apud Zamam cum eodem conflixit: pulsus (incredibile dictu) <sup>5</sup> biduo et duabus noctibus Hadrumētum pervenit, quod abest Zama

<sup>1</sup> Supine: "to defend".

<sup>2</sup> *In praesens*: "for the present".

<sup>3</sup> *Quo valentior*: when a Final clause has an adjective or adverb in the comparative degree in it, *quo* is used instead of *ut*.

<sup>4</sup> *Conditiones non convenerunt*, "the terms did not come together, fit, suit".

<sup>5</sup> *Incredibile dictu*: *Dictu* is the second Supine. The phrase means "unbelievable in the telling". *Dictu* is really the ablative of an old noun of the Fourth Declension, as are all such second Supines.

circiter milia <sup>1</sup> passuum trecenta. in hac fuga Numidae, qui simul cum eo ex acie excesserant, insidiati sunt ei : quos non solum effugit, sed etiam ipsos oppressit. Hadrumeti <sup>2</sup> reliquos e fuga collegit : novis dilectibus paucis diebus multos contraxit.

Cum in apparando acerrime esset occupatus, Karthaginienses bellum cum Romanis composuerunt. ille tamen exercitui postea praefuit resque in Africa gessit usque ad P. Sulpicium <sup>3</sup> C. Aurelium consules.

*Note.*—As regards the place-names, the Rhône is the river in the south of France, the Po is in the north of Italy, the Trebia is its tributary. Zama is a town near Carthage in the north of Africa, and Hadrumetum is in the same quarter.

### LESSON XXX

#### HINTS ON TRANSLATING VERSE.—TWO PASSAGES FROM OVID

##### Hints on Translating Verse

There are two important differences between Latin and English poetry. English poets make great use of rhyme : Latin poetry, as the Romans wrote it, is always rhymeless. In English, the accent or beat falls on the heavier syllables and the number and arrangement of the beats determines the metre :—

Téll me whére is Fáncy bréd,  
I'n the heárt or i'n the heád,  
Hów begót, how nóurishéd?

<sup>1</sup> "A thousand Roman paces" is roughly an English mile.

<sup>2</sup> Locative.

<sup>3</sup> *Usque ad P. Sulpicium* : "right on up to". We should say, "up till the time of".

In Latin metre is determined by the *length* of syllables, which is a different matter. There is not space here to go into the intricate rules which determine whether a syllable is long or short. They are set out in full in the chapter on Prosody in Kennedy's *Revised Latin Primer*. Here are three of the most important :—

1. A syllable is short when it contains a short vowel followed by a single consonant or by another vowel : *pāter*, *pūer*.

2. A syllable is long when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong : *frāter*, *mēnsāe*, *nēmo*.

3. A vowel short by nature becomes long by position when it is followed by two consonants or by *x* or *z* : *mōlliā*, *sūplēx*, but it can be either long or short if followed by a consonant and “*r*”, e.g., *gr*, *tr*, etc.

*Note*.—When a word ends with a vowel and is followed by a word beginning with a vowel, the first vowel is elided in scansion, e.g. *metusque aberant* below.

4. Final *a* is sometimes short, sometimes long. The nominative of the first declension (*mensā*) is short, but the ablative “by a table” (*mensā*) is long. To know this is a great help in translating verse. If you know the rules of scansion, you will be able to tell (which you cannot do in prose) whether a final *a* of a first declension noun is short or long, and therefore whether it is nominative or ablative.

Latin poetry becomes not only more interesting, but more easy to translate, if you understand something of its scansion.

You have already had several extracts from Martial, who wrote most of his epigrams in a two-line metre

called the *Elegiac* (because a Greek poet invented this metre for the writing of elegies).

It consists of two lines, of which the first (called the *Hexameter*—"hex" is Greek for "six") has six feet. Each foot, except the fifth and sixth, consists *either* of three syllables (a long syllable followed by two short) called a *dactyl* from the Greek word "dactylon"—a "finger", and scanned long-short-short, like "terrible" in English—or of two syllables, both long, called a "spondee", because long long, — —, like the English "bamboo". The first four feet can be either dactyls or spondees, but the fifth foot is always a dactyl, and the sixth has only two syllables.

Here is a Hexameter in English. Notice how it scans, and it will help you to scan a Latin one.

Down in a	deep dark	dell sat an	old sow	chewin' a	bean-stalk.
<i>P̄artūrī-</i>	<i>unt mōn-</i>	<i>tes, nās-</i>	<i>cētūr</i>	<i>rīdīcūl-</i>	<i>ūs mus.</i>

The second line is shorter, and consists of five feet, and is called the *Pentameter* ("pente" is Greek for "five"). It is divided into two halves of two and a half feet each. The second half always consists of two dactyls + one extra syllable. Thus:—

Long, short short | long, short, short | long (or short)

e.g., In English—"mind of a rhinoceros".

or in Latin—"lit-er-a dicta perit".

The first half of the pentameter consists of two dactyls or spondees, or one of each, followed by one extra long syllable, thus:—

All mēn ālike hāte slōps.

In the following elegiac couplet *seven* words are missing. They each consist of the *same four letters*, placed in different order. What are the seven words? It should help you to discover them if you bear in mind how the elegiac couplet scans. The number and "quantity" (*i.e.*, whether long or short) of the missing syllables is given to help you:—

*N.B.*—The termination of *quondam* is elided before the first letter of the missing word which follows, which shows that the missing word begins with a vowel.

### A Puzzle

"*Sit . . . . sub . . . .*" *cecinit quond(am) . . . . ad . . . .*;  
 ". . . .", *poeta . . . .*, "*sit meus*" *inquit*,<sup>1</sup> ". . . ."

The missing words are given in the Key in Part III.

The following elegiac couplet is an attempt to put into Latin the following tongue-twister to illustrate pronouns. Try not only to translate it, but to scan it:—

*He said that that that that man said was that that that  
 man thought.*

*Dixit homo nobis illud, quod dixerit ille,*

*Illud idem (verum est !) esse quod iste putet.*

The passage for translation on p. 159 is written in Hexameters. Each line consists of six feet, and each foot consists of a dactyl (—<sup>o</sup> <sup>o</sup>), or a spondee (— —). The last foot always consists of two long syllables or of a long syllable followed by a short. A pause, or *cæsura*, usually occurs in the third foot of each line, though

<sup>1</sup> (he) said.

sometimes in the fourth foot as in the first line below, *i.e.*, after *fidem*. According to these rules the first lines of the passage will be scanned thus :—

Spōntē sū|ā, sīnē | lēgē, fīd|ēm||rēct|ūmquē cō|lēbānt.  
 Pōenā mē|tūsq(e) ābēr|ānt,||nēc|sūplēx|tūrbā tīm|ēbāt  
 Iūdicis|ōrā sū|i,||sēd ēr|ānt sīnē|vīdicē|tūtī.

If possible, you should ask some classical friend to read aloud to you so that you may gain some idea of the music of Latin verse.

In translating verse you must apply the same general principles as in translating prose, but you must take into account the essential differences in the language and style of both. If you consider a passage of English poetry you will find in it expressions not normally used in prose. Take, for instance, the first verse of Keats' *Ode to a Nightingale*—

My heart aches, and a drowsy numbness pains  
 My sense, as though of hemlock I had drunk,  
 Or emptied some dull opiate to the drains  
 One minute past, and Lethe-wards had sunk :  
 'Tis not through envy of thy happy lot,  
 But being too happy in thine happiness,—  
 That thou, light-wingèd Dryad of the trees,  
 In some melodious plot  
 Of beechen green and shadows numberless,  
 Singest of summer in full-throated ease.

Here Keats uses words with special poetic value—*Lethewards*, *beechen*; he prefers the second person singular forms; he inverts the natural prose order—

*shadows numberless*. In Latin verse, also, the poet modifies language to suit his needs. Words are often given figurative meaning : *fetus*, in the passage you are to translate, means literally "offspring", but here is used for the "offspring" or "fruit" of the arbutus tree—*arbuteos fetus*. Inanimate things are personified or half-personified. In the sentence beginning *Nondum caesa suis* . . . the pine tree is made the subject, as though it acted of itself, and the sentence might be literally translated—"Not yet had the pine, hewn down on its own mountains, descended to the watery waves that it might visit a foreign land". The poet means that men had not yet made wooden boats in which to sail abroad, but he prefers the other form because it evokes a more vivid image. Sometimes a singular form is used with a plural meaning, as here, in the phrase *militis usu*, where *militis* means "soldiers", or, collectively, "soldiery", or a plural form has singular meaning, as *iudicis ora*, "the face of the judge"; a plain noun is frequently replaced by a descriptive phrase : instead of the oak, Ovid writes of "Jove's spreading tree"—*patula Iovis arbore*—for the oak was sacred to Jove.

The chief difficulty in translating verse is in the word-order, and it is necessary to notice inflections and gender with especial care. In the sentence *Nondum caesa suis* . . . the participle is widely separated from its noun *pinus* in the next line; *suis* is separated from *montibus* by a clause. This unusual order is usually justified by something besides the requirements of metre. Here it points the contrast between *suis* (its own) and *peregrinum* (foreign), and you must try to

bring out the contrast in your translation. *Fossae* (two lines later) is the subject of *cingebant*, *gentes* the subject of *peragebant*; both subjects gain emphasis by their position at the end of the line. *Tellus* has the same emphatic position; *ipsa immunis, intacta, saucia* all agree with it, and it governs *dabat*. *Zephyri* comes after the verb it governs and is followed by its object *natos . . . flores*. From this you will see the importance of reading the sentence through several times, and picking out the main verb, subject, and object in due order. Once you do this by habit, the word-order will no longer present difficulties. How can you tell that *patula* in l. 14 is ablative? Scan it, and you will see that the final *-a* is long.

Use your imagination boldly in translating verse; if a passage cannot be literally translated, then translate more freely, if you can do so without infringing the rules of grammar. Finally, in deference to the original, let your translation be in the best English at your command—polished, idiomatic, elegant.

The passage is taken from *Ovid*, who lived from 43 B.C. to A.D. 18. He was a brilliant and successful poet, but he incurred the disfavour of the Emperor Augustus, and was banished to the wild, remote shores of the Black Sea. Much of his verse is left to us, including the *Metamorphoses*, or Transformations, so named because they are legends of people changed into a different form. In this passage, chosen from the beginning of the poem, he imagines the happy Golden Age, when the world was young.

## I. Aurea Aetas. The Golden Age

Sponte sua, sine lege, fidem rectumque colebant.  
 Poena metusque aberant, nec supplex turba timebat  
 iudicis ora sui, sed erant sine vindice tuti.  
 Nondum caesa suis, peregrinum ut viseret orbem,  
 montibus in liquidas pinus descenderat undas, 5  
 nullaque mortales praeter sua litora norant.<sup>1</sup>  
 Nondum praecipites cingebant oppida fossae;  
 non galeae, non ensis erant; sine militis usu  
 mollia securae peragebant otia gentes.  
 Ipsa<sup>2</sup> quoque immunis rastroke intacta nec ullis 10  
 saucia vomeribus, per se dabat omnia tellus;  
 arbuteos fetus montanaque fraga legebant,  
 cornaque et in duris haerentia mora rubetis,  
 et quae deciderant patula Iovis arbore glandes.  
 Ver erat aeternum: placidique tepentibus auris 15  
 mulcebant Zephyri natos sine semine flores.  
 Mox etiam fruges tellus inarata ferebat,  
 nec renovatus<sup>3</sup> ager gravidis flavebat aristis:  
 flumina iam lactis, iam<sup>4</sup> flumina nectaris ibant,  
 flavaque de viridi stillabant ilice mella. 20

—*Metamorphoses*, Book I.

<sup>1</sup> *norant*: *novi* (perfect of *nosco*) gives the present meaning—"know", so the pluperfect will mean "knew". *Norant* is a contracted form of *noverant*.

<sup>2</sup> *Ipsa* is by its position emphatic, and means "of her own accord". The same idea is repeated in *per se* in the next line.

<sup>3</sup> *nec renovatus*: These words go closely together. The negative affects *renovatus*, but not the rest of the sentence.

<sup>4</sup> *iam . . . iam . . .* usually means "now . . . again . . .", and so here comes to mean "in one place . . . in another . . ."

## Vocabulary

- aeternus*, -a, -um...eternal  
*arbor*, -is, f....tree  
*arbutus*, -a, -um...of the arbutus tree  
*arista*, -ae, f....ear of corn  
*aura*, -ae, f....air  
*caedo*, *cecidi*, *caesum*, -ere...hew down  
*cingo*, *cinxi*, *cinctum*, -ere...surround  
*colo*, *colui*, *cultum*, -ere...cultivate, study, practise  
*cornum*, -i, n....wild cherry  
*decido*, -cid-, -ere...fall  
*descendo*, -scendi, -scensum, -ere...descend  
*ensis*, -is, m....sword  
*flaveo*, -ere...be yellow  
*flavus*, -a, -um...yellow  
*flos*, *floris*, m....flower  
*flumen*, -inis, n....river  
*fossa*, -ae, f....ditch, trench, moat  
*fragum*, -i, n....wild strawberry  
*frux*, *frugis*, f....fruit, produce  
*galea*, -ae, f....helmet  
*glans*, *glandis*, f....acorn  
*gravidus*, -a, -um, heavy  
*haero*, *haesi*, *haesum*, -ere...cling  
*ilex*, *ilicis*, the ilex tree or holm-oak  
*immunis*, is, e....without compulsion, free  
*inarat*, -a, -um...unploughed  
*intactus*, -a, -um...untouched  
*iudex*, -icis, judge  
*Iuppiter*, *Iovis*...Jupiter or Jove (father of the gods)  
*liquidus*, -a, -um, liquid, flowing  
*mel*, *mellis*, n....honey  
*metus*, -us, m....fear  
*mollis*, -e...soft, gentle  
*montanus*, -a, -um...of the mountain  
*mortalis*, -e, n....mortal  
*morum*, -i, n....blackberry  
*mulceo*, *mulsi*, *mulsum*, -ere, stroke, touch gently  
*nectar*, -is, n....nectar (the drink of the gods)  
*novi* (perf. of *nosco*, get to know) ...know  
*orbis*, -is, m....circle; (in the poets) land  
*os*, *oris*, n....mouth; face (as here)  
*patulus*, -a, -um...spreading  
*perago*, -egi, -actum, -ere...pass, go through  
*peregrinus*, -a, -um...foreign  
*pinus*, -i (or -us), m....pine  
*placidus*, -a, -um, placid, gentle  
*praeceps*, -ipitis, steep, precipitous  
*rastrum*, -i, hoe, mattock  
*rectus*, -a, -um...right, here used as noun—righteousness  
*renovatus*, -a, -um...renewed (of land) having lain fallow  
*rubeta*, -orum, n.pl....brambles  
*saucius*, -a, -um...wounded  
*securus*, -a, -um...free from care  
*semen*, *seminis*, n....seed  
*spons*, *sponsis*, f....free-will  
*stillo*, -are...drip  
*supplex*, -icis...suppliant  
*tellus*, -uris, f....earth  
*tepens*, -entis...warm  
*turba*, -ae, f....crowd  
*tutus*, -a, -um...safe  
*unda*, -ae, f....wave  
*usus*, -us, m....use, necessity  
*ver*, *veris*, n....spring  
*vindex*, -icis...defender  
*viso*, *visi*, *visum*, -ere...visit  
*vomer*, -eris, m....ploughshare  
*Zephyrus*, -i, m....West wind

2. Here is another passage from *Ovid*, describing how Persephone (called by the Romans Proserpina), the daughter of Zeus and Demeter, was snatched away by Pluto in his chariot while she was picking flowers with her companions in Sicily, and made queen in the lower world. The story originally comes from the Homeric Hymn to Demeter and was retold by Ovid. Tennyson treated the theme in his "Demeter and Persephone" and Milton alludes to it in "Paradise Lost":—

Not that fair field  
Of Enna, where Proserpin gathering flowers,  
Herself a fairer flower, by gloomy Dis  
Was gathered—which cost Ceres all that pain  
To seek her through the world.

### The Rape of Persephone

Persephone, solitis ut erat comitata <sup>1</sup> puellis,  
Errabat nudo per sua prata pede,  
Valle sub umbrosa locus est aspergine <sup>2</sup> multa  
Uvidus ex alto desilientis aquae,  
Tot fuerant illic, quot habet natura, colores,  
Pictaque dissimili flore nitebat humus.  
Quam simul aspexit, "Comites, accedite", dixit,  
"Et mecum <sup>3</sup> plenos flore referte <sup>4</sup> sinus".  
Carpendi studio paulatim longius itur,<sup>5</sup>  
Et dominam casu nulla secuta <sup>6</sup> comes.  
Hanc videt et visam patruus velociter aufert,<sup>7</sup>  
Regnaque caeruleis in sua portat equis.—*Ovid*.

<sup>1</sup> "accompanied by" (dat.).      <sup>2</sup> "spray".

<sup>3</sup> For "*cum me*".      <sup>4</sup> 2nd plur. imperat. of *refero* (bring back).

<sup>5</sup> *Lit.* "it is gone". Pres. pass. of *eo*, here used impersonally.  
We should say, "they go".

<sup>6</sup> Perf. of *sequor* (see Lesson XXXVIII). Understand *est*, "(she) followed".  
<sup>7</sup> 3rd sing. pres. indic. of *aufero*, "carries away".

## Passage No. 11

*Peace talks fail. Hannibal recalled to Carthage and given supreme command.*

*His enim magistratibus*<sup>1</sup> legati Karthaginienses Romam venerunt, qui senatui populoque Romano gratias *agerent*<sup>2</sup> quod cum iis pacem fecissent, ob eamque rem corona aurea eos *donarent*<sup>3</sup> simulque peterent, *ut*<sup>4</sup> obsides eorum Fregellis essent captivique redderentur. his ex senatus consulto responsum est: munus eorum gratum acceptumque esse; obsides, quo loco rogarent, *futuros*,<sup>5</sup> captivos non *remissuros*,<sup>5</sup> quod Hannibalem, cuius opera susceptum bellum foret, inimicissimum nomini Romano, etiam nunc cum imperio apud exercitum haberent itemque fratrem eius Magonem. hoc responso Karthaginienses cognito Hannibalem domum et Magonem revocarunt. huc ut rediit, *rex*<sup>6</sup> factus est, postquam *praetor*<sup>6</sup> fuerat, anno secundo et vicesimo: ut enim Romae consules, sic Karthagine quotannis annui bini reges creabantur. in

<sup>1</sup> Abl. abs. "these men being magistrates", i.e., "in the time of . . ."

<sup>2</sup> *Qui . . . agerent*: this is a "qui Final" clause. *Qui* = *ut ei*; *gratias agere*, to return thanks.

<sup>3</sup> *Donarent*, literally, "to gift them with a crown". *Donarent* and *peterent* are also final Subjunctives after *qui*.

<sup>4</sup> *Ut redderentur*: Substantival clause after *peterent*.

<sup>5</sup> *Futuros . . . remissuros*: Don't be misled by the omission of *esse* after these words. This is very common in Accusative and Infinitive constructions.

<sup>6</sup> *Rex . . . praetor*: Nepos is here using the term *rex*, strictly "king", for the name of the two supreme magistrates at Carthage, actually called *suffetes*. *Praetor* was the name of a magistrate at Rome of less rank than a consul, who was the chief magistrate. Again Nepos is using it for the corresponding magistrate at Carthage. The Carthaginians had of course different names for their magistrates, and quite a different constitution from that at Rome. The name of their chief magistrate was *Suffete*.

eo magistratu pari diligentia se Hannibal prae-buit, ac fuerat in bello.

*Note.*—From *munus* to *Magonem* is *Oratio Obliqua*—that is, *Reported Speech*. In the Subordinate clauses here you will find Subjunctives where you expect Indicatives, and in the Principal clauses *Infinitives*. Thus you would have expected *rogarent* to be *rogabant*: translate as if it were. *Susceptum foret* you would have expected to be *susceptum esset*: translate it as if it were. Note that *forem*, *fores*, *foret*, *foremus*, *foretis*, *forent* is another form of *essem*, *esses*, *esset*, etc. For *secundus*, *vicesimus* and *bini* see Table of Numerals in Part III.

## LESSON XXXI

### FĪŌ.—VERBS OF FEARING

The Passive of *facio*, I make, which, remember, is a verb of the Third Conjugation, would naturally be *fāciōr*, but this is not found in Latin. The Passive is *fīō*, *factus sum*, *fīērī*. This verb again is only difficult in the Present stem tenses. It means, *I am made* or *I become*. Turn now to the Table and learn it before proceeding.

### Verbs of Fearing

There is what may seem a rather strange construction in Latin after verbs of fearing, but it is logical when you think it out.

1. *Vereor ut* (or *ne non*) *veniat* means "I fear that he *may not* come".
2. *Vereor ne veniat* means "I fear that he *may* come".

Latin seems to put the statement in exactly the opposite way to English. Where we have "that not"

it has *ut* or *ne non*; where we have "that" it has *nē*.  
The Roman thought thus :—

- (1) "I am afraid. What is it I fear? I do hope he will come."

*Vereor ut veniat.*

- (2) "I am afraid. I do hope he won't come. May he not come."

*Vereor ne veniat.*

So *ne* introduces the fear that something is going to happen, and *ut* (or *ne non*) the fear that something may not happen after all.

These are Substantival *ut* clauses. If the verb of fearing is *historic* in tense, you have the Imperfect Subjunctive :—

*Verebar ne veniret.* I was afraid that he would come.

*Verebar ut (or ne non) veniret.* I was afraid that he would not come.

But remember that "I fear to do wrong" is *vereor peccare*; "I am afraid to cross the river", *vereor flumen transire*.

### Passage No. 12

*Envoys from Rome arrive at Carthage demanding Hannibal's surrender. He escapes in a ship to Antiochus, king of Syria, with whom he plans another attack on Italy.*

Namque effecit ex novis vectigalibus non solum ut esset pecunia, quae Romanis ex foedere penderetur, sed etiam superesset, quae in aerario reponeretur. deinde anno post, M. Claudio L. Furio consulibus, Roma

legati Karthaginem venerunt. hos Hannibal ratus<sup>1</sup> sui expositi gratia<sup>2</sup> missos, priusquam iis senatus daretur,<sup>3</sup> navem ascendit clam atque in Syriam ad Antiochum<sup>4</sup> profugit. hac re palam facta Poeni naves duas, quae eum comprehenderent,<sup>5</sup> si possent<sup>6</sup> consequi, miserunt: bona eius publicarunt, domum a fundamentis disiecerunt, ipsum exulem iudicarunt.

At Hannibal anno tertio, postquam domo profugerat, L. Cornelio Q. Minucio consulibus, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit in finibus Cyrenaeorum, si forte Karthaginienses ad bellum Antiochi regis spe fiduciaque inducerentur,<sup>7</sup> cui iam persuaserat, ut cum exercitibus in Italiam proficisceretur. huc Magonem fratrem excivit. id ubi Poeni resciverunt, Magonem eadem, qua fratrem,<sup>8</sup> absentem adfecerunt poena.

*Note.*—The two *quae* clauses at the beginning of this passage are examples of the Final *qui* construction: "money such as to be paid", etc. Remember *pecunia* is also subject of *superesset*.

<sup>1</sup> *Ratus*: this governs the Accusative and Infinitive, *hos . . . missos esse*.

<sup>2</sup> *Sui expositi gratia*, "for the sake of demanding him".

<sup>3</sup> *Priusquam . . . daretur*, "before the senate was given to them". *Senatum dare* is Latin idiom for giving an audience of the senate to any one. *Daretur* is Subjunctive because Hannibal fled intentionally before the audience could be given (see Lesson XXXIV).

<sup>4</sup> *In Syriam ad Antiochum*: We say "to Antiochus in Syria"; Latin says, "into Syria, to Antiochus".

<sup>5</sup> *Quae comprehenderent*: *qui* Final construction.

<sup>6</sup> *Si possent*, "if they should be able".

<sup>7</sup> *Si forte . . . inducerentur*: *Si forte* in primary time takes the Present Subjunctive, in secondary the Imperfect, meaning "in the hope that", literally, "if by chance".

<sup>8</sup> *Eadem, qua fratrem*, "with the same penalty with which".

## LESSON XXXII

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.—PASSIVE OF DATIVE VERBS

There are certain verbs in Latin which can only be used in the third person singular and in the Infinitive. They never have a personal subject : hence they are called Impersonal Verbs. Compare “ it rains ” in English. We say, I pity you, I may do this ; Latin says *Miseret me tui, licet mihi hoc facere*, It pities me of you, it is allowed to me to do this.

Note these examples :—

(a) Impersonal Verbs taking the dative and Infinitive :—

*Eis licet hoc facere.* They may do this. (It is permitted to them to do this.)

*Eis libet hoc facere.* They are pleased to do this. (It is pleasing to them to do this.)

(b) Impersonal Verbs taking the genitive :—

*Interest civium regem bene regere.* It is the interest of the citizens that the king should rule well.

*Refert militum imperatorem esse peritum.* It concerns the soldiers that the general should be skilful.

*Interest* is the third person singular of *intersum*.

(c) Impersonal verbs taking the accusative of the person and genitive of the cause.

*Miseret me*, it pities me ; that is, I pity.

*Poenitet me*, it repents me ; that is, I repent.

*Pudet me*, it shames me ; that is, I am ashamed.

*Taedet me*, it wearies me ; that is, I am tired of.

Example :—

*Pudet me huius facti.* I am ashamed of this deed.

You might also have,

*Pudet me hoc fecisse.* It shames me to have done this, or

*Pudet me quod hoc feci.* It shames me because I have done this.

(d) Impersonal Verbs taking the Accusative and Infinitive :—

*Oportet me*, it behoves me; that is, I ought.

*Decet me*, it becomes me.

*Juvat me*, it delights me; that is, I delight.

Examples :—

*Oportet me hoc facere.* I ought to do this. (It behoves me to do this.)

*Oportuit me hoc facere.* I ought to have done this. (It behoved me to do this.)

*Note.*—If you say “it concerns me (you, etc.) to do this” and translate by *interest* or *refert*, you use not *mei*, *tui*, but *mea*, *tua*—the ablative singular feminine of the adjective instead of the pronoun. *Refert* was originally *re fert*, and *mea*, *tua*, etc., agree with *re*.

These are not all the Impersonal verbs, but they will enable you to recognise the construction when you see it. This Impersonal construction is the only one that can be employed in the Passive of verbs which take a dative in the Active :—

*Invidetur mihi.* I am envied. (It is envied to me.)

*Parcitur mihi.* I am spared, and so on.

Remember you may use these Impersonal verbs in the third person singular of all the tenses and in the Infinitive, and these are the only parts you can use. If you cannot form any of the tenses turn to the Vocabulary.

My Wish is My Law

*Si libet, licet.* *Lit.*, “If it is pleasing it is lawful”.

## Passage No. 13

*Antiochus is defeated. Hannibal flies to Crete.*

Illi <sup>1</sup> desperatis rebus cum solvissent naves ac vela ventis dedissent, Hannibal ad Antiochum pervenit. de Magonis interitu duplex memoria prodita est: namque alii naufragio, alii a servulis ipsius interfectum eum scriptum reliquerunt.<sup>2</sup> Antiochus autem si tam in gerendo bello consiliis eius parere voluisset, quam in suscipiendo instituerat, propius Tiberi quam Thermopylis de summa imperii<sup>3</sup> dimicasset. quem etsi multa stulte conari videbat, tamen nulla deseruit in re. praefuit paucis navibus, quas ex Syria iussus erat in Asiam ducere, iisque adversus Rhodiorum<sup>4</sup> classem in Pamphylio<sup>5</sup> mari conflixit. quo<sup>6</sup> cum multitudine adversariorum sui superarentur, ipse, quo cornu rem gessit, fuit superior.

Antiocho fugato, veritus ne dederetur, quod sine dubio accidisset,<sup>7</sup> si sui fecisset potestatem, Cretam ad

<sup>1</sup> Note that *illi* is subject of *solvissent* and *dedissent*.

<sup>2</sup> *Scriptum reliquerunt*, "have left it written": followed by Accusative and Infinitive.

<sup>3</sup> *De summa imperii*, "concerning the sum total of empire", "concerning the empire of the world". Antiochus had formed a great power in Asia and had crossed into Greece bent on conquest; but he delayed too long, and gave the Romans time to send an army across into Greece which routed him at Thermopylae in 191 B.C. He then fled back to Asia.

<sup>4</sup> *Rhodiorum*: the Rhodians inhabited the island of Rhodes, off the south-west coast of Asia Minor.

<sup>5</sup> *Pamphylio*: the Mediterranean near Pamphylia, on the south coast of Asia Minor.

<sup>6</sup> *Quo*: understand *mari*, "in which sea".

<sup>7</sup> *Quod . . . accidisset*: Conditional sentence in Past time; non-fulfilment of condition implied.

Gortynios venit, ut ubi, quo se conferret,<sup>1</sup> consideraret. vidit autem vir omnium callidissimus in magno se fore<sup>2</sup> periculo, nisi quid<sup>3</sup> providisset, propter avaritiam Cretensium : magnam enim secum pecuniam portabat, de qua sciebat exisse<sup>4</sup> famam. itaque capit<sup>5</sup> tale consilium.

## LESSON XXXIII

## QUI AND SUBJUNCTIVE

1. *Legati Romam venerunt qui senatui gratias agerent.*

Ambassadors came to Rome to (who might) return thanks to the senate.

This might have been put thus :—

*Legati Romam venerunt ut senatui gratias agerent.*

Ambassadors came to Rome in order that they might return thanks, etc.

*Qui*, then, in the above sentence equals *ut* ii, and the Subjunctive is the ordinary one found in Final clauses. The tense employed will be the same as if *ut* had been used instead of *qui*.

In an ordinary clause introduced by *qui* you would have the Indicative :—

*Legati Romam venerunt qui Carthagine missi erant.*

The ambassadors came to Rome who had been sent from Carthage.

<sup>1</sup> *Quo se conferret*, "Where am I to betake myself?" is a Deliberative question. This, even in the direct form, has its verb in the Subjunctive, *Quo me conferam*, "Whither am I to betake myself?" Put indirectly, it becomes Present or Imperfect Subjunctive according to the sequence. Here we have secondary sequence, hence the Imperfect Subjunctive.

<sup>2</sup> *Fore* : remember this is another form for *futurum esse*.

<sup>3</sup> *Quid* : with *si* or *nisi*, "any one", "anything".

<sup>4</sup> *Exisse* : contracted for *exiisse*, which again is for *exivisse* (*exire*).

<sup>5</sup> *Capit* : this ought strictly to be *cepit*, "took", but the Present is put for effect. It is called the Historic Present.

2. Again, in the sentence *Non is sum qui hoc faciam*, I am not the sort of man to do this (literally, I am not he who would do this), *qui* is really equal to *ut ego*, and is to *talis*. The *qui* clause, then, is equivalent to an *ut* Consecutive clause; it expresses a consequence, and therefore its verb is in the Subjunctive Mood—*qui Consecutive*. The tense will be the same as after *ut Consecutive*. *Qui* with the Subjunctive is also used after *dignus* (worthy). E.g., *Dignus est qui regat* is the Latin for “he is worthy to rule”.

3. Sometimes it has a *causal* sense equivalent to “in that he”, “because he”. E.g., *Erras qui hoc feceris*, You are wrong who (since you) have done this.

Similarly *qui* sometimes means “although I” (you, etc.) and is followed by a Subjunctive :—

*Ego qui hoc dixissem condemnatus sum.*

I although I had said this was condemned.

This of course could also have been translated :—

*Ego quamvis hoc dixissem condemnatus sum.*

Always be on the look-out, then, for the verb after *qui* in translating, and if it is Subjunctive Mood see which of these shades of meaning is appropriate. Observe, however, the effect of *Oratio Obliqua* on *qui* clauses : see Lesson XXXVI.

### What to Read

Hoc lege quod possit dicere vita “meum est”.

—*Martial*.

Read this, which life can say “is mine”.

(Literally : “the sort of thing which life can”, etc.)

## Passage No. 14

*How Hannibal tricks the Cretans to save his treasure. He plans to overthrow Eumenes, King of Pergamum and friend of Rome.*

Amphoras complures complet plumbo, summas operit auro et argento. has praesentibus principibus deponit in templo Dianae,<sup>1</sup> simulans se suas fortunas illorum fidei credere. his in errorem inductis, statuas aëneas, quas secum portabat, omni sua pecunia complet easque in propatulo<sup>2</sup> domi abjicit. Gortynii templum magna cura custodiunt, non tam a ceteris quam ab Hannibale, ne ille inscientibus iis tolleret secumque duceret.

Sic conservatis suis rebus Poenus, illis Cretensibus omnibus, ad Prusiam in Pontum<sup>3</sup> pervenit. apud quem eodem animo fuit erga Italiam, neque aliud quidquam egit quam regem armavit et exercuit adversus Romanos. quem cum videret domesticis opibus minus esse robustum, conciliabat ceteros reges, adiungebat bellicosas nationes. dissidebat ab eo Pergamenus<sup>4</sup> rex Eumenes, Romanis amicissimus, bellumque inter eos gerebatur et mari et terra: quo magis cupiebat eum Hannibal opprimi.

<sup>1</sup> *Diana*: the Roman goddess of the moon, goddess also of open-air pursuits—the chase and so forth.

<sup>2</sup> *Propatulum*: this denotes the open space in front of the house—the courtyard.

<sup>3</sup> *Pontus*: a district and kingdom of Asia Minor on the Black Sea. (*Pontus Euxinus* is the Latin name for the Black Sea, or simply *Pontus*.)

<sup>4</sup> *Pergamenus*: this means “belonging to Pergamum”, a city in Mysia, a district in the north-west corner of Asia Minor.

## Passage No. 15

*He invents a secret weapon—poisonous snakes hidden in jars.*

Sed utrobique<sup>1</sup> Eumenes plus valebat propter Romanorum societatem; quem si removisset, faciliora sibi cetera fore<sup>2</sup> arbitrabatur. ad hunc interficiendum talem iniit rationem. classe paucis diebus erant decreturi. superabatur<sup>3</sup> navium multitudine: dolo erat pugnandum, cum par non esset armis. jussit quam plurimas<sup>4</sup> venenatas serpentes vivas colligi easque in vasa<sup>4</sup> fictilia conjici. harum cum effecisset magnam multitudinem, die ipso, quo facturus erat navale proelium, classiarios<sup>5</sup> convocat iisque praecipit, omnes ut in unam Eumenis regis concurrant navem, a ceteris tantum satis habeant<sup>6</sup> se defendere. id illos facile serpentium multitudine consecuturos.<sup>7</sup> rex autem in qua nave veheretur, ut scirent, se facturum:<sup>8</sup> quem si aut cepissent aut interfecissent,<sup>9</sup> magno iis pollicetur

<sup>1</sup> *Utrubique*, "on both sides", that is, "by land and by sea".

<sup>2</sup> When you put *Si hunc removero, faciliora mihi cetera erunt* after a Past verb of saying, it becomes (*Dixit*) *si hunc removisset, faciliora sibi cetera fore*. The Future Perfect Indicative becomes Pluperfect Subjunctive, and the Future Indicative becomes Future Infinitive.

<sup>3</sup> *Superabatur*, "he was being overcome", "he was inferior".

<sup>4</sup> *Quam plurimas*. *Quam* with the superlative means "as — as possible". *Vasa*, gen. *vasorum*, neut. plur. Second Declension. In the singular the Nominative is *vas*, gen. *vasis*, and the noun belongs to the Third Declension.

<sup>5</sup> *Classiarios*, "the men belonging to the fleet", "the marines".

<sup>6</sup> *Satis habere*, "to consider it sufficient"; *tantum*, here "only".

<sup>7</sup> *Consecuturos* is Future Infinitive after a verb of saying understood before *id*; so *facturum*.

<sup>8</sup> *Facturum ut scirent*, "he would cause them to know". An *Ut* Substantival clause.

<sup>9</sup> For *cepissent* and *interfecissent* compare *removisset* at the beginning, and note.

praemio fore.<sup>1</sup> tali cohortatione militum facta classis ab utrisque in proelium deducitur. quarum acie constituta, priusquam signum pugnae daretur, Hannibal, ut palam faceret<sup>2</sup> suis, quo loco Eumenes esset, tabellarium<sup>3</sup> in scapha cum caduceo<sup>4</sup> mittit.

## LESSON XXXIV

## TEMPORAL CLAUSES

If the English sentence begins with "when" and refers to past time, use *cum* with the Subjunctive. If you use *ubi* you will have the Indicative after it. You will also use the Subjunctive always both in Present and Past time if *cum* means "since". Remember also the peculiar construction illustrated in Lesson VI.

When I reach Rome I shall do this.  
*Ubi Romam advenero, hoc faciam.*

In sentences like "He did this before the enemy came", the word "before" is translated by *priusquam* or *antequam*, and these take the Indicative when only the idea of time is denoted, and when the "before" clause actually took place: *Hoc fecit prius quam (ante quam) hostes venerunt*. But if you want to bring out the meaning thus, "He did this before the enemy should

<sup>1</sup> *Magno praemio fore*: This is what is called the Predicative Dative. Latin says, "He promises that will be for a great reward to them": we say, "He promises that will be a great advantage to them", or "will bring a great reward to them". Similarly we say, "This was a great loss to him": Latin says, *Hoc ei magno damno fuit*, "This was for a great loss to him".

<sup>2</sup> *Palam facere*, "to make plain, to disclose". *Palam* is an adv. meaning "openly".

<sup>3</sup> *Tabellarius* is a letter-carrier or courier, and the *scapha* was a light skiff.

<sup>4</sup> *Caduceo*: This *caduceus* is the herald's staff, equivalent to our flag of truce.

come", meaning that he was looking forward to their coming and wishing this to be done before that, you would employ the Subjunctive: *Hoc fecit prius quam hostes venirent*, "He did this before the enemy came", meaning "might come".

Sometimes the *prius* and *quam* are separate, thus: *Hoc prius fecit quam hostes venirent*. There is no change in meaning, however.

Note these two sentences:—

He wished to see Caesar before Cicero came. *Caesarem videre voluit priusquam Cicero veniret*. [Subjunctive because we don't know whether Cicero came or not.]

He happened to see Caesar before Cicero came. *Caesarem forte vidit priusquam Cicero venit*. [Indicative because Cicero definitely came.]

In the second sentence there is no intention expressed, in the first there is.

### While

In a sentence like "While he was writing I was reading" you say in Latin, *Dum scribebat ille ego legebam*; but where you say "While he was writing I killed him", Latin says, very strangely, *Dum scribit eum interfeci*. We may put the Rule thus: If "while" with its verb denotes a longer period at some point in which a certain thing happens, Latin uses a Present Indicative in the "while" clause even in historic time, and sometimes even in *Oratio Obliqua*.

With the Subjunctive again *dum* and *donec* mean "until", and denote purpose in addition to time. Thus:—

*Manebam dum (or donec) ille veniret*. I was waiting until he should come (intentionally).

*Maneo dum (or donec) ille veniat.* I am waiting till he comes.  
[Implying intention, and no certainty that he will come.]

*Manebam forte donec ille veni.* I happened to wait until he came  
(lit., I waited by chance). *Veni* is Indicative because he actually came.

### A Famous Sentence from St. Augustine's Confessions

Fecisti nos ad te, Domine, et inquietum est cor nostrum, donec requiescat in te.

#### 'Arry

Here is another poem of *Catullus* on a Roman cockney 'Arry, whose aitches ruffled the wild Ionian Sea. If 'Arry wanted to say "extras" he would say "hextras" and for "ambush" "hambush".

Chommoda dicebat, si quando commoda <sup>1</sup> vellet  
dicere, et insidias <sup>2</sup> Arrius hinsidias,  
et tum mirifice sperabat se esse locutum,  
cum quantum poterat <sup>3</sup> dixerat <sup>4</sup> hinsidias.  
credo, <sup>5</sup> sic mater, sic Liber avunculus eius,  
sic maternus avus dixerat atque avia.  
hoc misso in Syriam requierant <sup>6</sup> omnibus aures :  
audibant <sup>7</sup> eadem haec leniter et leviter,  
nec sibi postilla metuebant talia verba,  
cum subito affertur <sup>8</sup> nuntius horribilis,  
Ionios fluctus, postquam illuc Arrius isset, <sup>9</sup>  
iam non Ionios esse sed Hionios.

<sup>1</sup> *commoda*, additions to soldiers' pay, "extras".

<sup>2</sup> *insidias*, ambush.

<sup>3</sup> *quantum poterat*, as much as he could—i.e., "with all the strength of his lungs".

<sup>4</sup> *cum...dixerat*, with plup. ind. means "whenever".

<sup>5</sup> *credo*, ironical, "I expect".

<sup>6</sup> *requierant* for *requieverant*, plup. of *requiesco*, "had begun to take a rest".

<sup>7</sup> *audibant* for *audiebant*.

<sup>8</sup> Pres. ind. pass. from *affero*, "bring to".

<sup>9</sup> *isset*, contraction for *iisset*, "had gone".

## Passage No. 16

*How Hannibal discovers the ship of Eumenes, and uses his surprise weapon.*

Qui ubi ad naves adversariorum pervenit epistolamque ostendens se regem professus est quaerere, statim ad Eumenem deductus est, quod nemo dubitabat, quin aliquid de pace esset scriptum. tabellarius, ducis nave declarata suis, eodem, unde erat egressus, se recepit. at Eumenes soluta epistola nihil in ea repperit, nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent.<sup>1</sup> Cuius etsi causam mirabatur neque reperiebat, tamen proelium statim committere non dubitavit. horum in concursu Bithynii Hannibalis praecepto universi navem Eumenis adoriuntur. quorum vim rex cum sustinere non posset, fuga salutem petit: quam consecutus non esset, nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset, quae in proximo litore erant collocata. reliquae Pergamenae naves cum adversarios premerent acrius, repente in eas vasa fictilia, de quibus supra<sup>2</sup> mentionem fecimus, conjici coepta sunt.<sup>3</sup>

## LESSON XXXV

## NUMERALS

Occasionally through this book a Roman number has been introduced. It will be convenient here to give a few hints as to their use. The tables of Numerals,

<sup>1</sup> *Nisi quae ad irridendum eum pertinerent*: "unless such as pertained to laughing at him", "jeering remarks". The Subjunctive is a consecutive one.

<sup>2</sup> *Supra*, adv. "above".

<sup>3</sup> *Coepta sunt*: note that *coepti* is used in the Passive when combined with a Passive Infinitive.

given in Part III, should be learned off by heart sooner or later. Don't try to do them all at once: take so many a day for a week or two, and continually revise them.

The *Cardinal numeral adjectives*, as they are called—one, two, three, etc.—are all, except the first three, indeclinable up to two hundred—that is, the same form is used whether the noun is masculine, feminine or neuter, and in all cases.

*Ducenti*, -ae, -a, two hundred, *trecenti*, -ae, -a, three hundred, and so on up to nine hundred, are declined like *boni*, -ae, -a.

*Unus* is declined like *solus*, -a, -um (see Lesson XVI).

*Duo* and *Tres* are declined thus:—

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	Du-o	du-ae	du-o	Tres	tria
Acc.	Du-o or du-ōs	du-as	du-o	Tres	tria
Gen.	Du-ōrum	du-ārum	du-ōrum	Trium	trium
Dat. }	Du-ōbus	du-ābus	du-ōbus	Tribus	tribus
Abl. }					

*Mille*, a thousand, is an indeclinable adjective in the singular, but a noun governing the genitive in the plural: *mille naves*, a thousand ships; *duo millia* (or *milìa*) *hominum*, two thousands of men.

Where we say twenty-three, thirty-five, the Romans said three and twenty, *tres et viginti*; five and thirty, *quinque et triginta*; but above a hundred they used the same form of expression without “and”: one hundred (and) one, *centum unus*; two hundred (and) nine, *ducenti novem*; three hundred (and) thirty-five, *trecenti triginta quinque*.

The *Ordinal numerals* answer the question “which in

order? " that is, they mean first, second, third. They are all declined like *bōnus*. In the twenty-first year, *uno et vicesimo anno*. (Note the use of *unus* instead of *primus* in this case.)

The *Distributive numerals* are used to denote so many apiece. Thus, We gave them two books each. *Eis binos libros dedimus* (literally, two-each books).

Nouns in Latin which have a singular meaning in the plural require these numerals to make their meaning plural. Thus, "two camps" is *bina castra*; "two letters", *binæ litteræ*, but *duæ epistolæ*.

The *Numeral adverbs* answer to our once, twice, thrice, three times, twenty times, etc.: *Ter hoc fecit*, thrice he did this.

### Passage No. 17

*The trick succeeds. Eumenes and his fleet flee.*

*Rome sends envoys to hunt out Hannibal.*

Quae iacta initio risum pugnantibus concitarunt,<sup>1</sup> neque quare id fieret poterat intellegi.<sup>2</sup> postquam autem naves suas oppletas conspexerunt serpentibus, nova re perterriti, cum, quid potissimum vitarent,<sup>3</sup> non viderent, puppes verterunt seque ad sua castra nautica rettulerunt. sic Hannibal consilio arma Pergamenorum superavit, neque tum solum, sed saepe alias<sup>4</sup> pedestribus copiis pari prudentia pepulit adversarios.

<sup>1</sup> *Concitarunt* : contracted for *concitaverunt*.

<sup>2</sup> *Poterat intellegi* : Impersonal construction : "nor was it able to be perceived".

<sup>3</sup> *Vitarent* : Deliberative Subjunctive : not "what they were avoiding", but "what they were to avoid".

<sup>4</sup> *Alias* : adv. "at other times".

Quae dum in Asia geruntur,<sup>1</sup> accidit<sup>2</sup> casu ut legati Prusiae Romae apud<sup>3</sup> T. Quintium Flaminium consularem cenarent, atque<sup>4</sup> ibi de Hannibale mentione facta, ex iis unus diceret eum in Prusiae regno esse. id postero die Flaminius senatui detulit. patres conscripti, qui Hannibale vivo<sup>5</sup> numquam se sine insidiis futuros existimarent, legatos in Bithyniam miserunt, in iis Flaminium, qui ab rege peterent, ne inimicissimum suum secum haberet sibi<sup>6</sup> dederet. his Prusia negare ausus non est: illud recusavit, ne id a se fieri postularent,<sup>7</sup> quod adversus<sup>8</sup> ius hospitii esset: ipsi, si possent, comprehenderent:<sup>9</sup> locum, ubi esset, facile inventuros.

## LESSON XXXVI

## ORATIO OBLIQUA

Re-read, in conjunction with this lesson, Lessons XV and XVI.

If you report a man's words exactly as he said them, you are said to use the *Oratio Recta*; but when the words are quoted indirectly with the "I's" and "You's" changed to "He's" and so forth, you are said to use the *Oratio Obliqua* or Indirect Statement.

<sup>1</sup> *Geruntur*: note the tense, Present Indicative, as always with *dum* when it means "while".

<sup>2</sup> *Accidit*: Impersonal, "it happened".

<sup>3</sup> *Apud*: often used in this sense, meaning "at the house of".

<sup>4</sup> *Accidit casu ut . . . atque*, "it happened that they were dining . . . and one said". Two Substantival clauses.

<sup>5</sup> *Hannibale vivo*: Ablative Absolute.

<sup>6</sup> *Que*, here = "but".

<sup>7</sup> *Ne . . . postularent*: a command becoming Subjunctive in the *Oratio Obliqua* after *recusavit*: "Let them not demand".

<sup>8</sup> *Adversus*, prep. with acc., "against".

<sup>9</sup> *Comprehenderent*: also represents a command.

Thus in Passage No. 15—"Do ye all attack the ship of King Eumenes alone, and count it enough merely to defend yourselves from the rest. You will easily manage that through the number of the serpents. I will see that you know in what ship the king is sailing"—these represent Hannibal's exact words. This is *Oratio Recta*. But, "He told them all to attack the ship of Eumenes only, and count it enough merely to defend themselves from the rest. They would easily manage that through the number of the serpents. He would see that they knew in what ship the king was sailing"—this is *Oratio Obliqua*.

Often, in Latin, long passages are found introduced by a verb of saying, and containing thereafter no verbs in the Indicative Mood, but only Infinitives and Subjunctives. Remember in such passages that the Infinitives represent the principal verbs of the *Oratio Recta*, and the Subjunctives, as a rule, the verbs of subordinate clauses, whether in the actual words these had Indicative or Subjunctive Mood. *Commands*, however, in the Imperative Mood become Subjunctive in such passages. Thus, *In regem Eumenem concurrite*, would be if reported, (*Dixit*) *in regem Eumenem concurrerent*, (He said) Let them attack King Eumenes.<sup>1</sup>

The pronouns *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, of course, just like I, you, we, ye, in English, disappear in such a passage, and only *se*, *ille*, *is*, are found—the pronouns of the third person.

<sup>1</sup> Note that "I deny" and "I say that . . . not" are both translated by *nego*, not by *dico . . . non*. Example: *Urbs non capta est* (The city has not been captured). *Negat urbem captam esse* (He says that the city has not been captured).

## Examples

These examples should be carefully read over and examined :—

I see the men who have attacked the town	(He said) he saw the men who had attacked the town.
<i>Video homines qui oppidum oppugnaverunt.</i>	<i>(Dixit) se homines videre qui oppidum oppugnavissent.</i>
I see the men who are attacking the town.	(He said) he saw the men who were attacking the town.
<i>Video homines qui oppidum oppugnant.</i>	<i>(Dixit) se homines videre qui oppidum oppugnarent.</i>
I see the men who are about to attack the town.	(He said) he saw the men who were about to attack the town.
<i>Video homines qui oppidum oppugnaturi sunt.</i>	<i>(Dixit) se homines videre qui oppidum oppugnaturi essent.</i>
When I come to Rome I shall see Caesar.	(He said) when he came to Rome he would see Caesar.
<i>Ubi Romam venero Caesarem videbo.</i>	<i>(Dixit) se ubi Romam venisset Caesarem visurum esse.</i>

If the verb of saying had been in the Present tense (*dicit*), where in the above sentences you have the Pluperfect Subjunctive you would have the Perfect, where you have the Imperfect you would have the Present, and where you have the Future Participle with *essent* you would have the Future Participle with *sint*.

## Passage No. 18

*Hannibal's house is surrounded. Rather than fall into the hands of the Romans he takes poison.*

Hannibal enim uno loco se tenebat in castello, quod ei a rege datum erat muneri,<sup>1</sup> idque sic aedificarat, ut in omnibus partibus aedificii exitus haberet, scilicet

<sup>1</sup> *Muneri* is called a Predicative Dative. We say "had been given as a gift", Latin says "had been given for a gift".

veritus ne usu veniret,<sup>1</sup> quod accidit. huc cum legati Romanorum venissent ac multitudine domum eius circumdedissent, puer<sup>2</sup> ab ianua prospiciens Hannibali dixit plures praeter consuetudinem armatos apparere. qui imperavit ei, ut omnes fores aedificii circumiret ac propere sibi nuntiaret, num eodem modo undique obsideretur. puer cum celeriter, quid esset, renuntiasset omnesque exitus occupatos ostendisset, sensit id non fortuito factum, sed se peti neque sibi diutius vitam esse retinendam. quam ne alieno arbitrio dimitteret, memor pristinarum virtutum venenum, quod semper secum habere consuevit, sumpsit.

Sic vir fortissimus, multis variisque perfunctus<sup>3</sup> laboribus, anno acquievit septuagesimo.

## LESSON XXXVII

### ORATIO OBLIQUA (Cont.)

In this Lesson we shall give a few examples showing how Conditional Sentences appear in *Oratio Obliqua* :—

#### I. FUTURE CONDITIONS

##### Direct Form

If he does this he will be punished.

*Si hoc fecerit poenas dabit.*

##### Indirect Form

(He said) if he did this he would be punished.

(*Dixit*) *si id fecisset poenas eum daturum esse.*

N.B.—*Hoc* of the *Oratio Recta* becomes *id* in the *Oratio Obliqua*.

<sup>1</sup> *Veritus ne usu veniret*, "fearing lest in experience (in actual life, actually) that might come which came".

<sup>2</sup> *Puer*, here "slave boy".

<sup>3</sup> *Perfunctus*: *perfungor* takes the ablative case after it, where you would expect the accusative. *Fruor*, I enjoy, *potior*, I get possession of, *vescor*, I feed upon, *utor*, I use, take a similar ablative.

If he were to do this he would be punished. (He said) if he were to do this he would (should) be punished.  
*Si hoc faciat poenas det.* (Dixit) *si id faceret poenas eum daturum esse.*

## 2. PAST CONDITIONS

If he had done this he would have been punished. (He said) if he had done this he would have been punished.  
*Si hoc fecisset poenas dedisset.* (Dixit) *si id fecisset poenas eum daturum fuisse.*

Note that a Future Participle with the Perfect Infinitive instantly points to a condition referring to the past, and of which you imply the non-fulfilment.

Now turn back and examine Passage No. 11, in which there is a very good specimen of the *Oratio Obliqua*: "The Senate said, 'Your gift is pleasing and accepted; the hostages will be where you ask; we shall not send back the captives, because you are keeping Hannibal, by whose means the war has been undertaken, even now in supreme authority over the army'." *Gratum acceptumque esse*, in Hannibal's actual words were *gratum acceptumque est*; *rogarent* was *rogant*; *futuros* was *erunt*; *remissuros* was *remitemus*; *susceptum foret* was *susceptum est*; *haberent* was *habent*.

In Passage No. 15 an example of a Conditional sentence in *Oratio Obliqua* is found. Turn now and examine it.

*Quem si aut cepissent aut interfecissent magno iis pollicetur praemio fore.*

He promises that if they had taken or slain him it would be for a great reward to them. (*Pollicetur* is Historic Present, practically equal to *pollicitus est*.)

His actual words were: "If you take him or slay him it will be a great reward to you".

*Si hunc ceperitis aut interfeceritis magno vobis praemio erit.*

## Passage No. 19

This passage is taken from Julius Caesar's *Commentaries on the Gallic War*, which give his own record of the period when he was proconsul or governor in Gaul. The province was wild, and but half-conquered; he had to face continual rebellions, in which the Gauls of the north were helped by their neighbours in Britain. His first expedition to this country was one of exploration, and this passage gives some of his notes on the appearance and customs of the Ancient Britons.

## The Britons

Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica different consuetudine. Interiores <sup>1</sup> plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pelli-busque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc <sup>2</sup> horribiliores sunt in pugna aspectu; capilloque <sup>3</sup> sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores <sup>4</sup> habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed, qui sunt ex iis nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.—Caesar, *Gallic War*, V. xiv.

<sup>1</sup> *Interiores* : "those further inland".

<sup>2</sup> *hoc* : ablative expressing measure—"all the more horrible in appearance".

<sup>3</sup> *capillo . . . promisso . . . omni parte . . . rasa* : ablatives of description.

<sup>4</sup> *Uxores habent deni duodenique* : Not "they have ten or twelve wives in common", but "ten or twelve men have wives in common". The custom was apparently to ensure children for each of them.

### Vocabulary

<i>aspectus</i> , -us, m....appearance	<i>lac</i> , <i>lactis</i> , n....milk
<i>caeruleus</i> , -a, -um...blue	<i>liber</i> , -i...child
<i>Cantium</i> , -i, n....Kent	<i>longe</i> , adv....by far
<i>capillus</i> , -i, m....hair	<i>maritimus</i> , -a, -um...maritime
<i>caput</i> , <i>capitis</i> , n....head	<i>parens</i> , -entis...parent
<i>caro</i> , <i>carnis</i> , f....flesh	<i>pars</i> , <i>partis</i> , f....part
<i>communis</i> , -e...in common	<i>pellis</i> , -is, f....skin
<i>deduco</i> , -duxi, -ductum, -ere...lead	<i>plerique</i> ...the majority
away, marry	<i>praeter</i> ...besides, except
<i>deni</i> , -ae, -a...(distributive numeral), ten each, by tens	<i>promissus</i> , -a, -um...long
<i>differe</i> , <i>distuli</i> , <i>dilatatum</i> , <i>differe</i> ...differ	<i>quisque</i> (declined like <i>quis</i> with the suffix -que added)...each
<i>duodeni</i> , -ae, -a...(distributive numeral), twelve each	<i>rado</i> , <i>rasi</i> , <i>rasum</i> , -ere...scrape, shave
<i>frumentum</i> , -i, n....corn	<i>regio</i> , <i>regionis</i> , f....region
<i>humanus</i> , -a, -um...human, civilised	<i>uxor</i> , -is, f....wife
<i>incolo</i> , <i>incolui</i> , <i>incultum</i> , -ere...inhabit	<i>vero</i> ...indeed
<i>inficio</i> , -feci, -fectum, -ere...dye	<i>vestio</i> , -ivi, -itum, -ire...clothe
<i>labrum</i> , -i, n....lip	<i>virgo</i> , <i>virginis</i> , f....maiden
	<i>vitrum</i> , -i, n....wood

### LESSON XXXVIII

#### CONJUNCTIONS.—DEPONENT VERBS

##### Conjunctions

These, as has been already pointed out, join words or sentences. They may be simple Connectives like *et*, *atque*, -que, "and". More commonly, however, they have some special meaning. Thus we have conjunctions denoting :—

*Time* : e.g., *cum* (when), *postquam* (after that), *antequam* (before that), *priusquam* (before that), *ubi* (when), *donec* (until), *dum* (while), etc.

*Place* : *ubi* (where), *quo* (whither), *unde* (whence).

*Reason* : *quod* (because), *quare* (why), *cum* (since).

*Purpose* : *ut* (in order that), *ne* (lest).

*Result* : *ut* (so that).

*Condition* : *si* (if), *nisi* (unless).

*Concession* : *etsi*, *quamquam*, *quamvis*, *licet* (although).

*Comparison* : *ut* (as), *quasi* (just as).

## Deponent Verbs

Many Latin verbs are *passive in form* but *active in meaning*. E.g., *hortor*, "I exhort"; *hortatus sum*, "I have exhorted"; *hortari*, "to exhort".

They are called deponents because they have "put down"—*i.e.*, away—some of their parts—*i.e.*, the active voice. They are conjugated like ordinary passive verbs, but of course a deponent cannot have a passive voice. *Hortor* means "I exhort". If you want to say in Latin "I am exhorted", you have to use a different word.

There are, however, two exceptions to the above rule :—

1. Most deponent verbs still keep their active voice forms for the present and future participle, future infinitive and the gerund—e.g., *morior* "I die", *moriens* "dying", *moriturus* "about to die", *moriturus esse* "to be about to die"; *morendum* (gerund).

2. Their gerundives are passive both in form and meaning. E.g., *hortandus*, "fit to be exhorted". *Milities hortandi sunt* would mean "the soldiers must be cheered up".

Remember that the past participle is passive in form, but generally active in meaning—e.g., *veritus*, "having feared".

You will find the commonest ones in the alphabetical list of Latin verbs in Part III, arranged alphabetically among the active verbs. You can spot them because they all end in *-or*. I suggest that you go through the list underlining all the deponent verbs and learning by heart their principal parts. This is well worth doing,

because they are exceedingly common in Latin, and it will save you much trouble later in translation if you become familiar with them now. Note that some of them are irregular.

### Examples of Deponent Verbs from Horace

1. *Parturiunt montes, nascetur ridiculus mus.*  
The mountains labour, there will be born a ridiculous little mouse.
2. *Video meliora proboque, deteriora sequor.*  
I see a better (way) and approve; I follow the worse.
3. *Dulce et decorum pro patria mori.*  
It is sweet and honourable to die for one's country.

### The Joys of Literature

Haec studia<sup>1</sup> adolescentiam<sup>2</sup> alunt, senectutem oblectant, secundas<sup>3</sup> res ornant, adversis<sup>4</sup> perfugium<sup>5</sup> ac solatium praebent, delectant domi, non impediunt foris,<sup>6</sup> pernoctant<sup>7</sup> nobiscum, peregrinantur,<sup>8</sup> rusticantur.<sup>9</sup>—*Cicero*.

This might be translated freely as follows :—

*Reading gives food to our youth, and diversion to our old age. It crowns success and offers a haven of consolation in failure. It gives pleasure in the home, and is no handicap in the world outside. Through sleepless nights, in our travels abroad and in the seclusion of the country, it is an unfailing companion.*

<sup>1</sup> *studia*, literary studies.

<sup>2</sup> *adolescentiam*, youth.

<sup>3</sup> *secundus*, prosperity—literally, prosperous things.

<sup>4</sup> *adversis*, in adversity. Understand *rebus*.

<sup>5</sup> *perfugium*, refuge.

<sup>6</sup> *foris*, out of doors—i.e., in business.

<sup>7</sup> *pernoctant*, pass the night.

<sup>8</sup> *peregrinantur*, travel abroad (deponent verb).

<sup>9</sup> *rusticantur*, live in the country.

## Passage No. 20

This next passage is very different in style and subject from those you have already read. *Suetonius*, from whose writings it is taken, was the Emperor Hadrian's secretary in the second century A.D. He wrote biographies of the Roman emperors, and in them made good use of all the palace gossip that came his way. The details he gives of their private lives are odd and often very entertaining, and he is always at pains to show the real man behind the almost mythical figure of the Emperor. From him we know the colour of Caesar's eyes and the drastic measures Nero took to perfect his singing voice, and in this passage he describes the plain diet of Augustus, the first and greatest of the Roman Emperors.

The style is easy and familiar, and you should aim at translating it into easy natural English. There are a number of unfamiliar words, which have been given in a list at the end.

## Suetonius on Augustus

*Cibi* <sup>1</sup>—nam ne haec quidem omiserim—minimi erat atque vulgaris fere. Panem et pisciculos minutos et caseum manu pressum et ficos virides maxime appetebat : vescebaturque et ante cenam quocumque tempore et loco, quo stomachus desiderasset.<sup>2</sup> Verba ipsius ex

<sup>1</sup> *Cibi . . . minimi erat atque vulgaris fere.* Literally, "He was of very little food and plain for the most part", i.e., "He ate very little, and for the most part plain food". This is a rather curious use of *est* and the genitive.

<sup>2</sup> *Desiderasset* : a shortened form of the pluperfect subjunctive *desideravisset*.

epistulis sunt : " Nos in essedo palmulas gustavimus." Et iterum : " Dum lectica ex regia domum redeo, panis unciam cum paucis acinis uvae duracinae <sup>1</sup> comedi." Et rursus : " Ne Judaeus quidem, mi Tiberi, tam diligenter sabbatis ieiunium servat quam ego hodie servavi, qui <sup>2</sup> in balneo demum post horam primam noctis duas buccas comedi priusquam ungui inciperem." Ex hac inobservantia nonnumquam vel ante initum <sup>3</sup> vel post dimissum convivium solus cenitabat, cum pleno convivio <sup>4</sup> nihil tangeret.

### Vocabulary

<i>acinus</i> , -i, m....berry	<i>incipio</i> , -cepi, -ceptum, -ere...begin
<i>appeto</i> , -ivi, -itum, -ere, reach after, desire (here, like)	<i>inobservantia</i> , -ae, f....carelessness
<i>balneum</i> , -i, n....bath	<i>maxime</i> , very greatly, especially
<i>bucca</i> , -ae, f....cheek, mouth, mouthful	<i>minutus</i> , -a, -um...tiny
<i>caseum</i> , -i, n....cheese	<i>nonnumquam</i> ...sometimes
<i>cena</i> , -ae, f....supper, dinner	<i>palmula</i> , -ae, f....date
<i>cenito</i> , -are, be accustomed to dine	<i>panis</i> , -is, m....bread
<i>cibum</i> , -i, n....food	<i>pisciculus</i> , -i, m....small fish
<i>comedo</i> , -edi, -esum, -ere...eat	<i>regia</i> , -ae, f....palace
<i>convivium</i> , -i, n....feast	<i>servo</i> , -are...keep, observe
<i>demum</i> ...at last	<i>sabbata</i> , -orum, n.pl....Sabbath
<i>desidero</i> , -are...desire	<i>tango, tetigi, tactum</i> , -ere...touch
<i>essedum</i> , -i, n....chariot, carriage	<i>uncia</i> , -ae, f....ounce
<i>fere</i> ...nearly, almost	<i>unguo</i> , unxi, unctum, -ere...anoint
<i>figus</i> , -i, m....fig	<i>vescor, vesci</i> (deponent)...eat, feed
<i>gusto</i> , -are, taste, eat a little of	<i>viridis</i> , -is, -e, green
<i>ieiunium</i> , -i, n....fast	<i>vulgaris</i> , -is, -e...common, plain
<i>Iudaeus</i> , -i, m....Jew	

<sup>1</sup> *Uvae duracinae* : a bunch of grapes, that is to say, too hard for making into wine, but suitable for eating.

<sup>2</sup> *Qui* : this refers of course to *ego*. It is awkward to use the relative in this way in English and it is best to translate it by "for".

<sup>3</sup> *Initum . . . dimissum* : Past participles passive agreeing with *convivium*. Latin uses a participle where we prefer to use an abstract noun or a clause.

<sup>4</sup> *Pleno convivio* : literally "when the banquet was full". Translate—"While the banquet was in progress".

## LESSON XXXIX

ADVERBS.—MAGIC SQUARES.—SUGGESTIONS FOR  
FURTHER STUDY

If we know the corresponding adjective it is very easy in Latin to make the adverb. Thus in adjectives of the first class you simply add *-ē* to the stem, as—*durus*, hard, *dur-ē* (hardly), stubbornly; *liber*, free, *liber-ē*, freely.

*Benē*, well, *malē*, badly, are very common and should be noted on account of their exceptional quantity, and *benē* for its exceptional form also.

But adjectives of the second class form adverbs by adding *-iter* to the stem; when the adjective is like *ingens* simply by adding *-er*. Thus we get *ferox*, fierce, *ferociter*, fiercely; *prudens*, prudent, *prudenter*, prudently.

There is a large class of adverbs, however, in *-ō*, which, by the rule given above, should be in *-ē*. As *falso*, falsely (*falsus*); *necessario*, necessarily (*necessarius*); *subito*, suddenly (*subitus*).

## Some Latin Adverbs Common in English

			<i>Literal Meaning</i>
Tandem	.	.	At length
Verbatim	.	.	Word for word
Alibi	.	.	In some other place
Alias	.	.	Otherwise
Passim	.	.	On all sides

## Comparison of Adverbs

If you can compare the corresponding adjective, the adverb gives no trouble. The comparative of the adverb is simply the neuter singular of the comparative adjective. The superlative is obtained from the superlative of the adjective by changing *-us* into *-ē* :—

*Liber*, free, *liberē*, freely, *liberius*, *liberrime*.

*Durus*, hard, *durē*, hardly, *durius*, *durissime*.

*Prudens*, prudent, *prudenter*, prudently, *prudētius*, *prudētissime*.

Just as there are a few adjectives compared irregularly, so there are a few adverbs. Thus we have :—

*Bene* (*bonus*), well,

*Male* (*malus*), badly,

*Multum* (*multus*), much,

*Magnopere* (*magnus*), greatly,

*Non multum* (*parvus*), little,

*Diu*, long,

*Saepe*, often,

*melius*, better,

*pejus*, worse,

*plus*, more,

*magis*, more,

*minus*, less,

*diutius*, longer,

*saepius*, oftener,

*potius*, rather,

*optime*, best.

*peissime*, worst.

*plurimum*, most.

*maxime*, most.

*minime*, least.

*diutissime*, longest.

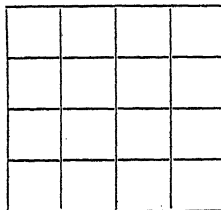
*saepe*, oftenest.

*potissimum*, especially.

## QUADRATA MAGICA

The four Latin words in each square are the same whether read across or downwards. You have had them all in the book, except : *arare*, First Conj., “to plough”; *aper*—*apri*, a wild boar.

I.



1. Quid est in mari?

2. Saepe sic rogo.

3. Quid est nobis cunctis carum?

4. Primus incola terrae (not an actual Latin word).

2.


- |                                   |  |
|-----------------------------------|--|
| 1. Quid nocte nobis lucem<br>dat? | 3. Haec res est, quae significat.            |
| 2. A viro ducta femina.           | 4. Quid facit agricola in agris<br>in hieme? |

3.


- |                        |                             |
|------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. Periculosum animal. | 3. Causalis est coniunctio. |
| 2. "I place" Latine.   | 4. Urbs sita in Italia.     |

### SUGGESTIONS FOR FURTHER STUDY

You are now assumed to have worked carefully through this book, revising thoroughly according to some of the methods suggested in the Introduction. If this assumption be correct, you may be said to have mastered the rudiments of Latin. You now know enough grammar, and have a wide enough vocabulary, to begin to read Latin for yourself, and if your main object in learning Latin is to be able to read it

intelligently and easily, you need not trouble about studying any more grammar in grammar books. You will learn grammar in the best possible way by reading much and carefully.

If you wish to continue translation from English into Latin, or are preparing for an examination which requires it, there are a number of *Latin Prose Composition* books available, of which one of the best and most recent is *An Outline of Latin Prose*, by Vincent and Mountford (Oxford University Press), but if you prefer one with a key, there is Macmillan's *Latin Course*, Part III.<sup>1</sup> There are several good Latin grammars. Kennedy's *Revised Latin Primer*, for instance, sets out all necessary grammar very clearly. At this stage you should, if possible, obtain some outside help or, at any rate, arrange for your versions to be read by someone who knows Latin. If you cannot join an evening class, you may be able to take one of the correspondence courses now widely advertised.

If, however, you have no aim save to read Latin for pleasure, it is best to set English-Latin aside. Steady practice in reading will rapidly improve your mastery of vocabulary and grammar. You will need a dictionary, but the grammar given in this book will be sufficient for reference.

Before beginning to read on your own account you should make sure of the Irregular Verbs. Time spent on them at the beginning will be amply repaid in time

<sup>1</sup> Flecker and Macnutt's *Complete Latin Course* (Longmans, 2 vols.) gives fuller explanation of syntax and the way to write Latin than most books, but it has no key.

saved during your reading. Turn to the list in Part III. Get a bit of paper about the size of this page, and cover up the whole of the page, leaving only the first part of each verb exposed: *abdo*, *abigo*, and so on. Try, if you can, to put in *abdidi*, *abditum*, *abdere* (to hide); move down your paper to see if you are right; then try to put in *abegi*, *abactum*, *abigere* (to drive away). Work through the whole of these verbs in this way time after time. By-and-by cover up all but the English meaning on the right-hand side of the page, and try to fill in all the rest. You will never regret the time you spend in mastering this list.

Julius Caesar's *Commentaries on the Gallic War* have for years been regarded as the easiest actual Latin to begin on. Books IV and V, which include his expeditions to Britain, are especially interesting. But Caesar's sentences are frequently long and involved, and you will probably find it easier to read him in a simplified version, such as Part III of *Latin for To-day* (Ginn), which covers most of the Gallic War and has excellent maps, or in a little book, such as *Caesar in Britain*, by Pantin (Macmillan). Many people find Caesar's *Civil War* more interesting, especially Book I, which deals with the war in Spain, or the last seven chapters of Book III, which is his own, though brief, account of his doings in Egypt with Cleopatra. Another of the easier Latin prose-writers is Cornelius Nepos, whom you have already met in this volume. Others of his *Lives* include Greek Generals, such as Miltiades, Themistocles, and Alcibiades. Easier Latin still is the Vulgate or other Latin translations of the Bible. If you prefer to embark on Cicero, whose prose style was

the model for centuries and had a profound influence on English writers, such as Dr. Johnson and Burke, you will find his rhetoric a good contrast to Caesar's plainness. Of his speeches, the *Pro Archia*, a defence of the poet's function in the world, or the *Pro Lege Manilia*, a panegyric on Pompey, or the speeches against Catiline are among the easiest. His *De Amicitia* and *De Senectute* are good examples of his polished essay-writing, but they don't tell you a great deal about either friendship or old age. Many readers find his *Letters* more interesting, but they are difficult for beginners. Another interesting letter-writer is Pliny, who lived under the Empire, and whose description of the eruption of Vesuvius, for instance, is thrilling to read and not difficult. A simplified selection of his letters by C. E. Robinson (Allen & Unwin) in the Roman World Series has been edited for beginners with all the help in notes and vocabulary that you will need.

It is a good plan to alternate prose and verse in your reading. The greatness of much Latin poetry cannot be questioned, but very little of it is easy reading for beginners. For centuries Ovid has been the way into Latin poetry for schoolboys. His *Metamorphoses*, of which you have read an extract, are pleasant and tolerably easy, and Book XIII is a good one on which to begin. But Ovid is not everyone's meat, and there is much to be said for beginning Latin poetry with Catullus, a contemporary of Caesar and Cicero, and a poet as human as Burns and as frank as any poet of to-day in expressing his deepest thoughts and feelings. There is an edition of his easiest poems intended as a

first Latin poetry book in the Roman World Series (Allen & Unwin).

You might then like to go on to Virgil. His *Aeneid* is the epic story of the foundation of Rome, and should be read as a whole, even if you read parts in translation. Perhaps the best book to begin on in the original is Book II, which describes the fall of Troy, or Book IV, the tragedy of Dido and Aeneas. There are many translations, of which perhaps the best in prose is by Mackail (Macmillan). There is a very readable translation into blank verse by Rhoades in the World's Classics. Many people, however, prefer Virgil's *Georgics*. If you have any liking for bees, read the Fourth. The story of Orpheus and Eurydice, in the same book, is not difficult, and is Latin poetry at its greatest.

Another of the great books of the world are the Odes of Horace, but he is difficult and untranslatable. The edition by Page (Macmillan) is among the best. If you prefer an anthology of Latin poetry, *A Book of Latin Poetry*, by E. V. Rieu (Methuen), can be warmly recommended. It is pure gold, and the notes are exactly what a modern reader needs, but so rarely gets in editions of classical authors. This selection of poems from Ennius to Hadrian is a model of its kind, and an excellent bedside book.

The advantages and disadvantages of using translations in the learning of Latin are debatable. Cribes are still discouraged at schools, because too great a reliance upon them tempts the student to make the English words fit the Latin. In fact you will find it difficult to see the Latin as it really is if you look at an

English translation first. Moreover, the habit of relying upon a translation weakens the ability to comprehend Latin at sight. On the other hand, good translations, especially in the absence of a good teacher, can frequently help the student to a fuller understanding of the Latin. If you want translations, the Loeb Classical Texts, which you will find in the better municipal libraries, give English and Latin versions side by side. They vary considerably in their merit, but they are handy, and include most of the authors you will want to read. Many Latin authors are also translated in the Everyman Library.

If you want an introduction to other Latin authors, there is Mackail's *Latin Literature*—a stimulating and brilliant book. *The Writers of Rome*, by Wight Duff (Oxford), is a shorter but sound guide. There is no need to confine yourself to classical Latin. Apuleius' diverting story of the *Golden Ass* is waiting for you, and the lovely *Vigil of Venus*; and if you would explore later literature, there is Helen Waddell's collection of Mediaeval Latin Lyrics. You may then like to return to the Classical Age and dip into some of the great writers which are generally considered to be too difficult for beginners, such as Lucretius, whose epic poem, *De Rerum Natura*, contains the germs of the atomic theory, as well as a courageous defence of scientific truth against superstition, or Tacitus, the Carlyle of Ancient Rome, who "wrote history in flashes of lightning".

Though in your reading you must struggle at times with difficulties of syntax and grammar, never forget that you are also studying literature. Try to get some

understanding of the Roman background. Even the slight account of the rise and fall of Rome, which is given in Wells' *Short Outline of World History*, will make you better able to appreciate the authors you are reading, or *The Ancient World*, by T. R. Glover, which has been republished in the Pelican series. A fuller account of Roman history, and not less interesting, will be found in C. E. Robinson's *History of Rome* (Methuen).

But perhaps the best book on the achievement of Rome and its legacy to, and influence on, the modern world is *The Roman Commonwealth*, by R. W. Moore (English Universities Press). A slighter, but not less good book, is *Rome*, by Warde Fowler, in the Home University Series. *Everyday Life in Ancient Rome*, by Treble and King (Oxford Press, 3s.), gives a short but vivid account of the way the Romans lived.

There are many historical novels which bring the Romans to life. Naomi Mitchison's novel, *The Conquered*, will give you a better understanding of Caesar, for it tells the story of a Gallic rising from the standpoint of the conquered Gauls. John Buchan's biographies of Julius Caesar and Augustus are well worth reading. Robert Graves' novels, *I Claudius* (reprinted as a Penguin), and *Claudius, the God*, give a vivid picture of life under the Empire, while for a better understanding of the intellectual life of imperial Rome you might read Pater's *Marius the Epicurean*.

## PART II

### ENGLISH-INTO-LATIN EXERCISES

#### Exercise I (b)

Write down the forms for these English phrases in Latin :—

1. The friendship of the sailors of Italy.
2. The inhabitants of Spain.
3. Of the inhabitants of Italy.
4. By the anger of the sailor.
5. By the victory of the poets.
6. To the islands.
7. For the sailors of Spain and Italy.
8. The shore of Italy.

The following exercise is now to be turned into Latin. To add a little to the interest I have tried to tell you consecutively a few facts about the life of Hamilcar Barca, a famous Carthaginian general, who fought against the Romans.

#### Exercise 2 (b)

(Words in italics are not to be translated.)

1. Barca is arming *the* inhabitants of Spain.
2. *He* was trying at first to win *the* friendship of *the* inhabitants.
3. *He* was defeating many times *the* people of this land.
4. *He* does not love Italy now, nor used *he* to love *it*.
5. *He* was warring with *the* inhabitants of Italy, and *he* was ablaze with boldness and anger.
6. *He* was fighting in *the* island of Sicily.
7. *The* inhabitants of Italy, however, were defeating Barca.
8. *He* then asks for *their* friendship and obtains *it*.
9. Now *he* is renewing *his* wrath against Italy.
10. *You* hope for victory, O Barca.

Exercise 3 (*b*)

Turn into Latin :—

1. We love Philip's sons. 2. Philip's sons used to love the horses. 3. Philip gives horses to his sons. 4. Where are the horses of Philip now? 5. They are in the fields. 6. The goats and horses belong to (*say* are of) the sons of Philip. 7. With his horses and his goats and his sons, Philip is in the fields.

Exercise 4 (*b*)

(Words in italics are not to be translated.)

*The* Carthaginians fought with *the* Romans three times. At first *they* fought in Sicily, and *by the aid of the* winds *the* Carthaginians often defeated *the* sailors of *the* Romans. But at last near Sicily *the* Roman sailors defeated *their* opponents. *The* Carthaginians after that no longer hoped for victory and refused to renew *the* war. *They* then asked-for *the* friendship of *their* enemies and obtained *it*. Accordingly *the* Carthaginians and *the* Romans were no longer enemies.

Exercise 5 (*b*)

Words in italics do not have separate words in Latin.)

Dear *to* me is *the* cypress in my garden. For *its* leaves are full-of-shade. *It* is tall and old, but *it* was always beautiful. In autumn *it* is loveliest. After-that *it* seems rough and gloomy. Then *I* am wretched when *I* am looking at *it*, for a great sadness seems *to* be in my mind. For many years *I* have loved my cypress, and *I* shall love *it* for-ever (*say* always).

Exercise 6 (*b*)

1. They had attacked a large number of Carthaginians in this place. 2. If we attack this place the Spaniards will renew the war. 3. When ye have estranged Spain from the Carthaginians, ye will attack Africa. 4. After we have extended our empire we shall preserve it with great stubbornness.

5. We had hesitated to preserve the Romans when they were in great danger. 6. I had hesitated to approve Barca's plan. 7. After we conquer Africa we shall extend our empire to Spain. 8. We shall refuse to attack the Romans because they have won our friendship. 9. When I have armed the Spaniards I shall fight with the Gauls. 10. In this place we had fought with Philip for many years.

### Exercise 7 (b)

1. It is the duty of a commander-in-chief to preserve the limits of the Empire. 2. Ye were pondering in mind the renewal of (to renew) the peace. 3. O Hannibal, you enriched Africa with steeds and money. 4. In autumn the sky is beautiful. 5. The ships of the Romans attacked the Carthaginians near the islands. 6. The Romans, a people of great valour, used to govern all other races. 7. It is incumbent upon a chief to defeat the enemy. 8. To make peace is the privilege of the commander-in-chief. 9. No longer shall we fight with the Romans with ships. 10. When we conquer the fleet of the Carthaginians we shall make peace.

### Exercise 8 (b)

1. Caius, by surname Caesar, sailed with large forces to Malta. 2. By land and sea we have defeated the fleets of the Romans. 3. It is not in-keeping-with-my-valour to make peace (see footnote 2, Ex. 8 (a), page 54). 4. We have ratified the peace with a treaty. 5. Ye have violated the treaty, O Carthaginians. 6. We are sailing to Caesar at Rome with great gifts (see footnote 1, Ex. 8 (a), page 55). 7. From Rome to London is a long voyage. 8. The animals of the sea are very big. 9. Man surpasses all animals in virtue. 10. He was renewing the iron-head of his spear.

### Exercise 9 (b)

1. However, at Zama the Romans defeated their enemies. 2. For many years, indeed, Pompeius lived at Rome. 3. A

great multitude of the enemy attacked the Romans at break of day. 4. At Carthage the Carthaginians were meditating war. 5. Caesar and Pompey surpassed all other Romans in greed of glory. 6. At Athens there are many beautiful statues. 7. In this way Hannibal had won the friendship of the States of Italy. 8. We were fighting for one year in Africa with a small tribe. 9. Men overcome the greed of money by love of virtue. 10. It is not in-keeping-with-my-custom to attack warlike nations.

*Note.*—In sixth sentence of Exercise 9 (*b*) say “many and beautiful”, and so always in Latin. Cf. sixth sentence in Exercise 9 (*a*).

### Exercise 10 (*b*)

1. The Romans attacked the Carthaginians while exploring the territory (*omit* while). 2. For already they had estranged all the States. 3. Then with a huge multitude of men the enemy attacked Caesar. 4. However, we shall always value the brave man at a greater price (*for* brave men *use simply masculine of adjective*). 5. We indeed love our wives with a passionate love. 6. The fiery steeds of the Carthaginians will soon attack and put to flight the enemy. 7. Ye have estimated virtue highly, but money more highly still. 8. We shall not only rout the enemy from the walls, but attack their city also. 9. The soldiers estimated at a low value the designs of the brave general. 10. Generals give great rewards to brave soldiers.

### Exercise 11 (*b*)

1. Accordingly Caesar with a large army sailed to Britain to attack his enemies. 2. At daybreak we routed a band of the enemy with our cavalry. 3. The magistrates thereafter prepared an army that the enemy might not attack the city. 4. The enemy are stirring up the Gauls to seize the defile by night. 5. With her armies Rome (*say* Romans) conquered the world (*say* all nations or races). 6. With their horns goats attack their enemies. 7. The magistrates on the next day dined at home. 8. For Caius had sailed from Rome in the third month. 9. They accordingly arm themselves to preserve

their homes. 10. We approved of this plan that we might avoid a disaster.

### Exercise 12 (b)

1. Then his hopes were high, but sad his thoughts. 2. Accordingly, since he had routed the first line, he attacked the second. 3. For to-day we shall doubtlessly rout the enemy's line-of-battle. 4. The enemy were standing in battle array. 5. However, the commonwealth was in great danger, since the Gauls had routed their legions. 6. For they had attacked the Roman legions with the greatest hope. 7. When they had prayed the gods many prayers, they renewed the battle. 8. Many were his thoughts as he looked on the Roman line-of-battle. 9. For with the greatest good-faith Hannibal had made peace.

### Exercise 13 (b)

1. But when the Romans conquer those races they will surrender. 2. He sailed to that island by night to sacrifice victims to Jove most high and holy. 3. After the seizure of the defile they explored the fields. 4. Those actions at first stirred up laughter in the *combatants* (translate by dative of Present Participle of the verb *to fight*). 5. Next he routed the legions stationed on the shore. 6. Being accordingly about to attack Rome he prepared a strong army. 7. He suddenly routed the enemy (when they were) about-to-attack the camp secretly. 8. For we have sailed to Africa that we may recover the estranged cities. 9. Where are the conquered forces? They are about to seek peace. 10. How many out of that large army are likely to look upon (*specto*) their fatherland again?

### Exercise 14 (b)

1. We were waging war with the Romans many years. 2. We shall see the line of battle of the enemy on the third day. 3. They will conquer and hold all the world beneath their sway. 4. Ye are leading large forces against the Romans. 5. Before the arrival of the Romans we were waging war with ill-success (*say* badly) by sea and land. 6. When we were

waging war we always conquered our enemies. 7. But at last we almost came to despair. 8. They were coming to Rome, the strongest city of Italy. 9. We shall carry out important (great) operations (things) with success (with favourable fortune). 10. With undying hatred for the Romans Hannibal is leading an army into Italy.

### Exercise 15 (b)

1. He says this man will make an end of this war. 2. He says these men are making an end of this war. 3. These men say those have made an end of these wars. 4. If Catulus refuses to end this war we shall leave Sicily. 5. This man is coming to Africa to end the war and destroy Carthage. 6. The Vettones will slay him while fighting in battle. 7. The bystanders say this woman is brave. 8. He says he will leave Rome to-morrow. 9. On-the-point-of-departure from Sicily he made peace with Catulus. 10. We shall arrive in Rome at daybreak.

### Exercise 16 (b)

1. Catulus himself had said he would not end the war. 2. Catulus alone had said he himself had ended the war. 3. If Catulus says he will end the war, we shall sail at once to Rome. 4. We ourselves had thought they were about to return home alone with great disgrace. 5. Those who come to Rome look at the beautiful buildings. 6. Hannibal himself said he alone had removed the enemy from the walls of Carthage. 7. Which-of-the-two said the Romans were slaying the captives? 8. The one said this was so: the other said-it-was-not-so (denied). 9. We had seen the man who (see Note at end of Vocabulary 16) had restored to his country the strongest towns in Africa (*say of Africa*). 10. Neither said that Caesar gave this province to him alone.

### Exercise 17 (b)

1. Yon man was defending Eryx so bravely that the Romans had no hope of success. 2. That man is defending Eryx with

such bravery that the Romans do not think they will take it. 3. He was defending your city in such a manner that the Romans had no hope of victory. 4. He was so bold as to say (*say* that he was saying) he would not surrender your town. 5. The Romans were waging war so badly that they were losing all their towns. 6. The bravery of that man was so great that he used to conquer all his opponents. 7. He is so wise that he sees these things are false. 8. So great a war broke out that the Carthaginians were losing the towns of Africa. 9. Which of the two is bold enough to fight with that man yonder (*say* is so bold that he may fight)? 10. He said they had lost the empire of all Africa.

### Exercise 18 (b)

1. The Carthaginians were so terrified that they asked aid even from the Romans and obtained it. 2. Since, O Carthaginians, ye had lost everything in Sicily ye made peace. 3. You defended Eryx so bravely that we retreated. 4. When they resolved to make an end of the war they entrusted the business to Hamilcar. 5. He was so fired with the lust for war that he refused to leave Sicily. 6. Some were ablaze with the desire of ruling, others with the desire for (of) money. 7. When he discovered these things were useless for fighting he destroyed them. 8. So many mercenaries had revolted that the Carthaginians were in despair. 9. Let-us-leave<sup>1</sup> to others the desire for warfare (of warring). 10. By sparing the property of others we shall win their love.

### Exercise 19 (b)

1. Just now there are many Carthaginians in Sicily. 2. We were a long time at Rome. 3. If I am (see Note at end of Vocabulary 19) at Rome I shall come to see you. 4. When you are (see Note at end of Vocabulary 19) at Rome you will see the Capitol. 5. He is hastening that he may be at Rome on that day. 6. Cassius was slain after the battle by his slave

<sup>1</sup> "Let us leave" is first person plural of the Present Subjunctive, a common meaning.

with a dagger. 7. Antonius had been loved by Cleopatra. 8. When they are defeated by the Romans they will certainly retire from Sicily. 9. If we are defeated in this battle by Scipio we shall certainly be in great danger. 10. When the mercenaries had revolted Carthage was in great peril.

### Exercise 20 (b)

1. He defended Eryx in such a manner that he made an end of the war in that place. 2. So great a war had blazed forth that Carthage was never in like danger. 3. Since a hundred thousand of armed men had been brought together (*say* had been made: *facio*) he resolved to attack the enemy. 4. Italy was being harassed by a large number of the enemy. 5. So fiercely did they fight that the town was preserved. 6. Shut in by the narrowness of the position (*say* places), more were slain by famine than by the steel. 7. Ye<sup>1</sup> have been at Rome, but we<sup>1</sup> have not been in Greece. 8. Before the capture of the city (*say*, Before the city taken: *cipio*) by the enemy, a large number of them were slain. 9. I had been for many years in Corinth for the purpose of seeing the statues. 10. They were so terrified by these woes that they surrendered.

### Exercise 21 (b)

1. Affairs in Sicily are being carried on badly both by land and by sea. 2. No opportunity of doing harm will be given to the enemy. 3. On the contrary, when an opportunity is given (Ablative Absolute), the enemy will be attacked (*laccio*). 4. Affairs were being carried on well in Sicily. 5. War must be waged in that spot by us. 6. Men must not injure their friends. 7. We must leave Sicily within a few days. 8. The Romans must never yield to the enemy. 9. Eryx must be defended by the Carthaginians. 10. If affairs are going on badly in Sicily we shall depart from that island. 11. We shall resolve to make an end of this war. 12. If our fleet is con-

<sup>1</sup> The pronouns are here emphatic by contrast and are therefore inserted in Latin. Ye = *vos*; we = *nos*.

quered by the Roman consul we shall make peace (remember the tense of "is conquered").

*Note.*—No vocabulary is given in this exercise, nor in any succeeding one. The words are mainly taken from the preceding Latin passage, and many of the phrases are closely modelled on it.

## Exercise 22

1. I was ablaze with greed for war: you thought we must pay regard to peace. 2. He gave these gifts to us, to you those. 3. You are the wisest of us all, I am the bravest. 4. Having been subdued they surrendered to us. 5. My fatherland is very dear to me, although worn out by the disasters of war. 6. He (that man) is wiser than you. 7. He is sending these gifts to the wisest man of the Romans. 8. I was ablaze with keener passion for war than you. 9. This task is the easiest of all, that the most difficult. 10. He is very like his father (genitive); his brother is more like his mother (genitive). 11. I will rather perish amid the ruins of my country. 12. He said he would go home in (with) the deepest disgrace. 13. Thereafter we had made peace with this design. 14. He and his men laid down their arms and left Sicily (*Latin says, arms having been laid down left*).

## Exercise 23

1. He was entreating them to do those things. 2. I have entreated them to do these things. 3. They made it their aim to send an army into Spain. 4. We shall bring it to pass that we are sent into Spain as generals. 5. We have found our country in a much different condition from what we expected. 6. He gathered together mercenary soldiers that he might use them against the Romans. 7. We have attacked Carthage itself that all Africa may be alienated. 8. He will drive them to such a point that more will be perishing by famine than by the steel. 9. The senate decreed that Carthage should be attacked and destroyed. 10. The senate decrees that Carthage is to be attacked and destroyed. 11. The senate will decree

the destruction of Carthage (*say* that Carthage may be, etc.).  
 12. He attacked Carthage in order that he might destroy it.  
 13. He entreated him not to send him to Rome. 14. He ordered the soldiers to remove the enemy from the walls.  
 15. He has ordered the soldiers to leave Italy at once.

(Tell in each sentence whether you are using a Final, Consecutive or Substantival Subjunctive.)

*Note.*—"That not" in a Consecutive clause is "*ut non*"; in the other two, *ne*. Similarly "that never" is *ut nunquam*, "that none" *ut nullus*, but in the Final and Substantival clauses *ne unquam*, *ne quis*.

### Exercise 24

1. Catulus commanded the Carthaginians to leave Sicily.  
 2. He came-to-the-aid of the estranged towns (*subvenio*).  
 3. I was envying Hannibal his supreme command over the army. 4. The chief by his bounty did much good to the Carthaginians (*say* benefited many things: *multa* and dative).  
 5. We will restore to our country the strongest towns of all Africa. 6. We shall never be slaves to Hannibal and the Carthaginians. 7. He said he would never be a slave to the Romans (*say* he denied he would ever). 8. He has restored such peace to Africa that there seems to have been no war within many years. 9. He was sent with an army to Spain that he might find more easily a pretext for war. 10. You are taking with you your son nine years of age. 11. He mentioned this man because he accomplished many great deeds. 12. We will oppose our foes by land and by sea. 13. Hannibal threatens the Romans with perpetual war (*say* threatens perpetual war to the Romans). 14. He came to Spain with an army that he might the better accomplish these things. 15. When he had accomplished these things in accordance with his wish he set out for home.

### Exercise 25

1. If his affairs had been restored he would have renewed the war (see Passage No. 2). 2. If he had conquered them by

his valour they would have surrendered (see Passage No. 2). 3. If Catulus had said he would not end the war, the Romans would have left Sicily. 4. If his affairs were to be restored, he would renew the war. 5. If he conquers them by his valour they will surrender. 6. If he should conquer them by his valour they would surrender. 7. If Catulus were to refuse to end the war they would leave Sicily. 8. If Catulus refuses to end the war they will leave Sicily. 9. The second Punic war seems chiefly to have been stirred up by the undying enmity of this man for the Romans. 10. Carry out great exploits, subdue the most warlike races, and enrich Africa with men and money. 11. He said Africa would be enriched with steeds and men. 12. He said he was meditating carrying on the war into Italy. 13. He says Africa is being enriched with men and money. 14. They were slain in the ninth year after they came into Spain. 15. Love your enemies.

### Exercise 26

1. We shall be able to conquer the Romans. 2. They were able to conquer all nations. 3. Ye were able to surpass all nations in valour. 4. Thou canst not kill thine enemy. 5. We had been able utterly to subdue the valour of one man. 6. You will have been able to lay down your hatred for the Romans. 7. He says he can kill his enemies. 8. He says he can surpass all races in valour. 9. He says Hannibal could have surpassed all generals in forethought. 10. If Hannibal were here now he would be conquering Italy. 11. If Hannibal had been in that battle he would have defeated the enemy. 12. If Hannibal had not surpassed all generals in skill, he would not have been the greatest general of all (if not = *nisi*). 13. If we had been doing this we would have suffered the severest punishment (paid the heaviest (*gravissimus*) penalty). 14. If you<sup>1</sup> had done this, you would have been suffering the most severe (*gravissimus*) penalties. 15. If he had been wise he would not have been doing that.

<sup>1</sup> Use the singular.

## Exercise 27

1. There is no doubt but that he is returning. 2. There was no doubt but he was returning. 3. It is impossible that he is not departing. 4. It was impossible that you were not departing. 5. There was no one but thought the enemy were departing. 6. There is no one but is now entering the city. 7. If he was approaching Rome he was making a mistake. 8. If he is entering the house he is a fool. 9. I shall go to Rome if he will go to Carthage. 10. If he is doing this there is no good in it (*say* nothing of good, *nil boni*).

## Exercise 28

1. They are asking him whether he will bring them their books. 2. They are asking him if he is bringing much money with him. 3. They are asking him if he has brought much money with him. 4. We asked them if they had brought any money with them (*say* anything of money, *quid pecuniae*). 5. We asked them if they were bringing any money with them. 6. We asked them if they would bring much money with them. 7. If you bring (*duco*) with you all the cavalry, you will win the day (you will conquer, simply). 8. He asked me if I would go with him to the camp. 9. Hamilcar asks Hannibal if he will go with him to the camp. 10. He has gone away to bring the cavalry. 11. We asked him when he would return to Rome. 12. I do not know what books he is bringing with him from Italy. 13. The soldiers did not know whether that was being approved of in-the-name-of-the-State. 14. Within the next three years, the Carthaginians subdued all the nations of Spain.

## Exercise 29

(For Vocabulary, look back to Passages Nos. 7 & 8.)

1. They have begun at last to cross the defile of the Pyrenees. 2. He preferred to send one of these armies into Africa. 3. Hannibal has brought it to pass that an elephant with its equipment is able to go by that way. 4. He attempted to

join battle with Publius Cornelius Scipio at the river Po. 5. They ought to leave one army in Spain and lead the other into Italy (the one . . . the other, *alter . . . alter*). 6. They ought to have left one army in Spain and led the other into Italy (say "were owing to leave": Latin makes *debeo* Past, and the Infinitive Present tense). 7. We know how to lay open the country and make roads. 8. It seems that Hannibal crossed the Alps by the Graian defile (say Hannibal seems to have, etc.). 9. It is said that Hannibal routed (*profligo*) the inhabitants of the Alps (*Alpici*) in trying to prevent his passage (say Hannibal is said). 10. On this journey they were afflicted with so serious a disease that half the army (say "half of the army", using *dimidium*, half) perished (*intereo*).

(The following are five sentences on Indirect questions. Remember "whether . . . or not" is *utrum . . . necne*.)

11. They do not know whether Hannibal has made for Etruria or not. 12. I cannot tell whether Hannibal wishes this or not. 13. He asked if he was unwilling to go into Spain and would prefer to remain at Carthage. 14. We shall ask them when they prefer to do this. 15. You have told us what the enemy were wishing.

### Exercise 30

(For Vocabulary, look back to Passage No. 8.)

1. He stayed in the mountains near the city for the purpose of holding his camp there. 2. He set out for Rome to fight this battle. 3. He wished to send forward Caius Centenius the praetor, for the purpose of seizing the defile. 4. He won great glory by routing the enemy in one battle. 5. We would have preferred to appoint decemvirs for the purpose of drawing up laws. 6. He has done this that Hannibal may be willing to end the war. 7. He wished to march quickly for the purpose of surrounding the enemy. 8. When he was weighed down by a serious disease he preferred to be carried in a litter. 9. He marched into Apulia to meet the consuls (use Supine, or *ad* and Gerund). 10. With none to oppose he advanced on Rome to storm the city. 11. Quintus Fabius

Maximus wished to throw himself in his path. 12. They were unwilling to advance on Rome to attack the city. 13. He did this in order that the consul might be unwilling to leave the city. 14. He returned to Capua to attack the Romans. 15. He surrounded the consul and his army and slew them.

### Exercise 31

Note that verbs like "to be", "to become", "to be named", "to be chosen", take the same case after as before them.

1. I fear that Caesar may not become king. 2. I was afraid that Caesar might not become king. 3. They were afraid that Caesar would cross the river. 4. They are afraid that Caesar may cross the river. 5. Caesar was afraid to become king. 6. Caesar is afraid to become king. 7. Caesar is afraid to cross the river. 8. Caesar was afraid of crossing the river. 9. By cultivating virtue we shall become happy. 10. Within not so many days these men will become consuls. 11. After this achievement I shall become a very clever general. 12. Caesar said that that man had been made consul by treachery. 13. Caesar says he has no fear of Cicero's becoming consul (*say* lest Cicero may become). 14. Men become good generals by practising military matters. 15. From this it is possible to see how great a general he became.

### Exercise 32

(For Vocabulary, look back to Passage No. 10.)

1. He pitied the son of the general whom he had routed at the Rhône. 2. I ought to defend my fatherland when called back home. 3. He ought to have defended his fatherland when called home. 4. I am delighted to have ended so great a war. 5. They are glad because they have collected those who remain from the rout (they are glad to have collected). 6. The Romans were ashamed at having been defeated at the Trebia by Hannibal. 7. I know the Romans were ashamed of their defeat on the Trebia (*say* to have been defeated, *or*

because they, etc.). 8. He knew the Romans had repented of the destruction of Carthage (because they had destroyed : Pluperfect Subjunctive explained in Lessons XXXVI and XXXVII.) 9. You may be consul at Rome and not be-at-the-head-of an army. 10. He might have been king at Carthage if he had wished. 11. It was his pleasure to remain at Hadrumetum collecting the remnants of his army (say *reliquos*). 12. It was the interest of the soldiers to obey the commands of Hannibal faithfully; it is ours to defeat Hannibal himself. 13. It concerns all of us to do what is right. 14. He said he had been permitted to prepare an army by fresh levies. 15. The Numidians repented of having set an ambush for Hannibal. 16. They have been persuaded to do this. 17. The fields will be injured by the Carthaginians. 18. If the fields are injured by the Carthaginians we shall send ambassadors to Rome. 19. The king will be obeyed by all good citizens (say, *optimus quisque*, "each best man"). 20. The soldiers were commanded to depart from the city within three days.

### Exercise 33

(For Vocabulary, see Passage No. 11.)

1. Ambassadors are coming to Rome to return thanks to the senate and people of Rome. 2. Ambassadors have come to Rome to return thanks to the senate and people of Rome. 3. Ambassadors went to Rome to seek peace from the Romans. 4. Ambassadors will go to Rome to seek peace from the Romans. 5. The Carthaginians are not the sort of men to make peace. 6. The Romans were not the sort of men to ask for (*peto*) peace. 7. I, since I had come too late (*serius*), did not see my father. 8. Although you have been the cause of this war we shall keep you in authority over the army. 9. They, since they had been recalled, returned home. 10. They, since they have been recalled, will return home. 11. They besought them to keep their captives at Fregellae. 12. They gave them a golden crown because they had made peace with them.

## Exercise 34

(For Vocabulary, see Passage No. 13.)

1. When he had weighed anchor and set sail, two ships were sent to seize him. 2. When he has weighed anchor and set sail, we shall send two ships to seize him. 3. He was slain by a slave before he had written the letter. 4. The slave has been ordered to slay him before he writes the letter. 5. On the rout of Antiochus, he fled before the Romans could seize him. 6. While he was writing a letter to his mother in Rome, the slave slew him. 7. While his men were being overcome by the multitude of their opponents, Hannibal was routing those with whom he had engaged. 8. While he was journeying from Carthage to Crete, pirates (*latrones*) attacked him (either *dum* or Present Participle). 9. Hannibal waited until the fleet of the Rhodians joined battle. 10. He was unwilling to halt (*consistere*) until he should get to the Gortynii in Crete. 11. While Hannibal was with Antiochus he was successful in all his battles. 12. This would undoubtedly have happened had he put himself in the power of the Romans. 13. He resolved to depart before he should come into great danger on account of the avarice of the Cretans. 14. So long as Antiochus was willing to follow out (*say* obey) Hannibal's advice, he was successful in war. 15. In despair, Hannibal came to Antiochus in Syria.

## Exercise 35

(For Vocabulary, see Passage No. 14.)

1. They had filled three hundred and sixty-five jars with lead. 2. Two hundred and twenty-nine jars had been filled with gold and silver. 3. He gave three apples to the boy. 4. He said he would have given (himself to have been about to give) two hundred ships to Hannibal. 5. Rome was founded in the year B.C. 753 (*say* in the 753rd year before Christ having been born). 6. The battle of Cannae was fought in B.C. 216. 7. Hannibal lived for seventy years. 8. Caesar had given two ships to each leader. 9. We shall give them two hundred sesterces each. 10. Darius set sail for Europe with more than

a thousand ships. 11. Three times the Romans charged the enemy, but at last they were routed. 12. I have seen the city of Rome twenty times ere this. 13. Hannibal came down from the Alps into Italy with twenty-five thousand men. 14. For sixteen years under the leadership of Hannibal, Carthage waged war with Rome. 15. In B.C. 202, at Zama, the Romans utterly-conquered the Carthaginians (use *devinco*).

### Exercise 36

(For Vocabulary, see Passage No. 15.)

1. He said that Eumenes had more power through the alliance with the Romans. 2. He said that those men would come together on the day on which he was intending to fight by sea. 3. He said he saw those who were fighting in this naval battle. 4. He said he had seen those who were fighting in this naval battle. 5. He said he would take care that they knew in what ship the gold was being carried. 6. He thought if he removed this man all would be easy for him. 7. He said he had seen the general who had fought so long (*tamdiu*) with the Romans. 8. He says he has seen the messenger who was sent with the herald's wand to Eumenes. 9. He says those who are attacking the ship of Eumenes are being routed. 10. He says that those who attack the ship of Eumenes will be routed ("who attack" in Latin becomes "who may have attacked"). 11. Hannibal sends the messenger before the signal for battle can be given. 12. He said Hannibal sent the messenger before the signal for battle could be given. 13. He said Hannibal had sent the messenger before the signal for battle had been given. 14. He said Hannibal sent the letter-bearer to show his men where the king was. 15. He said he had commanded them all to attack the ship of Eumenes alone.

### Exercise 37

(For Vocabulary, see Passage No. 16.)

1. He said he would not secure that unless he betook himself to the protection of his own troops (*say* within his own forces). 2. He said he would not secure that unless he were

to betake himself to the protection of his own troops. 3. He said he would not have secured that unless he had betaken himself to the protection of his own troops. 4. He said he would not be a fool if he were doing that. 5. He promised that if they took or slew him there would be a great reward for them. 6. He asserted that if they had taken or slain him there would have been a great reward for them. 7. He said that if they were to slay him there would be a great reward for them. 8. He said if he had not sought safety in flight he would have been slain (*say* it to have been about to be . . . that (*ut*) he should be slain: *i.e.*, future participle with perfect infinitive followed by *ut* with Imperfect Subjunctive). 9. He said if they should not seek safety in flight they would be slain. 10. He says if they do not seek safety in flight they will be slain (Future Perfect after Primary tense becomes Perfect Subjunctive). 11. He says if they had not sought safety in flight they would have been slain. 12. He says if they had not been fools they would not have been doing that. (Keep same tense of Subjunctive as in direct form.) 13. Although he was marvelling at the reason of this, yet he did not hesitate to join battle. 14. No one doubted but that he had brought some message concerning peace. 15. Having thus made known the ship to his own side he returned to the same place whence he had come.

### Exercise 38

(For Vocabulary, see Passage No. 18.)

1. The throwing of these things suddenly produced laughter in the combatants. 2. They were so terrified by the strange occurrence that they could not see what especially to avoid. 3. Ill-success is the mark of a bad general. (Ill-success = to wage war badly.) 4. Although they saw Antiochus making many very foolish attempts they on no occasion deserted him (see Passage No. 13). 5. Since he saw he was not strong enough (*say* too little strong) in the resources of his own kingdom, he won over all other princes (see Passage No. 14). 6. A fierce war was being waged (*say* a war was being waged

fiercely) between them both by land and sea: therefore Hannibal was the more eager for his overthrow (see Passage No. 14). 7. He said he would very easily find the place where he was. 8. He ordered the soldiers to bring him word speedily whether he was beset on all sides. 9. The boy very quickly reported that all the outlets were seized. 10. The Carthaginians perceived this was no chance occurrence, and their empire could no longer be maintained. 11. I will bring you word quickly what it is. 12. If you had ordered us we would easily have found where he was (from *facilis* you expect *faciliter*, but the adverb is *facile*). 13. He saw that they had not come by chance, but were seeking him. 14. Mindful of his former valour, he took the poison not to lose his life at the bidding of another. 15. The messengers reported that an unusual number of armed men were in sight.

## PART III

### KEY TO THE PASSAGES FOR TRANSLATION IN LESSONS XX TO XXXIX

(Keys to the other passages and extracts will be found  
in the next section.)

#### Passage No. I

##### *Literal Version*

HAMILCAR, father of Hannibal, by surname Barca, a Carthaginian, in the first Punic war, but in the last times, quite a young man, in Sicily, began to be in command of the army. When (although) before the arrival of him both by land and by sea the affairs of the Carthaginians were being carried on badly, he himself, when he was present, never to the enemy yielded, nor gave a place of injuring, and often on the contrary, a chance having been given, attacked and ever departed superior (victor). Which having been done, when almost everything in Sicily the Carthaginians had lost, he (that man) so defended Eryx that a war in that place was not seeming to have been waged. Meanwhile the Carthaginians by means of a fleet at the Aegatian Islands by Caius Lutatius consul of the Romans having been defeated, resolved to make of the war an end and that matter entrusted to the judgment of Hamilcar.

*Second Version*

Hamilcar, the father of Hannibal, by surname Barca, a Carthaginian, near the end of the first Punic war, took over the command of the army in Sicily (while) quite a young man. Although before his arrival the Carthaginians were faring badly both by land and sea, he himself when he was present never yielded to the enemy nor gave them a chance of doing him harm. On the contrary, often when a chance had been given, he attacked (them) and always came off the victor. And on this being done (by doing this), although the Carthaginians had lost almost everything in Sicily, he so defended Eryx that the war did not seem to have been fought in that spot. Meanwhile the Carthaginians on their defeat at the Aegatian Islands by Caius Lutatius, consul of the Romans, with a fleet, resolved to end the war and entrusted that business to the discretion of Hamilcar.

N.B.—Make absolutely certain that you know every word in this before going on—parts of verbs, stems of nouns, etc. Use freely the Table of Irregular Verbs.

## Passage No. 2

*Literal Version*

That man (Hamilcar) although he was blazing with the greed of warring, yet thought he must pay-regard-to peace, because he was perceiving that his fatherland, worn out by expenses, longer to endure the calamities of war was not able. With this design he made peace, in which so great was his boldness, since Catulus was

denying that he the war would end unless he (Hamilcar) with his men, who had held Eryx, their arms having been left should leave Sicily, that, his fatherland lying prostrate, he himself said he would rather perish than with so great disgrace (he would) return home: for (he said) it not to be of his valour the arms received from his fatherland against the enemy to surrender to his foes. To the obstinacy of this man Catulus yielded.

### Notes

*Nisi decederent*: Catulus said, "I will not end, unless they shall be departing". This "shall be departing" becomes Imperfect Subjunctive when the words are reported; just as in English they become "he would not end unless they should depart".

Note the pronouns *ipse* subject to *dixerit*, *se* referring to *ipse* but the subject of *periturum*. *Se*, *suus* always refer to the subject of the main verb, here to *dixerit*.

### Second Version

Although he was ablaze with eagerness for war, yet he thought he must pay regard to peace because he felt that his fatherland, worn out by the expense, could not longer endure the disasters of the war. With this design he concluded peace. In this, such was his boldness, when Catulus refused to end the war, unless he and his men who had held Eryx should lay down their arms and leave Sicily, that he said he would rather perish amid his country's ruins <sup>1</sup> than return home with such dishonour; for it was not in keeping with his valour to surrender to his foes the arms he had received from his fatherland against the enemy. Catulus yielded to his obstinacy.

<sup>1</sup> *Succumbente patria*: his fatherland lying low, Ablative Absolute. This may be translated very freely as above.

## Passage No. 3

*Literal Version*

But that man, when he came to Carthage, by much otherwise than he had hoped, found the State holding itself. For by the length (duration) of the foreign evil, so great an internal war blazed out that never in like danger Carthage was unless when it was destroyed. At first, the mercenary soldiers, whom they had used against the Romans, revolted; of whom there was a number of twenty thousands. These estranged all Africa, attacked Carthage itself. By which evils, so were the Carthaginians terrified, that even aids from the Romans they sought and obtained them. But at last, when almost now to despair they had come, they made Hamilcar general. That man, not only the enemy from the walls of Carthage removed, when more than a hundred thousand of armed men had been made, but even drove them to that point that, by the narrowness of the places shut in, more (men) by famine than by steel were perishing.

*Notes*

*Ut* : note this use of *ut*, meaning "when", taking the Indicative.

*Rempublicam se habentem* : accusative after *cognovit*.

*Ut . . . fuerit* : This is of course a Consecutive clause. Note *tantum*.

*Viginti milium* : a Descriptive Genitive, describing *numerus*.

*Quibus malis* : Latin says "By which evils"; we would say "By these evils".

*Adeo . . . ut . . . petierint* : Consecutive Subjunctive again.

*Amplius* : an adverb meaning "more". You might expect the ablative after it, since "than" is omitted; but in Latin this adverb often has no effect on the case of the number with it. *Amplius centum milia* (not *centum milibus*), more (than) 100,000 (*centum*, a hundred, is indeclinable).

*Eo . . . ut* : This is again a Consecutive clause: *eo*, "to that point", "to such a point", . . . *ut*, "that".

*Second Version*

But when he came to Carthage, he found the state of his country far different from what he had expected. For through the duration of their misfortunes abroad, so serious an internal war had risen, that Carthage was never in like danger unless when it was destroyed. At first the mercenary soldiers, whom they had employed against the Romans, revolted. The number of these was twenty thousand. These alienated the whole of Africa (and) attacked Carthage itself. The Carthaginians were so panic-stricken at these disasters that they even sought aid from the Romans and obtained it. But at last when now they were reduced almost to despair, they made Hamilcar commander-in-chief. He not only removed the enemy from the walls of Carthage, although more than a hundred thousand armed men had come together, but even drove them to such a pass that, shut in by the straitened nature of the position, more were perishing by famine than by steel.

## Passage No. 4

*Literal Version*

All the estranged towns, among these Utica and Hippo, the strongest of all Africa, he restored to his fatherland. Nor with that was he content, but he even extended the bounds of (her) empire, in all Africa so great repose made that in it no war seemed within many years to have been. These matters, in accordance with his wish, having been accomplished, with a confident heart and hostile to the Romans, by which the

more easily a cause of warring he might find, he effected that as general with an army into Spain he should be sent, and thither with himself he took his son Hannibal of nine years. There was besides along with him a young man, distinguished, handsome, Hasdrubal; concerning this man therefore we have made mention because Hamilcar having been slain, he was in command of the army, and great things carried out, and first by bribery the ancient manners of the Carthaginians corrupted, and of the same man after the death, Hannibal from the army received the command.

### Notes

*Patriae* : Dative of the Recipient, the one who receives.

*Imperium* means firstly "absolute authority", then "dominion", "sway", and almost like our "empire".

*Tota Africa* : Note the Ablative of Place without the preposition *in*.

*Ut . . . videretur* : a Consecutive *ut* clause. Latin says "no war seemed to have been"; we should say "it seemed as if there had been no war".

*Multiis annis* : Ablative of the Time within which, as often in Latin: "within many years".

*Ex sententia mea, sua, nostra* : Latin phrases for "in accordance with my, his, our view, opinion, wish", etc.

*Fidenti animo* : Ablative of Description.

*Secum* : after the personal pronouns, *me, te, se, nobis, vobis*, you place *cum*, meaning "along with", instead of before them; *mecum*, "along with me", *tecum*, etc. Note *se* here because referring to the subject of the main verb, *duxit*.

*Princeps* (= *primus*, first) is in apposition with the subject of *pervertit*.

*Largitione* : Ablative of Means, "by means of bribery".

### Second Version

He restored to his country all the towns that had been lost, among these Utica and Hippo, the strongest in all Africa. And he was not content with that, but also

extended the limits of her sway, and restored such profound repose in all Africa, that it seemed as if there had been no war in it for many years. On the satisfactory completion of these affairs, with a confident heart full of enmity towards Rome, he secured his despatch to Spain with an army as commander-in-chief. Along with him he took thither his son Hannibal, nine years of age. There was besides along with him a distinguished and handsome youth, Hasdrubal. Of this man we have made mention for this reason, because (that) when Hamilcar was slain, he took command of the army and performed great exploits, and was the first to corrupt by bribery the ancient character of the Carthaginians; and after the same man's death, Hannibal received from the army the supreme command.

### Passage No. 5

#### *Literal Version*

But Hamilcar, after the sea he crossed and into Spain came, great exploits performed with favourable fortune: the greatest and most warlike races he subdued, with horses, arms, men, money all Africa he enriched. Here when into Spain the war to carry he was deliberating, in the ninth year, after into Spain he had come, in battle fighting against the Vettones, he was slain. Of this man, the continual hatred towards the Romans especially, to have stirred up the second Punic war (seems). For Hannibal the son of him, by the continual entreaties of his father, to that point was brought that to perish than the Romans not to try he was preferring.

## Notes

*Posteaquam* = *postquam*, after (conjunction).

*Transiit . . . venit*: note Latin using the Perfect where we rather employ the Pluperfect.

*Secunda fortuna*: an Ablative of Description, "with success".

*Totam locupletavit Africam*: note the order—adjective, verb, noun. This is for variety, to avoid two accusatives coming together. Similarly *secundum bellum Poenicum*, "second war Punic", to avoid two adjectives coming together.

*Hic* is probably the adverb "here". It might be nominative masculine singular, "this man".

*Inferre* is the Present Infinitive of an irregular verb, "to carry into". It is explained on p. 143.

*Nono anno*, "within the ninth year", Ablative of Time within which.

*Assiduus patris obtestationibus*: note the order—adjective, genitive, noun.

*Eo*: as before (Passage No. 3, end), "to that point", "to such a pass", etc.

*Ut . . . mallet*: Consecutive clause after *eo*, hence Subjunctive. *Mallet* is Imperfect Subjunctive of an irregular verb, *malo*, I prefer (see Lesson XXIX).

*Interire*, as also *transire* (line 1), are compounds of an irregular verb, *eo*, *ivi*, *itum*, *ire*, which is explained on p. 139.

## Second Version

But Hamilcar, after crossing the sea and coming into Spain, performed great exploits with success (carried out important operations with success): subdued very strong (and) very warlike nations, (and) enriched the whole of Africa with horses, arms, men, (and) money. Here, while he was planning the carrying of the war into Italy, in the ninth year after his arrival in Spain, he was slain in battle against the Vettones. His undying hatred for the Romans seems to have been the chief cause of the second Punic war. For Hannibal, his son, was brought to such a state by his father's continual entreaties that he preferred to perish than not make trial of the Romans (that is, make trial of the might of Rome).

## Passage No. 6

*Literal Version*

Hannibal, son of Hamilcar, a Carthaginian. If it is true, which no one doubts, that the Roman people all nations in virtue has surpassed, it must not be denied (there is not a denying) Hannibal by so much to have surpassed all other generals in forethought, by how much the Roman people surpasses in bravery all nations. For as often as with it he engaged (fought) in Italy, always he departed superior. As to which, unless at home of his own citizens by the envy he had been weakened, the Romans he seems to conquer to have been able. But of many the disparaging utterly conquered of one the valour. This man, as though by a legacy left, the hatred of his father towards the Romans so preserved, that sooner his life than that he laid down; who indeed, when from his country he had been driven and of foreign resources was in need, never ceased in mind to war with the Romans.

*Notes*

*Tanto . . . quanto*: these are Ablatives of Measure of Difference.

*Antecedat*: this is Subjunctive in Oratio Obliqua—that is, in an adjective clause after a verb of saying (*infitiandum*). In Oratio Recta, plain straightforward statement, it would be Present Indicative. Thus: *Oratio Recta*, I see the man who is selling fish; *Oratio Obliqua*, He says he sees the man who is selling fish. The verb "is selling" in the second clause would be Subjunctive: *Dicit se hominem videre qui pisces venditet*.

*Sic . . . ut . . . deposuerit*: Consecutive Subjunctive.

*Alienarum opum indigeret*: *indigeo*, "be in want of", takes a genitive case where you might expect the accusative. It also sometimes has the ablative.

*Second Version*

Hannibal, son of Hamilcar, a Carthaginian. If it is true, as no one doubts, that the Roman people has surpassed all nations in valour, it must not be denied that Hannibal as far excelled all other commanders in forethought as the Roman people surpasses all nations in bravery. For as often as he engaged in battle with them in Italy, he always came off victorious. And had he not been weakened by the jealousy of his own countrymen at home it seems as if he would have been able to overcome the Romans. But the detraction of many utterly overcame the valour of one. This man, however, so preserved his father's hatred for the Romans, left as it were by a legacy, that he sooner laid down his life than that. Since, indeed, when he had been driven from his country and was in need of the resources of strangers, he never ceased to wage war in mind with the Romans.

**Passage No. 7**

He therefore, after Hamilcar's death, Hasdrubal being chosen commander-in-chief, took the command of all the cavalry; when this man also was slain, the army presented the supreme authority to him. That fact being reported at (to) Carthage was approved of in the name of the State. So Hannibal, at less than twenty-seven years of age, became general, and within the next three years subdued in war all the peoples of Spain. He stormed Saguntum, a treaty state, and prepared three very large armies. Of these he sent

one into Africa, another with Hasdrubal, his brother, he left in Spain, the third he took with him into Italy. He crossed the pass of the Pyrenees. Wheresoever he marched he came into conflict with all the inhabitants. He let no one go, unless vanquished. After he came to the Alps, which separate Italy from Gaul, which no one had ever crossed with an army before him, save the Graian Hercules (from which action that is to-day called the Graian Pass), he routed the men of the Alps in attempting to prevent his passage (keep him from the pass), opened up the country (the places), made roads, and brought it to pass that an elephant with its equipment was able to go by that way by which, before that, one unarmed man was scarcely able to crawl. By this way he led his forces across and came into Italy.

### Notes

*Karthaginem*: accusative after a verb of motion; no preposition because it is the name of a town.

*Factus . . . subegit*: literally, "having become . . . he subdued". In English we prefer, as in the translation, two finite verbs.

*Effecit ut*: note that this is a substantival clause after *ut*.

### Passage No. 8

He had engaged-in-battle at the Rhône with Publius Cornelius Scipio, the consul, and had routed him. With this same man at Clastidium, near the Po, he contends and sends him thence wounded and routed. A third time the same Scipio, with his colleague, Tiberius Longus, came against him at the Trebia. With them he joined battle: and overthrew them both. Thence through Liguria he crossed the Apennines, making-for Etruria. On this march he is affected with so severe a

disease in the eyes that he never after that had equally good use of his right eye.

Although he was even then oppressed with this sickness and was being carried in a litter, he surrounded and slew Caius Flaminius, the consul at Trasumenus, together with his army, and, not long after, Caius Centenius, a praetor, who was holding the passes with a chosen band. Hence he came into Apulia. There two consuls met him, Caius Terentius and Lucius Aemilius. He routed the armies of each in one battle, slew Paulus, the consul, and several ex-consuls besides, among them Cnaeus Servilius Geminus, who had been consul in the preceding year.

After this battle he set out for Rome, with no one offering any resistance. He halted in the mountains near the city. After he had held his camp there for several days and was on his way back to Capua, Quintus Fabius Maximus, the Roman dictator, threw himself in his way in the Falernian territory.

### Passage No. 9

Here though shut in by the narrowness of the places (position) he extricated himself by night without any loss to (of) his army, and baffled Fabius, although he was a very clever general. For when night came on (Ablative Absolute) he bound faggots to the horns of his oxen and set them on fire, and let loose far and wide a great multitude of that description. And when the sudden sight presented itself he caused such panic among the Roman army that no one dared to come outside the rampart. Within not so many days after

this achievement, he craftily lured Marcus Minucius Rufus, master of the horse, whose power was equal to the dictator's, into battle and routed him. Tiberius Sempronius Gracchus, consul for the second time, he drew into an ambush, while he was away among the Lucanians and slew. He slew Marcus Claudius Marcellus, five times consul, at Venusia in a similar manner. It would be tedious to enumerate all his engagements. Wherefore it will be sufficient to say this only (literally, this one thing will be enough having been said), from which it may be seen how great he was : as long as he was in Italy no one opposed him in battle ; no one after the battle of Cannae pitched his camp against him in the open (level) ground (in the plain).

### Notes

*Vallum* : the Romans made their camps in the form of a square with a ditch on every side, and behind the ditch a rampart of earth topped by a palisade (*vallum*).

*Dictator* : in times of difficulty the Romans, who usually were governed by two magistrates called consuls, used to appoint a supreme official called dictator, who had under him, but in this case equal to him, a master of the horse—that is, commander of the cavalry.

### Passage No. 10

Hence, though unsubdued, having been recalled to defend his native land, he waged war against Publius Scipio, son of that Scipio whom he himself, first at the Rhône, a second time at the Po, a third time at the Trebia, had routed. With this man, in the present exhaustion of his country's resources, he desired meanwhile to make peace, that afterwards when stronger he might engage him. He came to a parley : the terms

were not agreed on. Within a few days after that action he joined battle with him at Zama. He was routed and, wonderful to relate, within two days and two nights came to Hadrumetum, which is about 300 miles from Zama. During this retreat (flight) the Numidians, who had left the battle at the same time with him, set an ambushade for him. These he not only escaped, but crushed the men themselves. At Hadrumetum he gathered the remaining men from their flight (the men left from the rout) : within a few days by fresh levies he gathered together many men.

Although he had been very actively engaged in making preparations the Carthaginians ended the war with Rome. He however after that was in command of an army and performed exploits in Africa up to (the time of) the consuls Publius Sulpicius and Caius Aurelius.

### Key to Missing Words

“SIT MORA sub RAMO” cecinit quondam OMAR ad ORAM;  
“ROMA”, poeta MARO, “sit meus”, inquit “AMOR”.

“Let there be delay beneath a bough,” sang once Omar to the shore; “Let Rome”, said the poet Maro, “be my love”.

*Note.* Maro, i.e. *Vergilius Maro*.

The next couplet scans as follows :—

Dixit hōmō nōbīs illūd, quōd dixērit illē,  
Illūd idēm (vēr(ūm)ēst !) ēssē quōd istē pūtet.

## The Golden Age

Of their own will, without the compulsion of law, men practised faith and righteousness. Punishment and fear were not there; no suppliant crowd feared the face of its own judge: they were safe without a defender. Not yet had the pine tree, felled on its native hills, gone down to the flowing waves, that it might sail to see a foreign land; mortals knew no shores save their own. Not yet were towns begirt with steep moats; there were no helmets nor swords; without need of soldiery, the nations free from care passed their time in gentle ease. Without compulsion, untouched by the hoe, unwounded by any ploughshare, the earth of herself gave all things. Men gathered arbutus berries and mountain strawberries, wild cherries and blackberries clinging to the harsh brambles, and acorns that had fallen from Jove's spreading tree. Spring was eternal: the soft west winds with their warm breath caressed the flowers that grew unsown. Anon the unploughed earth bore fruit, and the unfallowed field was yellow with the heavy ears of corn; rivers of milk flowed there, and there rivers of nectar, and the yellow honey dripped from the green ilex.

## Notes

*natos sine semine flores*: literally, flowers born without seed.  
*mella*: The ancients believed that honey was a kind of dew, left on the leaves and flowers and gathered up by the bees. In the Golden Age as the poets imagined it, it was so plentiful that men could gather it for themselves.

Notice the liquid music of the last line, made by the repetition of *l*—an effect which is quite lost in translation.

## The Rape of Persephone

Persephone as she was accompanied by her usual maidens wandered in her meadows with bare feet. In a shady valley there is a spot wet with much spray of water dancing down from a height. There were as many colours as nature possesses and the earth shone painted with all kinds of flowers. As soon as she saw it, "Come, my companions," she said, "and with me fill your laps with flowers." In their keenness for picking they strayed a little too far, and by chance no companion followed the mistress. Her uncle sees her and no sooner seen than he carries her off swiftly and takes her on grey steeds to his kingdom.

## Passage No. II

For during the office of these men Carthaginian ambassadors came to Rome, to return thanks to the senate and Roman people because they had made peace with them, and to give them on account of that a golden crown and at the same time to ask that their hostages might be (kept) at Fregellae and that the prisoners should be restored. To this in accordance with a decree of the senate the reply was made : their gift was pleasing and was accepted; the hostages would be (kept) in the place in which (literally in what place) they were asking, they would not send back the prisoners because (the Carthaginians) were keeping Hannibal, a most bitter enemy to the Roman name, by whose instrumentality the war had been undertaken, even now in supreme authority over their army and likewise his brother Mago. On hearing of this reply the

Carthaginians called Hannibal and Mago home. When he returned hither, he was appointed king (supreme magistrate) in the twenty-second year after he had been praetor. For as there were consuls at Rome, so at Carthage, each year two kings keeping-office-for-a-year (*annui*) used to be appointed. In that office Hannibal showed the same diligence he had shown in war (literally showed himself of equal diligence as he had been in war: *pari diligentia*, Ablative of Description).

### Passage No. 12

For he brought it to pass by means of fresh taxes, not only that there was money to be paid to the Romans in accordance with the treaty, but also money over, to be put back (*or* laid by) in the treasury. Then one year after, when Marcus Claudius and Lucius Furius were consuls, ambassadors came from Rome to Carthage. Hannibal, thinking these had been sent for the purpose of demanding his surrender, before they got audience of the senate, embarked on a ship secretly and fled to Syria to Antiochus. On this becoming known, the Carthaginians sent two ships to seize him if they could catch up with him. They confiscated his goods, razed his house to the ground, (and) adjudged him to be an exile. But Hannibal in the third year after his flight from home, when Lucius Cornelius and Quintus Minucius were consuls, with five ships, drew near to Africa in the territory of the Cyrenaeans, if perchance (in the hope that) the Carthaginians by hope and confidence in King Antiochus might be induced to join the war. He had already persuaded Antiochus to

advance with his armies into Italy. Hither he summoned his brother Mago. When the Carthaginians got to know that, they inflicted the same penalty on Mago in his absence as on his brother.

### Passage No. 13

When they, despairing of their fortunes, had weighed anchor and set sail (literally, released the ships and given the sails to the winds), Hannibal made his way to Antiochus. Concerning the fate of Mago two tales are told (a twofold memory has been handed down): (for) some have left it written that he perished by shipwreck, others by-the-hands-of his own slaves. Antiochus, however, if he had given the same obedience to Hannibal's (his) counsels in waging war as he had begun to do in undertaking it, would have contended for the Empire of the world nearer Tiber than Thermopylae. And although he (Hannibal) saw him making many foolish attempts, yet on no occasion did he desert him. He was in command of a few ships, which he had been ordered to take from Syria into Asia, and with them he engaged-in-battle against a fleet of Rhodians in the Pamphylian Sea. And although his own men were being overcome by the number of their opponents, he himself, in the wing on which he acted, was victorious. On the rout of Antiochus, fearing lest he-should be given up (to the Romans), which doubtless would have happened had he placed himself in his power (if he had made power of himself), he came to the Gortynii in Crete, to consider there whither to betake himself. Now being the most cunning of all men he

saw he would be in great danger unless he should have taken some precaution on account of the greed of the Cretans. For he was carrying with him a great amount of money concerning which he knew a report had gone abroad. Accordingly he takes (took, adopted: Historical Present) a plan of this sort.

### Passage No. 14

He fills several jars with lead, (and) covers the tops with silver and gold. These in the presence of the chiefs he places in the temple of Diana, pretending to trust his fortunes to their good faith. The chiefs being deceived he fills the brazen statues which he was carrying with him, with all his money, and casts them forth in the open space before (of) his house. The Gortynii guard the temple with great care, not so much from others as from Hannibal, to prevent him lifting (his property) and taking (it) away with him without their knowledge. So the Carthaginian, having secured his possessions and tricked all the Cretans, came to Prusias in Pontus. With him he preserved the same sentiments towards Italy (he was of the same mind), nor did he do anything else save arm the king and stir him up against the Romans. And since he saw that this prince was not strong enough in the resources of his own kingdom (was too little strong in home resources) he won over to his side all the other princes, and formed alliances with the most warlike races. The Pergamene king, Eumenes, a very great friend of the Romans, kept aloof from him, and war was waged between them both by land and sea. Therefore Hannibal was the more

eager for his overthrow. (By which Hannibal was more desirous for him to be overwhelmed.)

### Passage No. 15

But both on land and sea Eumenes was stronger by reason of his alliance with Rome. Hannibal thought if he had removed him, all that was left (all other things) would be easier for himself. For slaying this man he entered on the following plan. In a few days there was likely to be a naval battle (they were about to contend with the fleet). He was at a disadvantage in the number of his ships. He must fight with cunning since he was not equal in arms. He ordered as many poisonous serpents as possible to be gathered alive and to be put into earthenware vessels. When he had got together a great number of these, on the very day on which he intended to fight the naval battle, he calls together the sailors and enjoins on them to make their attack on the ship alone (*unam*) of Eumenes the king, (and) to consider it sufficient merely to defend themselves from the rest. They would easily attain that end by the great number of the serpents. He would see, he said, that they knew in what ship the king was sailing. If they either took or slew him, he promised they would be given a large reward. The soldiers having been thus exhorted, the fleet on both sides was led into battle. On their line of battle being arranged, before the signal for fight was given, Hannibal, to disclose to his men the position of Eumenes, sends a messenger in a small-boat with a herald's staff.

## Passage No. 16

When he came to the enemy's ships, and showing the letter, asserted that he was seeking the king, he was at once conducted to Eumenes, because no one doubted but that he had some message about peace (something had been written concerning peace). The letter-bearer, having shown the general's ship to his own men, betook himself to the same place whence he had come. But Eumenes, on opening the letter found nothing in it save mocking remarks (what pertained to making a fool of him), and although he marvelled what the cause of this might be without finding (nor did he find), yet he did not hesitate to join battle forthwith. In this attack (attack of these men) the Bithynians, by reason of Hannibal's injunction, attack the ship of Eumenes in-a-body (*universi*). Since the king could not bear up against the force of these, he seeks safety in flight, which he would not have secured had he not retreated within the lines of his own troops (within his own forces), who had been drawn up on the neighbouring shore. Since the remaining Pergamene ships were pressing their opponents too severely, suddenly the earthenware vessels, of which we have made mention above, began to be hurled upon them.

## Passage No. 17

The discharge of these (which having been thrown) at first roused laughter among the combatants, nor could it be seen why that was being done (nor could the purpose of this be understood). However, after they

saw their ships filled with serpents, terrified by the strange circumstance, since they could not see what most especially to avoid, they turned their sterns round and betook themselves to the quarters of the fleet (to their own naval camps). Thus by his wisdom, Hannibal overcame the arms of the Pergamenes; not then only, but on many another occasion on land (with land forces) he routed his opponents with equal skill. While these things were going on in Asia, the ambassadors of Prusias happened to be dining in the house of (*apud*) Titus Quintius Flaminius, an ex-consul at Rome, and there, mention having been made of Hannibal, one of them happened to say that he was in the realm of Prusias. On the next day Flaminius laid that information before the senate. The senators, since they thought that they would never be free from secret plots while Hannibal was alive, sent ambassadors to Bithynia, among them Flaminius, to ask the king not to keep with him their greatest enemy and (but) to surrender him to them. Prusias dared not say no to these: he made the following refusal (saying), let them not ask that to be done by him which was against the rights of hospitality. Let them seize him themselves, if they could: they would easily find out where he was. (*Note.*—The direct words of Prusias were: "Ask not that to be done by me which is against the rights of hospitality. Seize him yourselves if you can. You will easily find the place where he is." Note the changes on turning it into *Oratio Obliqua*.)

## Passage No. 18

For Hannibal stayed in one place in a fort which had been given to him by the king as a gift, and had built it in such a way that he had outlets in all parts of the building, fearing doubtless lest that might actually occur which came to pass. When the envoys of the Romans had come hither and had surrounded his house in great numbers (with a crowd), a boy looking forth from the door told Hannibal that an unusual number of armed men were in sight. He ordered him to go round all the doors of the dwelling and bring word quickly to him whether it was beset in the same manner on all sides. When the boy had quickly brought back word what was the state of the case (literally, what was), and had shown that all the outlets were seized, he felt that that had not been done by chance, but that it was himself they were seeking and that he should no longer live. That he might not lay his life down at the bidding of another, mindful of his former glorious deeds (virtues), he took the poison which he always had been accustomed to have with him. So one of the most valiant of men (literally, a very brave man), after the accomplishment of many and manifold labours, passed away in his seventieth year.

## Passage No. 19

Of all these, by far the most civilised are those that inhabit Kent, which is entirely a maritime district, and there they do not differ much from Gallic custom. Those who live further inland for the most part do not

sow corn, but live on milk and flesh, and are clad in skins. All the Britons, indeed, dye themselves with woad, which produces a blue tint, and they are all the more horrible in appearance when in battle; they wear their hair long, and every part of the body shaved except the head and upper lip. Wives are held in common between ten or twelve of them, brothers chiefly joining with brothers, and parents with children; but the children that are born from among them are counted as the children of those to whom each maiden had first been married.

### Passage No. 20

He ate very little food—for I would not pass over even these details—and plain food for the most part. He especially liked bread, very small fish, cheese made (pressed) by hand, and green figs. He would eat, even before dinner at whatever time and place he felt hungry (lit., at which his stomach desired). Here are his own words from his letters: "We ate dates in my carriage." And again: "While returning home in my litter from the palace, I ate an ounce of bread, and a few berries from a cluster of hard grapes." And again: "Not even a Jew, my Tiberius, observes the fast on the sabbath as carefully as I have observed it to-day; for not until after the first hour of the night, while in my bath, I chewed two mouthfuls, before I began to be anointed." Because of this carelessness, sometimes, before the banquet was begun or after it was over, he used to dine alone, since he touched nothing while the banquet was in progress.

## Notes

Although it is easy to see the meaning of this passage, it has to be translated rather freely to make the meaning clear in English. Thus, in the first sentence, we must repeat "food" after the parenthesis, though in Latin the meaning is made clear by the inflections. Again, in translating the clause beginning *qui in balneo* we must change the order so as to emphasise the fact that he had not eaten before the first hour of the night. *Omiserim*: the future perfect tense, literally, "I will not have passed over . . ."

*Mi Tiberi*: both words are in the vocative case. *Filius* and the names of men ending in *-ius* have the ending *-i* in the vocative. The voc. masc. sing. of *meus* is always *mi*.

Tiberius was the son-in-law of Augustus, and succeeded him as Emperor.

## Key to Magic Squares

1.					2.					3.				
1.	A	Q	U	A	1.	L	U	N	A	1.	A	P	E	R
2.	Q	U	I	D	2.	U	X	O	R	2.	P	O	N	O
3.	V	I	T	A	3.	N	O	T	A	3.	E	N	I	M
4.	A	D	A	M	4.	A	R	A	T	4.	R	O	M	A

KEY TO THE LATIN-INTO-ENGLISH EXERCISES AND  
LATIN QUOTATIONS

## Exercise I (a)

1. The friendship of the inhabitants of Spain. 2. The inhabitants of Italy. 3. To (or with) the inhabitants of Italy (*incolis* being dative or ablative). 4. The boldness of the sailor. 5. By the wrath of the sailors. 6. To (or by, with or from) the islands of Italy (*insulis* may be either dative or ablative). 7. The islands of Spain (*insulas* is accusative case). 8. The shores (or, of the shore) of Spain.

## Exercise 2 (a)

1. Barca is stirring up the inhabitants of Spain.
2. At first he was asking for the friendship of the inhabitants.
3. You (plur.) often overcame (*or* used-to-overcome) the inhabitants of this land.
4. Italy now you do not love, nor used you to love it.
5. With the inhabitants of the island you are fighting, and you are blazing with boldness and anger.
6. We were fighting in the island (of) Sicily (note the apposition, putting the two nouns in the same case where we use *of* and *genitive*), but the inhabitants refused (were refusing) their friendship.
7. You (plur.) are asking for friendship and are obtaining it.
8. Now we are hoping-for victory.

Note the different ways of translating the Present and Imperfect tense in Latin :—

Present : He loves, is loving, does love, etc.

Imperfect : He loved, was-loving, used-to-love, tried-to-love.

Note that “you” in English is sometimes singular, sometimes plural. Latin always distinguishes them :—

*Amabas* : you were loving (singular), strictly *thou*.

*Amabatis* : you were loving (plural).

## Some Roman Sayings

1. Life is not to live, but to live well.
2. I do not count the hours, unless serene.
3. He gives twice, who gives quickly.
4. While I breathe, I hope (*i.e.*, While there's life, there's hope).
5. To work is to pray.

## Exercise 3 (a)

1. The boy used to love a goat. 2. The masters used to love the sons of Philip. 3. You were stirring up the horses of Philip. 4. Philip was stirring up the minds of his sons. 5. The horses of Philip (Philip's horses) are in the fields. 6. *His* sons give (*or* are giving) gifts to Philip. 7. We are giving gifts to the sons of Philip (*or* to Philip's sons). 8. Where are the sons of Philip (*or* Philip's sons) with the horses?

## An Epigram from Martial

Tongilianus has a nose. I know—I don't deny it.  
But now! Tongilianus has nothing but a nose.

## Exercise 4 (a)

1. Thrice with the Carthaginians did ye fight, O Romans. 2. At the first we fought in Italy with the Romans. 3. By the aid of the winds you (singular) will conquer the Romans. 4. At last they have overcome (overcame) their opponents. 5. O Carthaginians, ye will no longer hope for victory and ye will refuse to renew the war. 6. We shall ask and obtain the friendship of our opponents. 7. Accordingly thereafter (after that) the Carthaginians won the friendship of the Romans. 8. A Roman fought (*or* has fought) with a Gaul.

## Exercise 5 (a)

1. The leaves and boughs of the dark cypress in my garden are dear to me. 2. The cypress is full-of-shade.

3. The horse of the son of Philip was always very beautiful.
4. Sicily is a large and beautiful island.
5. The cypresses of Sicily are gloomy (dark) and rough.
6. The Carthaginians were wretched while they were looking at this.
7. Great sorrow seems to be (*or* there seems to be great sorrow) in their hearts (minds).
8. During many years I have fought with the Romans and I shall always fight.

### *Revision of Vocabulary:*

*Ira; nauta; supero; nego; equus; auxilium; ventus; folium; specto.*

### Latin Phrases

1. Jealousy is blind.
2. The written word remains.
3. It is a human thing (*i.e.*, it is human) to err.

### Dyed Hair

Your beard is white, your hair black. You can't dye your beard—this is the reason—and you can your hair, Olus.

### Exercise 6 (a)

1. A great number of young men had attacked this place (*or* position).
2. If the young men attack (will have attacked) this place the Romans will renew the war.
3. When we have estranged (shall have estranged) Africa from the Carthaginians we shall attack Spain.
4. After ye have extended your empire ye will preserve it with great stubbornness (*magna pertinacia*, an

ablative of manner). 5. We had preserved the Romans when they were in great danger. 6. You (ye) had hesitated to approve of the design of the Carthaginians. 7. After they conquer the Gauls they will extend their empire to Spain (to the Spaniards). 8. They had refused to attack the Romans because they had won their friendship. 9. If I arm the inhabitants of this island they will fight. 10. In this place the Carthaginians had fought with the Romans for many years.

Throughout this exercise note carefully the differences in tense in Latin and English. In sentence 1 note the order *magnus adolescentulorum numerus*, and copy it in similar phrases. Latin likes to sandwich, as it were, its genitive between the noun that governs it and the adjective with this noun. It sometimes also, if the genitive has an adjective with it, puts the governing noun between them, thus—*magnae vir sapientiae*, a man of great wisdom. Note that genitives in Latin are usually governed by nouns; and when you come across one, look for the noun which governs it. Be on the watch for verbs like *dubito* and *recuso*, which are followed by a Present Infinitive in Latin; the English Infinitive is often not translated by an Infinitive in Latin. A list of these verbs will be given later. In Sentence 7 note that often where we say *to Spain* or some similar phrase, Latin talks of the people rather than of the country, and says *to the Spaniards*, etc.

### Exercise 7 (a)

1. It is the duty of the Romans to extend the bounds of their empire. 2. Hamilcar, a man of the greatest

(utmost) boldness, was ablaze with the desire (lust) for war. 3. We were pondering in mind to renew the war (*better English*: we were pondering on (thinking of) the renewal of the war). 4. With horses, arms, men and money we shall enrich all Africa. 5. In winter there are dark clouds in the sky. 6. The Romans conquered the fleet of the Carthaginians at the islands. 7. The Roman people surpasses all-other races in valour (*virtute*, Ablative of Respect—of thing in which). 8. It is the duty of a chief (*or* it is incumbent upon a chief) to rule his people (Latin says simply "it is of"). 9. The King of the Britons, a man of great wisdom, often used to fight (was fighting) with the Romans. 10. If they make peace they will preserve their ships.

In sentence 4, note that Latin omits all the conjunctions. If you had put in any you would have required to put in all, thus: *Equis et armis et viris et pecunia*. English only puts in, as a rule, the last conjunction.

### Latin Phrases

1. Art for art's sake.
2. Art is to conceal art.
3. For the sake of honour.
4. In place of a parent.
5. I am a man, and nothing human is foreign to me (*i.e.*, outside my interests).
6. (There are) as many opinions as there are men.

### Live To-day!

It is not wise (lit., of a wise man), believe me, to say "I will live". Life to-morrow is too late. Live to-day!

## Exercise 8 (a)

1. Hamilcar, by surname Barca, with a large fleet sailed to Italy. 2. Both by land and by sea the Romans conquered the Carthaginians. 3. For it is not in-keeping-with his valour to ask for peace. 4. They were ratifying the alliance with a treaty. 5. The Carthaginians have broken (*or* broke) the treaties. 6. They are bringing (they bring) great gifts to Caesar *in* Rome. 7. We sailed from Malta to Rome with great difficulty. 8. Man is an animal with forethought (literally, is a prudent animal). 9. Of all animals man is the most prudent. 10. The iron from the spear was in his body (*better*, the iron head of the spear was in his body).

In sentence 1 note the order, *magna cum classe*—adjective, preposition, noun.

In sentence 6 note that English says *to Caesar in Rome*, Latin *to Rome to Caesar*, putting the place first. Watch this carefully in future sentences. You should be always parsing to yourself in doing these sentences, asking yourself what cases the nouns are in, why the verbs are plural or singular, why they are Perfect or Future tense. Soon this will keep you from making careless mistakes.

## Latin Phrases

1. From words to blows.
2. What times ! what customs !
3. On the spur of the moment.
4. A healthy mind in a healthy body.

## An Anonymous Epitaph

5. Bathing, drinking, love-making corrupt our bodies ; but they make life worth while—bathing, drinking, love-making.

## Exercise 9 (a)

1. At Zama, however, Scipio conquered Hannibal. 2. At Syracuse, indeed, Cicero lived (stayed) for one year. 3. Caesar attacked a large number of the enemy. 4. At Carthage we were pondering on war. 5. Caesar surpassed (used to surpass) all men in bravery. 6. In Africa there are many large wild beasts. 7. At Athens, the city of the Athenians, there are many beautiful temples. 8. In this way Hannibal won the friendship of a large State. 9. Many men are ablaze with the desire for money. 10. It is not in accordance with my custom to stay long at Cumae.

## Latin Sayings

1. Beneath one's dignity.
2. They make a wilderness and call it peace.
3. To accept a kindness is to sell (one's) freedom.
4. Truth is great and will prevail.

5. *False teeth.*

Thais has black teeth, Laecania snow-white ones. What is the reason? The latter has bought ones, the former her own.

## Exercise 10 (a)

1. We indeed put the enemy to flight while they were arming themselves (literally, The enemy indeed arming themselves we put to flight *or* have put to flight).  
 2. For already he had conquered all his enemies.  
 3. Then on the next day a huge multitude of the enemy began-to-attack Caesar. 4. For we always value the prudent man at a very great price. 5. Scipio, too, loved (was loving *or* used to love) his wife with a passionate (keen) love. 6. Ye will soon with your fiery steeds attack and rout the Carthaginians. 7. The Romans used-to-value Cato at a great price, Caesar at a greater. 8. For Hamilcar not only routed the enemy from the walls of Carthage, but also got together (prepared) a huge amount (supply) of money. 9. Then the soldiers were estimating very highly (at a very great price) all the plans of their leader. 10. Caesar was giving huge rewards to his brave soldiers.

*Revision of Vocabulary :*

*Conservo* ; *imperium* ; *propago* ; *vir* ; *cupiditas* ; *populus* ; *corpus*, gen. *corporis* ; *amor* ; *fama* ; *plus*, gen. *pluris* ; *omnibus*, dative plural of *omnis*, now shortened so that only the ending remains.

*Note.*—*Omnibus* is a good modern example of direct borrowing from Latin to supply a special need. It means "a conveyance for all", as opposed to a carriage.

## Latin Phrases and Extracts

1. Fortune favours the brave (literally, is favourable to).
2. A marvellous year.

3. Love conquers all things.
4. But meanwhile time flies, time the irrecoverable.
5. The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love.
6. Art (is) long, life (is) short.

7. *You are too much a poet.*

You read to me both when-I-am-standing and you read to me when-I-am-sitting. You read to me when I run and when I lie down. I escape to the baths. You make a noise in my ear. I seek the swimming-pool. You don't let me swim. I hasten to dinner. You detain me as I go. I arrive at dinner. You drive me away as I eat. Tired I go to sleep. You wake me up as I lie down. (Though) you are a just man, good and innocent, you are a terror (literally, you are feared).

Exercise 11 (a)

1. Accordingly the Carthaginians with a large army sailed to Italy to attack the Romans (that they might attack). 2. At daybreak the cavalry put to flight a large band of the Carthaginians. 3. The citizens after that will get ready three armies *that* the enemy may *not* attack the city. 4. Meanwhile he was stirring up the Gauls to seize (that they might seize) the defile by night. 5. With all races the Romans fought (*secondary time*), or have fought (*primary time*). 6. The horns of the goats are very large and strong. 7. Hannibal and his officers on the next day dined at home. 8. In the third month therefore we shall sail to Rome from home.

9. Accordingly he has armed himself to preserve his house. 10. For you (*plural*) had approved of this plan that you might avoid a disaster.

### Inscription Outside Theatre

Circus full,  
Doors shut,  
Great noise !

### One Author to Another

Why do I not send you my books, Pontilianus?  
Lest you should send me yours, Pontilianus.

### Motto

That all may be one.

### Exercise 12 (a)

1. Then great were your hopes, sad your thoughts (literally, you were hoping great things, thinking sad things). 2. Good men and good women love virtue, wisdom and good faith. 3. Accordingly when I had overcome the first line, I attacked the second. 4. To-day without a doubt they will rout the line of battle of the enemy. 5. Since therefore the Romans were standing in line of battle we hesitated to fight. 6. When (since) the Gauls had conquered the Roman legions the city of Rome (*Latin*, the city Rome) was in great peril. 7. For we have sailed (*or* we sailed) to Rome with the greatest hope. 8. When we had made many prayers to the gods, he armed his men (literally, when he had prayed the gods many things). 9. Hannibal, on the other hand, with the greatest good faith was preserving the peace.

Note in sentence 2 the omission of all the conjunctions in Latin. You could have inserted them all—*virtutem et sapientiam et fidem*.

In sentence 6 note the apposition *urbs Roma*. Latin never says *urbs Romae*.

### Two Famous Lines

1. Through its ancient customs and men stands (firm) the Roman State.
2. There are tears of (or "for") things, and mortal (things) touch the heart.

### Phrases

1. Into the midst of things.
2. Soon (it will be) night; (go) to the matter at hand.
3. The safety of the State is the supreme law.

### Exercise 13 (a)

1. When however Hannibal seizes (shall have seized) that city, we shall surrender. 2. He had sailed to Rome to sacrifice a victim to Jupiter most high and holy (Jupiter best, greatest). 3. After the seizure of the city ye will explore the territory. 4. That deed at first stirred up laughter in the spectators (was stirring up laughter for those looking). 5. Then (Next) they will attack the army stationed on the shore. 6. Being about-to-attack those bands of the enemy, he has prepared large forces. 7. The Romans had suddenly routed the enemy when on-the-point-of-making a secret attack on the camp (literally, about-to-attack the camp

secretly). 8. We had sailed to Africa that we might recover the estranged towns. 9. They are about-to-behold that conquered army. 10. How many out of those large armies were about to behold their country (fatherland) again?

### Phrases

1. That is.
2. Peace with you.
3. About to die, I salute you.
4. Not for me, not for you, but for us.

### Latin Extracts

1. Captured Greece took captive her fierce conqueror (*i.e.*, Rome).

2. Difficult, easy, pleasant, bitter, you are at the same time (literally, the same man). I can live neither with you nor without you.

### *Lesson XIII : Exercise on Grammar :*

Moniturus, -a, -um; recturus, -a, -um; auditurus, -a, -um.

Monitus, -a, -um; rectus, -a, -um; auditus, -a, -um.

### Exercise 14 (a)

1. We have and always shall have a great supply of money. 2. Now they are conquering and always will conquer all races. 3. I shall lead a large army into Spain. 4. They will see and conquer the Romans on

the third day. 5. Before his arrival they were carrying on things (affairs) badly by land and sea. 6. When Hamilcar is waging war he never conquers the enemy. 7. But at the last they come almost to despair (*or* they are almost reduced to despair). 8. He holds the strongest towns of Africa beneath his sway (within his power). 9. But Hamilcar with favourable fortune (that is, with the help of fortune) carries out great exploits (things). 10. The undying hatred of Hamilcar for the Romans will stir up the second Punic war.

### Latin Phrases

1. God being willing.
2. (*literally*) A change having been turned.
3. A brave man is he who conquers himself.
4. A learned man always has wealth in himself.

### Exercise 15 (a)

1. Hamilcar thinks himself to be about to make an end of this war (*better English*, Hamilcar thinks he will make an end of this war). 2. This man thinks that man to be making an end of these wars (*better*, This man thinks that man is making an end of these wars). 3. This woman thinks that man to have done this (*better*, This woman thinks that man has done this). 4. If this man refuses (shall have refused) to make an end of this war we shall retire from Sicily. 5. We shall come to Africa to slay this man and to destroy Carthage (note the Supine after verb of motion). 6. The Vettones slew him while fighting in battle. 7. The

bystanders will say this is a brave man. 8. They say they will retire from Sicily at dawn. 9. On-the-point-of-departing from Sicily, ye are making peace with this king. 10. To-morrow they will come to Rome.

Note that in sentence 2 *eum* denotes a different person from *hic*, and that in sentence 4 *se* denotes the same person as *hic*. Always be on the look-out for this distinction.

### Revision Vocabulary :

*manu*, abl. of *manus* (also from *scriptum*, having been written, past participle of *scribo*, write), *i.e.*, having been written by hand; *initium*; *castra*; *factum*, past participle of *facio*; *recupero*; *bellum*, *gero*; *vinco*; *deletum*, past participle of *deleo*; *male*, *factum*.

*Note* : The Latin *castra*, in the form, *-caster*, *-chester*, *-cester*, appears in the names of many English towns, *e.g.*, Winchester, Doncaster, Leicester, etc. Chester means simply "The Camp". From this we can tell that a town was once occupied by the Romans, or by Britons who had adopted Roman language and culture.

### I Do Not Love You

I do not love you, Sabidius, nor can I say why.  
This only can I say : I do not love you.

### The Primrose Way

Easy is the descent to Avernus. Night and day the door of black Dis lies open, but to recall your step and return to the upper air, this is labour.

## Exercise 16 (a)

1. We ourselves have said they will not make an end of the war (*or*, We ourselves said they would not make an end of the war. The actual words were, "We shall not make an end of the war"). 2. Hannibal himself had said he alone had made an end of this war. (The actual words of Hannibal were, "I alone have made an end of this war".) 3. If you say they will make an end of the war, they will sail to Carthage at daybreak. 4. You yourselves thought these had returned home with great disgrace. (The thought in the mind was, "These have returned home with great disgrace".) 5. Those who come to Corinth look at the statues. 6. They themselves said that they alone had removed the enemy from the walls of Carthage. (The actual words were, "We alone have removed the enemy from the walls of Carthage".) 7. Neither had said that he was slaying the captives. (The actual words of which you deny the saying were, "He is slaying the captives".) 8. The one thought they were saying these things; the other denied it. (Note *alter . . . alter*, the one . . . the other (of two). The actual thought was, "They are saying these things".) 9. You had seen him whom Catulus defeated at the Aegates islands. 10. Which of the two said Caesar had given provinces to them only? (The actual words were, "Caesar gave or has given provinces to them only".)

Remember the parsing of the words in each sentence. Do not pass on till you have satisfied yourself as to the case of the nouns, number and tense of the verbs, and so on.

## Latin Phrases

1. Second to none.
2. By the deed itself.
3. Those who cross the sea change their sky, not their minds.
4. *Writ on wind and water.*

My woman says that she prefers to marry no one rather than me, not if Jupiter himself were to court her. So she says. But what a woman says to her passionate lover ought to be written in wind and running water.

## Exercise 17 (a)

1. We are attacking Rome with such (so great) boldness that ye have no hope of safety. 2. He had defended Eryx so boldly that Marcellus said (was saying) he (Marcellus) would never take it. 3. Ye are defending that city of yours in such a way that we have no hope of victory. 4. So bold were they that they were saying they would not hand over the city. 5. So badly are the Carthaginians waging war that they are losing the towns of all Africa. 6. The bravery of that race was so great that they always used-to-conquer their opponents. 7. So wise was he that he perceived (was perceiving) these things were false. 8. So serious (so great) an internal war has blazed out in Africa that ye are now losing, O Carthaginians, all your towns. 9. Neither is so bold as to fight with him (that man); literally, Neither is so bold that he may fight with him. 10. We said that now at last they had lost the empire of all Africa.

## Night

On they went darkly beneath the lonely night in the gloom, through the empty halls of Dis and his ghostly kingdom. Just as when under the grudging light of an inconstant moon lies away in the forest, when Jupiter has hidden the sky in shade and black night has robbed the world of its colours.

## Exercise 18 (a)

1. At that time so greatly were we afraid that we sought help from the Romans and obtained it. 2. When the Carthaginians had lost everything in Sicily they made peace. 3. They were defending Eryx with such great bravery that the Romans despaired of victory. 4. When (since), O Romans, you had resolved to make an end of the war you entrusted the business to Regulus. 5. He was so fired with the desire for war (for making war) that he refused to leave Sicily (to depart from Sicily). 6. Some were ablaze with zeal for fighting (with zeal of fighting), others for retreating (retiring). 7. Since (when) they knew these things useless for living well (for a good life) they cast them away. (There is an *esse* understood after *inutilia*.) 8. So many mercenaries have revolted that the Carthaginians are in despair. 9. You (plural) are imparting to others the eagerness (desire) for warring (war). 10. By sparing the lives of others ye will win love and friendship.

(Note Latin says "by sparing the life"; *vita* is never used in the plural in this sense.)

## Ennius

One man by delaying restored to us our fortunes (literally, "the thing").

## A Proverb

By doing nothing men learn to act wickedly.

## A Sparrow

The sparrow of my lady is dead. The sparrow, my lady's pet, whom she loved more than her own eyes. For he was honey-sweet and knew his mistress as well as a girl knows her mother. Nor would he move from her lap, but hopping now here, now there, would always chirp to his mistress alone. Now he goes along the dark road to that place whence they say no one returns. O cruel deed! Ah, poor little bird! It's all because of you that my lady's eyes are swollen and red with weeping. (*Tua opera*—lit., "by your doing".)

## Exercise 19 (a)

1. When (since) we were in Sicily he departed from the city. 2. They were a long time at Athens for the purpose of seeing the statues. 3. When Caesar is at Rome he will preserve the laws (the future *erit* is used because the principal verb is future). 4. Then they were making haste that they might be at Rome on that day. 5. He, while fighting, was slain by a Gaul of

huge frame. 6. Those captives after the battle of Cannae had been slain by Hannibal. 7. Then indeed we shall retire from Greece, when we have been conquered (shall have been conquered) by the Romans. 8. If the Carthaginians are conquered in this battle, they will be in great danger (note the tense, shall have been conquered). 9. After subduing the most warlike nations he was slain on a journey by a slave (literally, after the most warlike nations having been subdued). 10. The woman was betrayed by a slave to whom she had given many gifts.

### Exercise 20 (a)

1. We so defended Eryx that the war seemed not to have been waged in that place (*esse* could have been omitted). 2. Such great wars then blazed forth that these cities were almost being destroyed. 3. When a hundred thousand of mercenaries had been formed (made) he removed them from the walls of Carthage. 4. That city was being besieged by a very large number of barbarians. 5. So bravely did they fight that the enemy were being driven out. 6. Shut in by the narrowness of the place (places) the women were being slain (were perishing) by hunger and disease. 7. Hannibal was at Rome, not the Romans at Carthage. 8. Before the siege of the city by the Spaniards a great number of the Carthaginians were slain. 9. They had been wise, brave and warlike, sufficiently skilled in all things. 10. By those woes the women were so terrified that they sought help.

## A Night Scene from Virgil

It was night, and over the earth weary creatures were enjoying peaceful sleep. The woods and the wild seas had sunk to rest. It was the time when the stars roll midway in their gliding path, when all the land is silent, and beasts and gay birds, both those that haunt far and wide the liquid lakes, and those that dwell in the thorny country bushes (literally, country, rough with thickets) are couched in sleep under the silent night. These smooth their cares and hearts that forgot their labours.

*Revision of Vocabulary :*

*inspectum*, past participle of *inspicio* ; *patria* ; *provincia* ; *ferox* ; *intellectus*, past participle of *intellego* ; *abjectus*, past participle of *abjicio* ; *perditus*, past participle of *perdo* ; *itineris*, gen. of *iter* ; *expulsus*, past participle of *expello* ; *vexo*.

## Exercise 21 (a)

1. Urbs a militibus obsidetur. 2. Rosae servis a femina datae sunt. 3. Antonius a Cleopatra maxime amabatur. 4. Castra aggeribus contra hostes munientur. 5. Barbari puellas ceperunt. 6. Iste imperator omnia in Hispania iam amisit.

## Latin Phrases

1. There is no arguing about taste (lit., "It must not be argued about tastes".)
2. That which had to be proved.

3. That which had to be done.
4. Carthage must be destroyed.
5. Never despair !
6. Now we must drink, now the earth must be trodden with a free foot.
7. Whatever shall be, every fortune must be overcome by bearing it.

### Tacitus

A climate most foul with rain and cloud.

### A Female Bluebeard

Wicked Chloe inscribed on the tombs of her seven husbands "Chloe did this". What could be plainer? (*Chloe fecit* is deliberately ambiguous. It means "built this tomb" as well as "caused the death of her husbands".)

### Catullus on Cicero

Most eloquent of the descendants of Romulus, all who are and all who have been, Marcus Tullius, and all who shall be hereafter in other years—to you, Catullus pays his greatest thanks, Catullus the worst of all poets, as much the worst poet of all as you are of all the best advocate.

### Books

You demand that I present you, Tucca, with my books. I will not do it. For you wish to sell them, not to read them.

## Quotations

1. A wise man will rule his mind, a fool will be a slave to it.
2. Time must be obeyed.
3. The conquering cause pleased the gods, but the conquered cause pleased Cato.

## From the Prayer Book

1. Sing to the Lord.
2. Bless-ye, all ye works.
3. Come let us sing unto the Lord.

## Wren's Epitaph

If you want my memorial, look around.

## A Drunkard's Promises

You promise everything, when you have drunk the whole night long. In the morning you make good no promise. Pollio, drink in the morning !

## A Humble Invitation

Dare, my guest, to despise wealth, count yourself worthy of a god, and come not harsh to my poverty.

## May She Meet the Wife !

Lycoris buried all the women friends she had, Fabianus.

May she become a friend of my wife !

## Latin Phrases

2. Let the buyer beware.
3. Let him either drink or depart.
4. Though the heavens fall, let justice be done.
5. May there be no ill-omen.
6. Let arms yield to the toga.
7. While we live, let us live.
8. May he rest in peace.

## On a Rival

A certain man, dearest Julius, is bursting with envy; because Rome reads me he is bursting with envy. He is bursting with envy because in every crowd I am always pointed out with the finger; he is bursting with envy. He is bursting with envy because both Caesars gave me the right (of a father) of three sons; he is bursting with envy. He is bursting with envy because I have a pleasant bit of country near the city and a small house in town. He is bursting with envy. He is bursting with envy because I am delightful to my friends, because I am a frequent guest; he is bursting with envy. He is bursting with envy because I am loved and approved of. Let anyone whoever he is, who is bursting with envy, burst!

## Two Famous Lines

1. So many evils could superstition persuade (men to commit).
2. They can because they believe they can (*lit.*, seem to themselves to be able).

### Paula

Paula wishes to marry me ; I refuse to marry Paula ; She is an old woman. I might be willing if she were an older woman.

### Come, Live with Me and be My Love

Let us live, my Lesbia, and love, and value at one farthing all the talk of crabbed old men. Suns may set and rise again. For us when once brief light has set there remains to be slept one continuous night. Give me a thousand kisses, then a hundred, then another thousand, then a second hundred, then yet another thousand, then a hundred. Then when we have made up many thousands, we will confuse the reckoning lest we know it or lest any malicious person should be able to cast an evil eye upon us, since he knows that our kisses are so many.

### Shepherds in the Fields

There were in the same region shepherds sleeping in the fields and guarding their sheep by night. And the messenger of the Lord stood by them and the glory of the Lord shone round them and they feared with a great fear. And the messenger said to them, "Be not afraid for behold I announce to you a great joy which shall be to the whole people, because to you to-day is born a Saviour who is Christ the Lord in the city of David. And this shall be a sign to you, you shall find the infant clothed in swaddling clothes and lying in a

stable." And suddenly there was with the messenger a multitude from the heavenly host praising God and saying "Glory in the highest to God and on earth peace among men of good-will".

### Indifference

I have no great desire to wish to please you, Caesar.  
Nor to know whether you are a dark or fair man.

### To be Wroth with One we Love

I hate and I love; why I do that, perhaps you ask.  
I know not, but I feel that it is happening, and I am  
in a torment.

### A Christmas Hymn

Come, ye faithful, joyful, triumphant, come, come to  
Bethlehem. See him that is born King of angels.  
Come ye, let us adore the Lord.

The Virgin Mother brings forth God of God, light of  
light. True God born not made. Come ye, let us  
adore the Lord.

Lo! leaving their flocks, shepherds hasten summoned  
to the humble cradle. Let us hurry with glad step.  
Come ye, let us adore the Lord.

While the star leads the way the Magi, adoring  
Christ, give gold, incense, myrrh as presents. Let us  
offer our hearts to the infant Jesus. Come ye, let us  
adore the Lord.

We shall see the eternal splendour of the eternal  
father hidden in flesh. The infant God wrapped in  
rags. Come ye, let us adore the Lord.

Lo! the choir of angels now sing hymns. Let the palace of the heavenly ones now sing. Glory to God in the highest. Come ye, let us adore the Lord.

### St. Augustine

Thou hast made us for thyself, O Lord, and our heart is restless until it rests in thee.

### 'Arry

If ever 'Arry wanted to say "extras" he would say "hextras" and "hambush" for "ambush" and he hoped that he had spoken wonderfully whenever he said "hambush" with all his power. So, I expect, his mother had said, Liber, his uncle, so his grandfather and grandmother on his mother's side. When he was sent to Syria the ears of all of us had a rest. They heard the same words pronounced softly and lightly and they had no fear of such words for the future; when suddenly there arrives a horrible message that the Ionian waves ever since 'Arry went there were henceforward not Ionian but Hionian.

## KEY TO THE ENGLISH-INTO-LATIN EXERCISES

### Exercise I (b)

1. Amicitia Italiae nautarum. 2. Incolae Hispaniae. 3. Incolarum Italiae. 4. Ira nautae. 5. Victoria poetarum. 6. Insulis. 7. Nautis Hispaniae et Italiae. 8. Ora Italiae.

Remember in Latin prose the quantity of the *-a* in the ablative singular (that is, whether it is long or short) would not be marked, and only the sense would tell you which case it was.

If you wish a little more practice before going on, take the

Key now and re-translate the sentences, comparing them with the Exercises. This will give facility in recognising the cases.

You should now make sure of the vocabulary : learn it off by heart. No words in it will be repeated in the succeeding vocabularies. If you forget any you must consult the general Vocabulary at the end.

### Exercise 2 (b)

1. Hispaniae incolas armat Barca. 2. Primo incolarum amicitiam conciliabat. 3. Hujus incolas terrae superabat. 4. Italiam nunc non amat neque amabat. 5. Cum Italiae incolis bellabat atque ferocia et ira flagrabat. 6. In insula Sicilia pugnabat. 7. Italiae autem incolae Barcam superabant. 8. Tum amicitiam rogat atque impetrat. 9. Nunc iram in Italiam renovat. 10. Victoriam, O Barca, speras.

Again we should advise you to take this translation and re-translate it, comparing it with the Exercises.

### Exercise 3 (b)

1. Filios Philippi amamus. 2. Filii Philippi equos amabant. 3. Philippus filiis equos dat. 4. Ubi nunc sunt equi Philippi? 5. Sunt in agris. 6. Capri et equi sunt filiorum Philippi. 7. Cum equis et capris et filiis Philippus est in agris.

You will have noticed now that the Latin verb is almost always at the end of the sentence. An emphatic word is sometimes put there instead of it : watch carefully when this occurs. *Est* and *sunt* are rather weak words, and need not be put at the end.

The usual order is nominative, dative, accusative, verb, but of course this may be varied. You might have an adverb before the nominative or a conjunction, and you might have an adverb between the accusative and its verb. Re-translate this exercise now for further practice.

## Exercise 4 (b)

Poeni cum Romanis ter pugnauerunt. Primo in Sicilia pugnauerunt, atque ventorum auxilio Poeni Romanorum nautas saepe superaverunt. Sed tandem apud Siciliam adversarios superaverunt Romani nautae. Poeni postea non jam victoriam speraverunt atque bellum renovare recusaverunt. Tum adversariorum amicitiam rogaverunt atque impetraverunt. Itaque Poeni et Romani non jam erant adversarii.

## Exercise 5 (b)

Cara mihi est cupressus in horto meo. Folia enim sunt umbrosa. Magna et vetusta est, sed semper erat pulchra. Auctumno est pulcherrima. Postea videtur aspera et atra. Tum miser sum ubi specto; magna enim maestitia in animo mihi (*or meo*) videtur esse. Multos annos cupressum meam amavi et semper amabo.

## Exercise 6 (b)

1. Magnum Poenorum numerum in hoc loco oppugnauerunt. 2. Si hunc locum oppugnaverimus, bellum renovabunt Hispani. 3. Cum Hispaniam a Poenis abalienaveritis, Africam oppugnabitis. 4. Postquam imperium propagaverimus magna pertinacia conservabimus. 5. Romanos conservare dubitaveramus ubi magno in periculo erant. (Note the order *magno in periculo*.) 6. Consilium Barcae comprobare dubitaveram. 7. Postquam Africam superaverimus imperium *ad Hispanos* propagabimus. 8. Romanos oppugnare recusabimus, quod amicitiam conciliaverunt. 9. Ubi Hispanos armavero cum Gallis pugnabo. 10. Hoc in loco, multos (per) annos cum Philippo pugnaveramus.

## Exercise 7 (b)

1. Est imperatoris fines imperii conservare. 2. Mente agitabatis pacem renovare. 3. Africam, O Hannibal, equis et pecunia locupletavisti. 4. Auctumno coelum est pulchrum.

5. Romanorum naves Poenos apud insulas oppugnaverunt.
6. Romani, magna populus virtute, ceteras gentes gubernabant.
7. Est principis hostes superare. 8. Pacem conciliare est imperatoris.
9. Non iam navibus cum Romanis pugnabimus.
10. Ubi classem Poenorum superaverimus, pacem conciliabimus.

### Exercise 8 (b)

1. Caius, cognomine Caesar, magnis cum copiis Melitam navigavit. 2. Et mari et terra classes Romanorum (*or* Romanas) superavimus. 3. Non meae est virtutis pacem conciliare. 4. Pacem foedere confirmavimus. 5. Foedus, O Carthaginienses, violavistis. 6. Ad Caesarem Romam magnis cum donis navigamus. 7. Roma Londinium est longa navigatio (*literally is a long sailing*). 8. Animalia maris sunt maxima. 9. Homo animalia cetera virtute superat. 10. Ferrum hastilis renovabat.

Note *all animals* means *all other animals*, therefore use *ceteri*. Do not forget the extra practice to be got from re-translating these exercises in the Key. You are supposed to be doing this each time.

### Exercise 9 (b)

1. Zamae autem adversarios Romani superaverunt. 2. Multos quidem annos Pompeius Romae habitavit. 3. Prima luce magna hostium multitudo Romanos oppugnavit. 4. Carthagine Poeni bellum mente agitabant. 5. Caesar et Pompeius famae cupiditate ceteros Romanos superaverunt (*or* superabant, *denoting a state, not a single act*). 6. Athenis multae et pulchrae statuae sunt. 7. Hac ratione Hannibal civitatum amicitiam Italiae conciliaverat. 8. Annum unum parva cum natione in Africa pugnabamus. 9. Cupiditatem pecuniae virtutis amore homines superant. 10. Non est meae consuetudinis nationes bellicosas oppugnare.

## Exercise 10 (b)

1. Romani Poenos fines explorantes oppugnaverunt. 2. Jam enim omnes civitates abalienaverant. 3. Tum magna hominum multitudine hostes Caesarem oppugnaverunt. 4. Fortem autem semper pluris aestimabimus. 5. Uxores quidem amore acri amamus. 6. Acres Carthaginiensium equi mox hostes oppugnabunt et fugabunt. 7. Virtutem magni, pluris etiam pecuniam aestimavistis. 8. Non solum a muris hostes fugabimus sed etiam urbem oppugnabimus. 9. Milites fortis consilia ducis parvi aestimaverunt (*or* aestimabant). 10. Duces praemia magna fortibus militibus dant.

## Exercise 11 (b)

1. Itaque Caesar magno cum exercitu ad Britanniam navigavit ut hostes oppugnaret. 2. Prima luce equitatu hostium manum fugavimus. 3. Magistratus postea exercitum comparaverunt ne hostes urbem oppugnarent. 4. Hostes Gallos concitant ut saltum noctu occupent. 5. Exercitibus Romani gentes omnes superaverunt. 6. Cornibus capri inimicos oppugnant. 7. Postero die magistratus domi cenaverunt. 8. Caius enim Roma tertio mense navigaverat. 9. Itaque sese armant ut domos conservent. 10. Hoc consilium comprobavimus ut casum vitaremus.

## Exercise 12 (b)

1. Tum magna sperabat, cogitabat maesta. 2. Itaque cum aciem primam fugavisset, secundam oppugnavit. 3. Hodie enim haud dubie hostium aciem fugabimus. 4. Hostes in acie stabant. 5. Respublica autem magno in periculo erat cum legiones Galli fugavissent. 6. Legiones enim Romanas summa spe oppugnaverant. 7. Cum deos multa oravissent proelium renovaverunt. 8. Multa cogitabat ubi aciem Romanam spectabat. 9. Summa enim fide pacem Hannibal conciliaverat.

Be sure you are careful never to put *enim* and *autem* first in the sentence.

## Exercise 13 (b)

1. Sed cum eas gentes Romani superaverint manus dabunt.
2. Jovi optimo maximo hostias immolatum ad eam insulam noctu navigavit.
3. Post occupatum saltum agros exploraverunt.
4. Ea facta initio risum pugnantibus concitaverunt.
5. Deinde legiones in litore collocatas fugavit.
6. Itaque Romam oppugnaturus magnum exercitum comparavit.
7. Hostes castra clam oppugnatorios subito fugavit.
8. Navigavimus enim ad Africam ut urbes abalienatas recuperaremus.
9. Ubi sunt copiae superatae? Pacem rogaturae sunt.
10. Quot ex eo exercitu magno patriam rursus spectaturi sunt?

## Exercise 14 (b)

1. Multos per annos cum Romanis bellum gerebamus.
2. Tertio die hostium aciem videbimus.
3. Omnes gentes vincent et imperio suo tenebunt.
4. Copias magnas in Romanos ducitis.
5. Ante Romanorum adventum et mari et terra bellum male gerebamus.
6. Ubi bellum gerebamus semper hostes vincebamus.
7. Sed tandem prope ad desperationem pervenimus (*perveniebamus* would mean "we were coming").
8. Romam, urbem Italiae valentissimam, veniebant.
9. Magnas res secunda fortuna geremus.
10. Hannibal perpetuo odio erga Romanos exercitum in Italiam ducit.

## Exercise 15 (b)

1. Dicit hunc hujus belli finem facturum esse.
2. Dicit hos hujus belli finem facere.
3. Hi eos dicunt horum bellorum finem fecisse.
4. Si Catulus negaverit hoc bellum se compositurum esse ex Sicilia decedemus.
5. Hic bellum compositum et Carthaginem deletum ad Africam venit.
6. Vettones eum in proelio pugnantem interficient.
7. Adstantes dicunt hanc esse fortem.
8. Dicit se Roma cras decessurum esse.
9. Decessurus Sicilia pacem cum Catulo conciliavit.
10. Prima luce Romam adveniemus.

## Exercise 16 (b)

1. Catulus ipse negaverat se bellum compositurum esse (said . . . not = deny. The actual words were, "I shall not end the war"). 2. Catulus solus dixerat se ipsum bellum composuisse. (The actual words were, "I myself ended *or* have ended the war".) 3. Si Catulus dixerit se bellum compositurum esse Romam statim navigabimus. 4. Ipsi putaveramus eos solos magno cum dedecore domum redituros esse. (The thought was, "They are about-to-return".) 5. Qui Romam veniunt, aedificia pulchra inspiciunt. 6. Hannibal ipse dixit se solum hostes a muris Carthaginis removisse. (The actual words were, "I alone removed *or* have removed the enemy from the walls".) 7. Uter dixit Romanos captivos interficere? 8. Alter dixit haec ita esse; alter negavit. 9. Eum videramus qui urbes Africae (*or* in Africa) valentissimas patriae restituerat. (Note "the man who" always *eum qui*: avoid *hominem qui* in such a phrase.) 10. Neuter dixit Caesarem hanc provinciam sibi soli dedisse. (*Sibi* is used because it refers to the subject of *dixit*, the main verb. The actual words were, "Caesar gave this province to me alone".)

## Exercise 17 (b)

1. Ille Erycem ita ferociter (tanta ferocia) defendebat ut Romani nullam victoriae spem haberent. 2. Ille Erycem tanta fortitudine defendit ut Romani non putent se eum capturos esse. 3. Urbem tuam sic defendebat ut Romani nullam victoriae spem haberent. 4. Tam ferox erat (not *fuit*, because "was" denotes a state) ut negaret se urbem vestram traditurum esse. 5. Romani ita male bellum gerebant ut omnia oppida amitterent. 6. Illius fortitudo viri tanta erat ut omnes adversarios vinceret. 7. Adeo sapiens est ut intellegat haec esse falsa. 8. Tantum bellum exarsit ut Poeni oppida Africae amitterent. 9. Uter tam ferox est ut cum illo pugnet? 10. Dixit se ipsos imperium totius Africae amisisse.

In sentence 10 *eos* or *illos* might be used for *se*, if you meant that *they* did not include *He*.

## Exercise 18 (b)

1. Poeni adeo timebant ut a Romanis auxilium etiam petiverint atque impetraverint. 2. Cum, O Carthaginienses, omnia in Sicilia amisissetis pacem conciliavistis. 3. Tam ferociter (Tanta fortitudine) Erycem defendistis ut decesserimus. 4. Cum belli finem facere constituissent rem Hamilcari permiserunt. 5. Adeo bellandi studio flagrabat ut Sicilia decedere recusaverit. 6. Alii regendi studio flagrabant, alii cupiditate pecuniae. 7. Cum haec ad pugnandum inutilia cognovisset perdidit. 8. Tot mercenarii milites desciverant ut Poeni desperarent. 9. Aliis bellandi studium permittamus. 10. Parcendo aliorum bonis amorem conciliabimus.

## Exercise 19 (b)

1. Nunc quidem in Sicilia sunt multi Carthaginienses. 2. Diu Romae eramus. 3. Si Romae ero, te visum veniam. 4. Cum Romae eris (-tis) Capitolium videbis (-tis) (spectabis, -tis). 5. Festinat ut Romae illo die sit. 6. Cassius post pugnam a servo pugione interfectus est (occisus est). 7. Antonius a Cleopatra amatus erat. 8. Cum a Romanis victi erunt, ex Sicilia profecto decedent. 9. Si hoc proelio a Scipione victi erimus magno in periculo profecto erimus. 10. Cum mercenarii milites descivissent, Carthago magno in periculo erat.

## Exercise 20 (b)

1. Sic Erycem defendit ut eo loco finem belli fecerit. 2. Tantum bellum exarserat ut Carthago nunquam simili in periculo fuerit. 3. Cum centum milia armatorum facta essent, hostes oppugnare constituit. 4. Magno hostium numero Italia vexabatur. 5. Tam ferociter pugnauerunt ut urbs conservaretur (or conservata sit). 6. Locorum angustiis clausi plures fame interfecti sunt quam ferro. 7. Vos Romae fuistis, nos non in Graecia fuimus. 8. Ante urbem ab hostibus captam magnus eorum numerus interfectus est. 9. Multos

annos Corinthi fueram statuas videndi (spectandi) causa.  
 10. Adeo his malis perterriti sunt (timebant, timuerunt) ut manus dederint.

### Exercise 21 (b)

1. Res in Sicilia et mari et terra male geruntur. 2. Nullus nocendi locus hostibus dabitur. 3. E contrario, occasione data, hostes laceissentur. 4. Res in Sicilia bene gerebantur. 5. Bellum eo loco nobis gerendum est (*gerendum* is gerundive. Note the absence of the preposition *in* with *eo loco*. Remember *nobis* is Dative). 6. Ab hominibus amicis non nocendum est (*nocendum* is gerund). 7. A Sicilia nobis intra paucos dies discendum est. (Note preposition, *intra*, within, takes Accusative case.) 8. A Romanis nunquam hostibus cedendum est. 9. Eryx Carthaginiensibus (Poenis) defendendus est. 10. Sires in Sicilia male gerentur ex ea insula decedemus. (*Gerentur* is Future, not Future Perfect, because the meaning is, "If affairs shall be going on badly", not "shall have gone".) 11. Statuemus hujus belli finem facere. 12. Si classis nostra a Romanorum consule superata erit pacem conciliabimus.

### Exercise 22

1. Ego bellandi (belli) cupiditate flagrabam, tu paci servientum esse putabas. 2. Nobis haec dona dedit, illa vobis (tibi). 3. Omnium nostrum sapientissimus (es) tu, ego fortissimus. 4. Victi nobis manus dederunt. 5. Patria mea belli calamitatibus exhausta mihi carissima est. 6. Ille te sapientior est. 7. Ad sapientissimum Romanorum haec dona mittit. 8. Bellandi (belli) cupiditate acriore quam tu ego flagrabam. 9. Hoc opus omnium facillimum est, illud difficillimum. 10. Patris simillimus est; frater (ejus) matris est similior. 11. Potius, patria succumbente, peribo. 12. Dixit se maximo cum flagitio domum rediturum. 13. Postea hoc consilio pacem conciliaveramus. 14. Relictis armis ille cum suis Sicilia decessit.

Note in 12 the omission of *esse*. It might be inserted.

## Exercise 23

1. Ab eis petebat ut haec facerent (*Substantival*). 2. Ab eis petii (petivi) ut haec faciant (*Substantival*). 3. Id egerunt (egere) ut exercitum in Hispaniam mitterent (*Substantival*). 4. Id efficiemus ut duces in Hispaniam mittamur (*Substantival*). 5. Patriam multo aliter se habentem ac sperabamus cognovimus. 6. Mercenarios milites coegit ut eis in Romanos uteretur (*Final*). 7. Carthaginem ipsam oppugnavimus ut tota Africa abalienetur (*Final*). 8. Eos eo compellet ut plures fame quam ferro interituri sint (*Consecutive*). 9. Senatus decrevit ut Carthago oppugnaretur et deleteretur (*Substantival*). 10. Senatus decernit ut Carthago oppugnetur et deleatur (*Substantival*). 11. Senatus decernit ut Carthago deleatur (*Substantival*). 12. Carthaginem oppugnavit ut eam deleteret (*Final*). 13. Ab eo petivit ne se Romam mitteret (*Substantival*) (*se* referring to the subject of *petivit*. If not, *eum* or *illum*). 14. Militibus imperavit ut hostes a muris removerent (*Substantival*). 15. Militibus imperavit ut ab Italia statim decedant (*Substantival*).

## Exercise 24

1. Catulus Carthaginensibus (Poenis) imperavit ut Sicilia decederent. 2. Oppidis abalienatis subvenit. 3. Hannibali exercitus imperium invidebam. 4. Princeps largitione Carthaginensibus multa profuit. 5. Valentissima totius Africae oppida patriae restituemus. 6. Nunquam Hannibali atque Carthaginensibus serviemus. 7. Negavit se unquam Romanis servitutum esse. 8. Tantum otium in Africa (Africae) reddidit ille ut nullum bellum multis annis fuisse videatur. 9. Missus est in Hispaniam cum exercitu quo facilius causam bellandi reperiret. 10. Tecum filium novem annorum ducis. 11. Hujus viri mentionem fecit quod multa et magna gessit. 12. Terra marique hostibus resistemus. 13. Hannibal Romanis bellum perpetuum minatur. 14. In Hispaniam cum exercitu venit quo melius haec perageret. 15. Cum haec ex sententia peregisset domum profectus est.

## Exercise 25

1. Si res refectae essent bellum renovavisset. 2. Si eos virtute vicisset, manus dedissent. 3. Si Catulus se negavisset bellum compositurum, Sicilia Romani decessissent. 4. Si res reficiantur, bellum renovet. 5. Si eos virtute vicerit, manus dabunt. 6. Si eos virtute vincat manus dent. 7. Si Catulus se neget bellum esse compositurum Sicilia decedant. 8. Si Catulus negaverit se bellum compositurum Sicilia decedent. 9. Secundum bellum Poenicum perpetuo hujus odio erga Romanos maxime concitatum esse videtur. 10. Magnas res gerite, gentes bellicosissimas subigite, Africam viris et pecunia locupletate. 11. Dixit Africam equis et viris locupletatum iri. 12. Dixit se meditari bellum in Italiam inferre. 13. Dicit Africam viris pecuniaque locupletari. 14. Nono anno postquam in Hispaniam venerunt occisi sunt. 15. Inimicos vestros amate.

Note *vestros* not *tuos*, because the *your* is plural.

## Exercise 26

1. Romanos vincere (superare) poterimus. 2. Omnes gentes vincere (superare) poterant. 3. Omnes gentes virtute antecedere poteratis. 4. Inimicum tuum non potes interficere (occidere). 5. Unius virtutem devincere potueramus (devincere = *utterly subdue*). 6. Odium tuum erga Romanos deponere potueris. 7. Dicit se inimicos interficere posse. 8. Dicit se gentes cunctas (omnes) virtute antecedere posse. 9. Dicit Hannibalem omnes (*or ceteros* = *all other*) imperatores prudentia antecedere potuisse. 10. Si Hannibal hic nunc esset Italiam superaret. 11. Si Hannibal in eo proelio esset (*or fuisset, state or act*) hostes vicisset. 12. Nisi Hannibal omnes imperatores (*or duces*) prudentia antecessisset (antecederet, *had been surpassing*) non esset (*or fuisset*) omnium maximus dux. 13. Si hoc faceremus poenas gravissimas dedissemus. 14. Si hoc fecisses (fecissetis) poenas gravissimas dares (daretis). 15. Si sapiens esset non illud faceret (a state and a continuous action in the past, hence Imperfect).

## Exercise 27

1. Non dubium est quin redeat. 2. Non dubium erat quin rediret (note the Imperfect in secondary time). 3. Non fieri potest quin abeat. 4. Non fieri poterat quin abires (note the Imperfect again). 5. Nemo erat quin (putaret, crederet, existimaret) hostes abire. 6. Nemo est quin nunc urbem ineat. 7. Si Romam adibat errabat. 8. Si domum init stultus est. 9. Ego Romam ibo si Carthaginem ibit ille. (Insert pronouns because they are emphatic, signifying contrast.) 10. Si hoc facit nil boni inest (*insum, inesse*, to be in).

## Exercise 28

1. Ab eo petunt (quaerunt) num. ad se libros is laturus sit. 2. Ab eo quaerunt pecuniamne magnam secum ferat. 3. Ab eo quaerunt num secum pecuniam magnam tulerit. 4. Ab eis quaesivimus num quid pecuniae secum tulissent. 5. Ab eis quaesivimus num quid pecuniae secum ferrent. 6. Ab eis quaesivimus pecuniamne magnam secum laturi essent (note the *cum* after *se*; so with *me, te, vobis*, etc.). 7. Si equitatum omnem tecum duxeris vinces. 8. A me quaesivit num secum ad castra ire vellem ("would go" here means "I was willing to go"). 9. Hamilcar ab Hannibale quaerit velitne ad castra secum ire (*or* num ad castra iturus sit. The first sentence asks if Hannibal is willing, the second asks if he is about to go). 10. Abiit equitatum ductum (Supine after verb of motion). 11. Ab eo quaesivimus quando Romam rediturus esset. 12. Nescio quos libros secum ab Italia ferat. 13. Milites nesciebant num id publice comprobaretur. 14. Proximo triennio omnes Hispaniae gentes subegerunt Poeni (*proximus* is an irregular superlative, whose comparative is *propior*, nearer. There is no positive adjective. See Lesson XXII).

## Exercise 29

1. Tandem Pyrenaeum saltum transire inceperunt. 2. Unum ex his exercitibus in Africam mittere malebat (*ex* and ablative is more common than the genitive after an adjective

of number). 3. Hannibal effecit ut elephante ornatus ea transire possit (*ut* consecutive). 4. Apud flumen Padum cum P. Cornelio Scipione manum conserere conatus est (*manum conserere*, to knit the hands together as in wrestling). 5. Alterum exercitum in Hispania linquere debent, alterum in Italiam ducere. 6. Alterum exercitum in Hispania debebant linquere, alterum in Italiam ducere. 7. Scimus loca patefacere, itinera munire (you can omit the conjunction *et* if you please). 8. Hannibal Alpes saltu Graio transiisse videtur. 9. Alpico transitu prohibere conantes Hannibal profligavisse dicitur. 10. Hoc itinere adeo gravi morbo adfecti sunt ut dimidium exercitus interierit (*may have perished*). 11. Nesciunt utrum Hannibal Etruriam petierit necne. 12. Non possum dicere utrum Hannibal hoc velit necne. 13. Quaesivit num nollit in Hispaniam ire atque Carthagine manere mallet. 14. Ab eis quaeremus quando hoc facere malint. 15. Nobis dixisti (*or* dixisti) quae hostes voluerint.

### Exercise 30

1. In propinquis urbi montibus castra ibi habendi causa moratus est (*avoid* castrorum habendorum). 2. Romam hoc proelium pugnandi causa profectus est (*better*, causa hujus proelii pugnandi, *or* ad hoc proelium pugnandum, *Gerundive*). 3. Caium Centenium praetorem praemittere voluit ad saltum occupandum (*or* causa saltum occupandi, *or* causa saltus occupandi). 4. Magnam gloriam sibi comparavit hostes uno proelio fugando (*or* hostibus uno proelio fugandis). 5. Decemviros legibus scribendis creare maluissimus. 6. Hoc fecit ut Hannibal bellum componere velit. 7. Causa hostium circumveniendorum (*or* causa hostes circumveniendi) celeriter iter facere volebat. 8. Cum valetudine gravi premeretur lectica ferri maluit (*or* malebat). 9. In Apuliam ad consulibus obviam veniendum iter fecit (*or* causa consulibus obviam veniendi, *or* consulibus obviam ventum). 10. Nullo resistente causa urbis expugnandae (*or* causa urbis vi capiendae, *or* causa urbem expugnandi, *or* ad urbem expugnandam) Romam profectus est. 11. Quintus Fabius Maximus se ei obicere

voluit. 12. Urbis oppugnandae causa Romam proficisci nolebant (variations are possible as in sentence 10). 13. Hoc fecit ne consul urbem relinquere vellet (*or* urbe exire, decedere, discedere). 14. Romanos oppugnandi causa Capuam reversus est. 15. Consulem cum exercitu circumventum occidit.

### Exercise 31

1. Vereor ut Caesar rex fiat. 2. Verebar ut Caesar rex fieret. 3. Verebantur ne Caesar flumen transiret. 4. Verentur ne Caesar flumen transeat. 5. Caesar verebatur rex fieri. 6. Caesar veretur rex fieri. 7. Caesar veretur flumen transire. 8. Caesar verebatur flumen transire. 9. Virtutem colendo beati fiemus. 10. Non ita multis diebus hi fient consules. 11. Hanc post rem gestam callidissimus dux fiam. 12. Caesar dixit eum (illum) dolo consulem factum esse. 13. Caesar dicit se nihil (non) timere (vereri) ne Cicero consul fiat. 14. Homines fiunt callidi (*or* boni) duces militares res exercendo. 15. Ex hoc intellegi potest quantus ille dux factus sit. (Latin says "it is able to be understood", not *intellegere*.)

### Exercise 32

1. Eum miseruit (*or* miserebat), filii ducis quem apud Rhodanum fugaverat. 2. Me oportet patriam defendere domum revocatum. 3. Eum oportuit (*or* oportebat) patriam defendere domum revocatum. 4. Me iuvat tantum bellum composuisse (quod tantum bellum composui). 5. Eos iuvat quod reliquos e fuga collegerunt. 6. Romanos puduit (pudebat) quod apud Trebiam ab Hannibale superati erant (*or* superatos esse *without* quod). 7. Scio Romanos puduisse quod apud Trebiam superati sint (Subjunctive because of Oratio Obliqua). 8. Scivit Romanos poenituisse quod Carthaginem delevissent. (In the last two sentences the accusative and infinitive was also possible.) 9. Tibi licet esse consuli Romae neque exercitui praeesse. 10. Ei licuisset esse regi Carthagine si vellet. 11. Ei libebat Hadrumeti permanere (morari) reliquos ex exercitu colligenti. 12. Intererat militum jussis

Hannibalis fideliter parere: nostra (interest) Hannibalem ipsum superare. 13. Omnium interest facere ea quae recta sunt (those things which are right). 14. Dixit sibi licuisse novis dilectibus exercitum comparare. 15. Numidas poenituit Hannibali insidiatos esse (*or* quod insidiati erant). 16. Eis persuasum est ut hoc faciant. 17. Agris a Poenis nocebitur (*or* Poeni agris nocebunt). 18. Si agris a Poenis nocitum erit, Romam legatos mittemus. 19. Regi ab optimo quoque parebitur. 20. Militibus imperatum est ut ex urbe tribus diebus decederent.

### Exercise 33

1. Legati Romam veniunt qui senatui populoque Romano gratias agant (*you could say also* ut . . . agant). 2. Legati Romam venerunt qui (*or* ut) senatui populoque Romano gratias agant. 3. Legati Romam ierunt qui (*or* ut) pacem a Romanis peterent. 4. Legati Romam ibunt qui (*or* ut) pacem a Romanis petant. 5. Carthaginienses non ii sunt qui pacem faciant (*qui* Consecutive). 6. Romani non ii erant qui pacem peterent (*qui* Consecutive). 7. Ego, qui serius advenissem, non patrem meum vidi (*qui* Causal). 8. Te, cujus opera hoc bellum susceptum sit, cum imperio apud exercitum habebimus (*qui* Concessive). 9. Ii qui (*or* cum) revocati essent, domum redierunt (*qui* Causal). 10. Ii qui revocati sint domum redibunt (*qui* Causal). 11. Ab eis petierunt ut captivi Fregellis essent (*ut* Substantial). 12. Eis qui pacem secum fecissent coronam auream dederunt (*qui* Causal).

### Exercise 34

1. Cum naves solvisset et vela ventis dedisset duae naves missae sunt quae eum comprehenderent. 2. Cum naves solverit et vela ventis dederit duas naves mittemus quae eum comprehendant. 3. A servulo interfectus est priusquam epistolam (litteras) scriberet (Subjunctive because the result is prevented). 4. Servus eum interficere iussus est priusquam epistolam scribat (Subjunctive of the intention). 5. Antiocho fugato, fugit ille priusquam Romani eum comprehendere

possent (*or* potuerunt. The Subjunctive denotes that he fled to prevent the seizure; the Indicative simply connects the clauses by time). 6. Dum epistolam Romam ad matrem scribit eum servulus interfecit. (Note "to Rome to his mother", *or* Eum epistolam Romam, *etc.*, scribentem servulus interfecit.) 7. Dum sui multitudine adversariorum superabantur Hannibal eos quibuscum conflixerat fugabat. 8. Dum Carthagine Cretam iter facit eum latrones oppugnaverunt (*or* Carthagine eum Cretam iter facientem latrones oppugnaverunt). 9. Hannibal mansit donec Rhodiorum classis conflixit (*or* confingeret. The Subjunctive denotes that he waited intentionally, the Indicative simply that he waited, without any idea of intentional waiting or expectation of joining battle being expressed). 10. Consistere nolebat donec Cretam ad Gortynios veniret. 11. Dum Hannibal cum Antiocho erat, ille omnibus in proeliis superior erat. 12. Hoc sine dubio accidisset, si Romanis sui potestatem fecisset. 13. Abire constituit priusquam in magnum periculum propter avaritiam Cretensium veniret. 14. Dum Antiochus Hannibalis consilii parere volebat in bello felix (*or* superior) erat. 15. Desperatis rebus Hannibal in Syriam ad Antiochum venit.

### Exercise 35

1. Trecentas sexaginta quinque amphoras plumbo impleverant. 2. Ducentae viginti novem amphorae auro et argento impletae erant. 3. Puero tria poma dedit. 4. Dixit se ducentas naves Hannibali daturum fuisse. 5. Roma anno septingentesimo quinquagesimo tertio ante Christum natum condita est. 6. Pugna Cannensis anno ducentesimo sexto decimo ante Christum natum facta est. 7. Hannibal septuaginta annos vixit. 8. Caesar ducibus binas naves dederat. 9. Eis ducenos sestertios dabimus. 10. Darius in Europam amplius mille navibus navigavit (*amplius* has no effect on the case). 11. Ter Romani in hostes impetum fecerunt; tandem fugati sunt. 12. Vicies antehac urbem Romam vidi. 13. Hannibal ex Alpibus in Italiam cum quinque et viginta milibus hominum descendit. 14. Sedecim annos, Hannibale duce

Carthaginienses cum Romanis bellaverunt. 15. Anno ducentesimo secundo ante Christum natum apud Zamam Poenos devicerunt Romani.

### Exercise 36

1. Dixit Eumenem propter Romanorum societatem plus valere. (He said, "Eumenes has more power", *plus valet*). 2. Dixit eos conventuros esse eo die quo navale proelium facturus esset (he might be about to fight). 3. Dixit se eos vidisse qui in hoc navali prolio pugnarent (Latin says "who might be fighting"). 4. Dixit se eos vidisse qui in hoc navali proelio pugnarent (the same as sentence 3 exactly). 5. Dixit se facturum ut scirent in qua nave aurum veheretur. 6. Arbitratur si hunc removisset omnia sibi facilia fore. 7. Dixit se ducem vidisse qui tamdiu cum Romanis pugnavisset. 8. Dicit se nuntium (tabellarium) vidisse qui cum caduceo ad Eumenem missus sit. 9. Dicit eos, qui navem Eumenis oppugnant, fugari. 10. Dicit eos qui navem Eumenis oppugnaverint fugatum iri (direct form: Those who attack will be routed, *Ei qui oppugnaverint fugabuntur*). 11. Hannibal nuntium mittit priusquam signum proelii dari possit. 12. Dixit Hannibalem nuntium misisse priusquam signum proelii dari posset. 13. Dixit Hannibalem nuntium misisse priusquam signum proelii datum esset. 14. Dixit Hannibalem tabellarium misisse ut palam faceret suis quo loco rex esset. 15. Dixit se omnibus eis praecepisse ut in navem Eumenis unam concurrerent.

### Exercise 37

1. Negavit se id consecuturum esse nisi intra sua praesidia se recepisset. 2. Negavit se id consecuturum esse nisi intra praesidia sua se reciperet. 3. Negavit se id consecuturum fuisse nisi intra praesidia sua se recepisset. 4. Negavit se stultum futurum esse si id faceret. 5. Pollicitus est si illum cepissent aut interfecissent magnum eis praemium fore (*or magno eis praemio fore*). 6. Affirmavit (Dixit) si illum cepissent aut interfecissent magnum eis praemium futurum

fuisse. 7. Dixit si illum interficerent, magnum eis praemium fore. 8. Dixit nisi fuga salutem petiisset futurum fuisse ut interficeretur (this construction is used because the Latin verb has no Future Perfect Infinitive Passive). 9. Dixit eos nisi fuga salutem peterent interfectum iri. 10. Dicit nisi fuga salutem petierint eos interfectum iri (*or* fore ut ei interficiantur "it-to-be-about-to-be that they may be slain"). 11. Dicit nisi fuga salutem petiissent futurum fuisse ut interficerentur. 12. Negat eos nisi stulti fuissent illud facturos esse. 13. Etsi hujus causam mirabatur tamen proelium committere non dubitavit (*or* quominus proelium committeret). 14. Nemo dubitabat quin aliquid de pace scriptum esset (*or, more literally, quin aliquid de pace scriptum attulisset*). 15. Nave hunc in modum (*or* ita) suis declarata eodem unde egressus erat se recepit.

### Exercise 38

1. Quae jacta subito risum pugnantibus concitarunt (con-  
citarunt *contracted for* concitaverunt). 2. Adeo nova re  
perterriti sunt ut non videre possent quid potissimum vitarent.  
3. Bellum male gerere est mali ducis. 4. Etsi Antiochum  
multa stultissime conari videbant nulla in re eum deseruerunt.  
5. Cum se minus robustum domesticis opibus esse videret  
ceteros reges conciliavit. 6. Bellum acriter inter eos terra  
marique gerebatur: quo magis Hannibal cupiebat eum opprimi.  
7. Dixit se facillime inventurum esse locum ubi ille esset.  
8. Militibus imperavit ut propere ad se nuntiarent num undique  
obsessus esset (*or* obsideretur, "was being beset"). 9. Puer  
celerrime nuntiavit omnes exitus occupatos esse. 10. Poeni  
senserunt id non fortuito factum neque imperium diutius  
retinendum. 11. Ad te celeriter nuntiabo quid sit. 12. Si  
nobis imperavisses facile invenissemus ubi ille esset. 13. Vidit  
eos non fortuito venisse sed se petere. 14. Memor virtutis  
pristinæ venenum sumpsit ne vitam alieno arbitrio dimitteret.  
15. Nuntii nuntiaverunt plures praeter consuetudinem armatos  
apparere.

## NUMERALS

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.
1 Un-us, -a, -um, <i>one</i>	Prim-us, -a, -um, <i>first</i>
2 Du-o, -ae, -o, <i>two</i>	Secund-us, -a, -um ( <i>alter</i> ), <i>second</i>
3 Trēs, tria, <i>three</i>	Terti-us, -a, -um, <i>third</i>
4 Quattuor, <i>four</i> , etc.	Quart-us, -a, -um, <i>fourth</i> , etc.
5 Quinque	Quint-us, -a, -um
6 Sex	Sext-us, -a, -um
7 Septem	Septim-us, -a, -um
8 Octō	Octāv-us, -a, -um
9 Novem	Nōn-us, -a, -um
10 Decem	Decim-us, -a, -um
11 Undecim	Undecim-us, -a, -um
12 Duodecim	Duodecim-us, -a, -um
13 Trēdecim	Terti-us decim-us, etc.
14 Quattuordecim	Quart-us decim-us, etc.
15 Quindecim	Quint-us decim-us, etc.
16 Sēdecim	Sext-us decim-us, etc.
17 Septendecim	Septim-us decim-us, etc.
18 Duodēviginti	Duodēvicēs-im-us, etc.
19 Undēviginti	Undēvicēs-im-us, etc.
20 Viginti	Vicēs-im-us, etc.
30 Trīgintā	Tricēs-im-us, etc.
40 Quadrāgintā	Quadrāgēs-im-us, etc.
50 Quinquāgintā	Quinquāgēs-im-us, etc.
60 Sexāgintā	Sexāgēs-im-us, etc.
70 Septuāgintā	Septuāgēs-im-us, etc.
80 Octōgintā	Octōgēs-im-us, etc.
90 Nōnāgintā	Nōnāgēs-im-us, etc.
100 Centum	Centēs-im-us, etc.
200 Ducent-ī, -ae, -a	Ducentēs-im-us, etc.
300 Trecent-ī, -ae, -a	Trecentēs-im-us, etc.
400 Quadringent-ī, -ae, -a	Quadringentēs-im-us, etc.
500 Quingent-ī, -ae, -a	Quingentēs-im-us, etc.
600 Sescent-ī, -ae, -a	Sexcentēs-im-us, etc.
700 Septingent-ī, -ae, -a	Septingentēs-im-us, etc.
800 Octingent-ī, -ae, -a	Octingentēs-im-us, etc.
900 Nongent-ī, -ae, -a	Nongentēs-im-us, etc.
1,000 Mille	Millēs-im-us, etc.
2,000 Duo milia	Bis millēs-im-us, etc.
100,000 Centum milia	Centiēs millēs-im-us, etc.
1,000,000 Deciēs centēna milia	Deciēs centiēs millēs-im-us, etc.

## DISTRIBUTIVE.

Singul-i, -ae, -a, *one each*  
 Bin-i, -ae, -a, *two each*  
 Tern-i (trin-i), -ae, -a, *three each*  
 Quatern-i, -ae, -a, *four each, etc.*  
 Quin-i, -ae, -a  
 Sēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Septēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Octōn-i, -ae, -a  
 Novēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Dēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Undēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Duodēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Tern-i dēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Quatern-i dēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Quin-i dēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Sēn-i dēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Septēn-i dēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Duodēvicēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Undēvicēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Vicēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Tricēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Quadrāgēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Quinquāgēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Sexāgēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Septuāgēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Octōgēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Nōnāgēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Centēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Ducēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Trecēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Quadringēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Quingēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Sescēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Septingēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Octingēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Nongēn-i, -ae, -a  
 Singula milia  
 Bina milia  
 Centēna milia  
 Deciēs centēna milia

## NUMERAL ADVERBS.

Semel, *once*  
 Bis, *twice*  
 Ter, *thrice*  
 Quater, *four times, etc.*  
 Quinquies  
 Sexies  
 Septies  
 Octies  
 Novies  
 Decies  
 Undecies  
 Duodecies  
 Ter decies  
 Quater decies  
 Quinquies decies  
 Sexies decies  
 Septies decies  
 Duodēviciēs  
 Undēviciēs  
 Viciēs  
 Triciēs  
 Quadrāgiēs  
 Quinquāgiēs  
 Sexāgiēs  
 Septuāgiēs  
 Octōgiēs  
 Nōnāgiēs  
 Centiēs  
 Ducentiēs  
 Trecentiēs  
 Quadringentiēs  
 Quingentiēs  
 Sexcentiēs  
 Septingentiēs  
 Octingentiēs  
 Nongentiēs  
 Milies  
 Bis milies  
 Centiēs milies  
 Deciēs centiēs milies

## TABLES OF VERBS

The quantity or length of syllables in these tables is marked on this plan : short vowels are not marked at all; vowels which are long because they stand before two consonants are not marked; other long vowels are marked long.

Verb *Sum*, I am.

(Tenses from the Present Stems.)

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
<i>Sum</i> , I am.	<i>Sumus</i> , we are.	<i>Sim</i>	<i>Simus</i>
<i>Es</i> , thou art.	<i>Estis</i> , you are.	<i>Sis</i>	<i>Situs</i>
<i>Est</i> , he is.	<i>Sunt</i> , they are.	<i>Sit</i>	<i>Sint</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
<i>Eram</i> , I was.	<i>Erāmus</i> , we were.	<i>Es-sem</i>	<i>Essēmus</i>
<i>Erās</i> , thou wert.	<i>Erātis</i> , you were.	<i>Es-sēs</i>	<i>Essētis</i>
<i>Erat</i> , he was.	<i>Erant</i> , they were.	<i>Es-set</i>	<i>Essent</i>
<i>Future.</i>		INFINITIVE PRESENT.	
<i>Erō</i> , I shall be.	<i>Erimus</i> , we shall be.	<i>Esse.</i>	
<i>Eris</i> , thou wilt be.	<i>Eritis</i> , you will be.		
<i>Erit</i> , he will be.	<i>Erunt</i> , they will be.		
IMPERATIVE.			
<i>Es</i> , be (thou).	<i>Estō</i> , thou shalt be.		
<i>Este</i> , be (ye).	<i>Estōte</i> , ye shall be.		
	<i>Estō</i> , he shall be.		
	<i>Suntō</i> , they shall be.		

(From Perfect Stem *Fu-*.)

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
<i>Fu-ī</i> , I have been or I was.		<i>Fu-erim</i>	
<i>Fu-istī</i> , thou hast been or thou wert.		<i>Fu-eris</i>	
<i>Fu-it</i> , he has been or he was.		<i>Fu-erit</i>	
<i>Fu-imus</i> , we have been or we were.		<i>Fu-erimus</i>	
<i>Fu-istis</i> , you have been or you were.		<i>Fu-eritis</i>	
<i>Fu-erunt</i> , or <i>-ēre</i> , they have been or they were.		<i>Fu-erint</i>	

## INDICATIVE.

*Pluperfect.*

*Fu-eram*, I had been.  
*Fu-erās*, thou hadst been.  
*Fu-erat*, he had been.  
*Fu-erāmus*, we had been.  
*Fu-erātis*, you had been.  
*Fu-erant*, they had been.

*Future Perfect.*

*Fu-erō*, I shall have been.  
*Fu-eris*, thou wilt have been.  
*Fu-erit*, he will have been.  
*Fu-erimus*, we shall have been.  
*Fu-eritis*, you will have been.  
*Fu-erint*, they will have been.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Pluperfect.*

*Fu-issem*  
*Fu-issēs*  
*Fu-isset*  
*Fu-issēmus*  
*Fu-issētis*  
*Fu-issent*

## PRESENT INFINITIVE.

*Fu-isse.*

(From Supine Stem *Fut-*.)

First Supine wanting.

Second Supine wanting.

Future Participle. *Futūrus*, -a, -um.

Future Infinitive. *Futūrus esse.*

## TABLES OF THE REGULAR VERBS

## Active Voice

First Conjugation. Example, *Amo*, I love.

(From Present Stem *Am-*.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

*Am-ō*      -āmus  
 -ās      -ātis  
 -at      -ant

*Imperfect.*

*Am-ābam*      -ābāmus  
 -ābās      -ābātis  
 -ābat      -ābant

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

*Am-em*      -ēmus  
 -ēs      -ētis  
 -et      -ent

*Imperfect.*

*Am-ārem*      -ārēmus  
 -ārēs      -ārētis  
 -āret      -ārent

INDICATIVE		Present Participle.	<i>Am-ans</i>
Future		Present Infinitive.	<i>Am-āre</i>
<i>Am-ābo</i>	<i>-ābimus</i>	Gerund.	<i>Am-andum</i> , etc.
<i>-ābis</i>	<i>-ābitis</i>		
<i>-ābit</i>	<i>-ābunt</i>		

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Am-ā</i>	<i>-āte</i>	<i>Am-ātō</i>	<i>-ātōte</i>
Love thou.	Love ye.	Thou shalt love.	Ye shall love.
		<i>-ātō</i>	<i>-antō</i>
		He shall love.	They shall love.

(From Perfect Stem *Amāv-*.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Perfect.		Perfect.	
<i>Amāv-ī</i>	<i>-imus</i>	<i>Amāv-erim</i>	<i>-erimus</i>
<i>-istī</i>	<i>-istis</i>	<i>-eris</i>	<i>-eritis</i>
<i>-it</i>	<i>-ērunt</i> or <i>ēre</i>	<i>-erit</i>	<i>-erint</i>
Pluperfect.		Pluperfect.	
<i>Amāv-eram</i>	<i>-erāmus</i>	<i>Amāv-issem</i>	<i>-issēmus</i>
<i>-erās</i>	<i>-erātis</i>	<i>-issēs</i>	<i>-issētis</i>
<i>-erat</i>	<i>-erant</i>	<i>-isset</i>	<i>-issent</i>
Future Perfect.		PERFECT INFINITIVE.	
<i>Amāv-erō</i>	<i>-erimus</i>	<i>Amāv-isse</i>	
<i>-eris</i>	<i>-eritis</i>		
<i>-erit</i>	<i>-erint</i>		

(From Supine Stem *Amāt-*.)

First Supine.	<i>Amāt-um.</i>
Second Supine.	<i>Amāt-ū.</i>
Future Participle.	<i>Amāt-ūrus, -a, -um.</i>

Future Infinitive = Future Participle + *esse* = *Amātūrus esse*, to be about to love.

Second Conjugation. Example, *Moneo*, I warn.(From Present Stem *Mon-*.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Present.		Present.	
<i>Mon-eō</i>	<i>-ēmus</i>	<i>Mon-eam</i>	<i>-eāmus</i>
<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-ētis</i>	<i>-eās</i>	<i>-eātis</i>
<i>-et</i>	<i>-ent</i>	<i>-eat</i>	<i>-eant</i>

<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
<i>Mon-ēbam</i>	<i>-ēbāmus</i>	<i>Mon-ērem</i>	<i>-ērēmus</i>
<i>-ēbās</i>	<i>-ēbātis</i>	<i>-ērēs</i>	<i>-ērētis</i>
<i>-ēbat</i>	<i>-ēbant</i>	<i>-ēret</i>	<i>-ērent</i>
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Present Participle. Mon-ens</i>	
<i>Mon-ēbō</i>	<i>-ēbimus</i>	<i>Present Infinitive. Mon-ēre</i>	
<i>-ēbis</i>	<i>-ēbitis</i>	<i>Gerund. Mon-endum, etc.</i>	
<i>-ēbit</i>	<i>-ēbunt</i>		
 IMPERATIVE MOOD.			
<i>Mon-ē</i>	<i>-ēte</i>	<i>Mon-ētō</i>	<i>-ētōte</i>
Warn thou.	Warn ye.	Thou shalt warn.	Ye shall warn.
		<i>-ētō</i>	<i>-ento</i>
		He shall warn.	They shall warn.

(From Perfect Stem *Monu-*.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
<i>Monu-ī</i>	<i>-imus</i>	<i>Monu-erim</i>	<i>-erimus</i>
<i>-istī</i>	<i>-istis</i>	<i>-eris</i>	<i>-eritis</i>
<i>-it</i>	<i>-erunt</i> or <i>-ēre</i>	<i>-erit</i>	<i>-erint</i>
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
<i>Monu-eram</i>	<i>-erāmus</i>	<i>Monu-issem</i>	<i>-issēmus</i>
<i>-erās</i>	<i>-erātis</i>	<i>-issēs</i>	<i>-issētis</i>
<i>-erat</i>	<i>-erant</i>	<i>-isset</i>	<i>-issent</i>
<i>Future Perfect.</i>		PERFECT INFINITIVE.	
<i>Monu-erō</i>	<i>-erimus</i>	<i>Monu-isse</i>	
<i>-eris</i>	<i>-eritis</i>		
<i>-erit</i>	<i>-erint</i>		

(From Supine Stem *Monit-*.)

First Supine.	<i>Monit-um.</i>
Second Supine.	<i>Monit-ū.</i>
Future Participle.	<i>Monit-ūrus, -a, -um.</i>

Future Infinitive = Future Participle + *esse* = *Monitūrus esse*,  
be about to advise.

Third Conjugation. Example, *Rego*, I rule.  
(From Present Stem *Reg-*.)

INDICATIVE MOOD.		SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
<i>Reg-ō</i>	<i>-imus</i>	<i>Reg-am</i>	<i>-āmus</i>
<i>-is</i>	<i>-itis</i>	<i>-ās</i>	<i>-ātis</i>
<i>-it</i>	<i>-unt</i>	<i>-at</i>	<i>-ant</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
<i>Reg-ēbam</i>	<i>-ēbāmus</i>	<i>Reg-erem</i>	<i>-erēmus</i>
<i>-ēbas</i>	<i>-ēbātis</i>	<i>-erēs</i>	<i>-erētis</i>
<i>-ēbat</i>	<i>-ēbant</i>	<i>-eret</i>	<i>-erent</i>
<i>Future.</i>		Present Participle. <i>Reg-ens</i>	
<i>Reg-am</i>	<i>-ēmus</i>	Present Infinitive. <i>Reg-ere</i>	
<i>-ēs</i>	<i>-ētis</i>	Gerund, <i>Reg-endum</i> , etc.	
<i>-et</i>	<i>-ent</i>		
IMPERATIVE MOOD.			
<i>Reg-e</i>	<i>-ite</i>	<i>Reg-itō</i>	<i>-itōte</i>
Rule thou.	Rule ye.	Thou shalt rule.	Ye shall rule.
		<i>-itō</i>	<i>-untō</i>
		He shall rule.	They shall rule.

(From Perfect Stem *Rex-*.)

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
<i>Rex-ī</i>	<i>-imus</i>	<i>Rex-erim</i>	<i>-erimus</i>
<i>-istī</i>	<i>-istis</i>	<i>-eris</i>	<i>-eritis</i>
<i>-it</i>	<i>-ērunt</i> or <i>-ēre</i>	<i>-erit</i>	<i>-erint</i>
INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
<i>Rex-eram</i>	<i>-erāmus</i>	<i>Rex-issem</i>	<i>-issēmus</i>
<i>-erās</i>	<i>-erātis</i>	<i>-issēs</i>	<i>-issētis</i>
<i>-erat</i>	<i>-erant</i>	<i>-isset</i>	<i>-issent</i>
<i>Future Perfect.</i>		PERFECT INFINITIVE.	
<i>Rex-erō</i>	<i>-erimus</i>	<i>Rex-isse</i>	
<i>-eris</i>	<i>-eritis</i>		
<i>-erit</i>	<i>-erint</i>		

(From Supine Stem *Rect.*)

First Supine.	<i>Rect-um.</i>
Second Supine.	<i>Rect-ū.</i>
Future Participle.	<i>Rect-ūrus, -a, -um.</i>

Future Infinitive = Future Participle + *esse* = *Rectūrus esse*, to be about to rule.

Fourth Conjugation. Example, *Audio*, I hear.(From Present Stem *Aud-*.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Aud-iō</i>	<i>-imus</i>
<i>-is</i>	<i>-itis</i>
<i>-it</i>	<i>-iunt</i>

*Imperfect.*

<i>Aud-iēbam</i>	<i>-iēbāmus</i>
<i>-iēbās</i>	<i>-iēbātis</i>
<i>-iēbat</i>	<i>-iēbant</i>

*Future.*

<i>Aud-iam</i>	<i>-iēmus</i>
<i>-iēs</i>	<i>-iētis</i>
<i>-iet</i>	<i>-ient</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Aud-iam</i>	<i>-iāmus</i>
<i>-iās</i>	<i>-iātis</i>
<i>-iat</i>	<i>-iant</i>

*Imperfect.*

<i>Aud-irem</i>	<i>-irēmus</i>
<i>-irēs</i>	<i>-irētis</i>
<i>-iret</i>	<i>-irent</i>

Present Participle. *Aud-iens*Present Infinitive. *Aud-ire*Gerund. *Aud-iendum*, etc.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Aud-i</i>	<i>-ite</i>	<i>Aud-iŏ</i>	<i>-iŏte</i>
Hear thou.	Hear ye.	Thou shalt hear.	Ye shall hear.
		<i>-iŏ</i>	<i>-iuntŏ</i>
		He shall hear.	They shall hear.

(From Perfect Stem *Audi-*.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Perfect.*

<i>Audiui</i>	<i>-imus</i>
<i>-isti</i>	<i>-istis</i>
<i>-it</i>	<i>-ērunt</i> or <i>-ēre</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Perfect.*

<i>Audiuerim</i>	<i>-erimus</i>
<i>-eris</i>	<i>-eritis</i>
<i>-erit</i>	<i>-erint</i>

*Pluperfect.*

<i>Audiū-eram</i>	<i>-erāmus</i>
<i>-erās</i>	<i>-erātis</i>
<i>-erat</i>	<i>-erant</i>

*Future Perfect.*

<i>Audiū-erō</i>	<i>-erimus</i>
<i>-eris</i>	<i>-eritis</i>
<i>-erit</i>	<i>-erint</i>

*Pluperfect.*

<i>Audiū-issem</i>	<i>-issēmus</i>
<i>-issēs</i>	<i>-issētis</i>
<i>-isset</i>	<i>-issent</i>

## PERFECT INFINITIVE.

*Audiū-isse*(From Supine Stem *Audīt-*.)

First Supine.	<i>Audīt-um.</i>
Second Supine.	<i>Audīt-ū.</i>
Future Participle.	<i>Audīt-ūrus, -a, -um.</i>

Future Infinitive = Future Participle + *esse* = *Auditurus esse*,  
to be about to hear.

## Passive Voice

First Conjugation. *Amor*, I am loved.(From Present Stem *Am-*.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Am-or</i> : I am being loved.
<i>Am-āmur</i> : We are being loved.
<i>Am-āris (-are)</i> : You are being loved
<i>Am-āmini</i> : Ye are being loved.
<i>Am-ātur</i> : He is being loved.
<i>Am-antur</i> : They are being loved.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.*

<i>Am-er</i>	<i>Am-ēmur</i>
<i>-ēris (-ēre)</i>	<i>-ēmini</i>
<i>-ētur</i>	<i>-entur</i>

*Imperfect.*

<i>Am-ābar</i> : I was being loved.
<i>Am-ābāmur</i> : We were being loved
<i>Am-ābāris (-ābāre)</i> : You were being loved.
<i>Am-ābāmini</i> : Ye were being loved.
<i>Am-ābātur</i> : He was being loved.
<i>Am-ābantur</i> : They were being loved.

*Imperfect.*

<i>Am-ārer</i>	<i>-ārēmur</i>
<i>-ārēris (-ārēre)</i>	<i>-ārēmini</i>
<i>-ārētur</i>	<i>-ārentur</i>

*Future.*

<i>Am-ābor</i> : I shall be loved.
<i>Am-ābimur</i> : We shall be loved.
<i>Am-āberis (-ābere)</i> : You shall be loved.
<i>Am-ābimini</i> : Ye shall be loved.
<i>Am-ābitur</i> : He shall be loved.
<i>Am-ābuntur</i> : They shall be loved.

## Present Participle.

## Present Infinitive.

*Amārī* : To be loved.Gerundive. *Amandus, -a, -um.*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Am-āre</i> : Be thou loved.	<i>Am-āmini</i> : Be ye loved.
<i>Am-ātor</i> : You shall be loved.	<i>Am-ātor</i> : He shall be loved.
<i>Am-antor</i> : They shall be loved.	

## Perfect Tenses

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Perfect.

<i>Amātus</i> , etc., <i>sum Amātī</i> , etc., <i>sumus</i>	<i>Amātus</i> , etc., <i>sim Amātī</i> , etc., <i>simus</i>
„ <i>es</i> „ <i>estis</i>	„ <i>sis</i> „ <i>sitis</i>
„ <i>est</i> „ <i>sunt</i>	„ <i>sit</i> „ <i>sint</i>

## Pluperfect.

<i>Amātus eram</i>	<i>Amātī erāmus</i>	<i>Amātus essem</i>	<i>Amātī essēmus</i>
„ <i>erās</i>	„ <i>erātis</i>	„ <i>essēs</i>	„ <i>essētis</i>
„ <i>erat</i>	„ <i>erant</i>	„ <i>esset</i>	„ <i>essent</i>

## Future Perfect.

<i>Amātus ero</i>	<i>Amātī erimus</i>
„ <i>eris</i>	„ <i>eritis</i>
„ <i>erit</i>	„ <i>erunt</i>

## PERFECT INFINITIVE.

*Amātus esse*(From Supine Stem *Amāt-*.)

Past Participle Passive.	<i>Amātus</i> , -a, -um.
Future Infinitive Passive.	<i>Amātum iri</i> .

Second Conjugation. *Moneor*, I am warned.(From Present Stem *Mon-*.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

<i>Mon-eor</i>	-ēmur
-ēris (OR -ēre)	-ēmini
-ētur	-entur

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

<i>Mon-ear</i>	-eāmur
-eāris (OR -eāre)	-eāmini
-eātur	-eantur

## INDICATIVE.

## Imperfect.

<i>Mon-ēbar</i>	-ēbāmur
-ēbāris (OR -ēbāre)	-ēbāmini
-ēbātur	-ēbantur

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

## Imperfect.

<i>Mon-ēver</i>	-ērēmur
-ērēris (OR -ērēre)	-ērēmini
-ērētur	-ērentur

## Future.

<i>Mon-ēbor</i>	<i>-ēbimīr</i>
<i>-ēberis</i> (or <i>-ēbere</i> )	<i>-ēbiminī</i>
<i>-ēbitur</i>	<i>-ēbuntur</i>

## Present Participle.

## Present Infinitive.

*Monēri*

## Gerundive.

*Monendus, -a, -um*

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Mon-ēre</i>	<i>-ēminī</i>	<i>Mon-ētor</i>	
		<i>-ētor</i>	<i>-entor</i>

## Perfect Tenses

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Perfect.

<i>Monitus sum</i>	<i>Monitī sumus</i>
<i>„ es</i>	<i>„ estis</i>
<i>„ est</i>	<i>„ sunt</i>

## Pluperfect.

<i>Monitus eram</i>	<i>Monitī erāmus</i>
<i>„ erās</i>	<i>„ erātis</i>
<i>„ erat</i>	<i>„ erant</i>

## Future Perfect.

<i>Monitus erō</i>	<i>Monitī erimus</i>
<i>„ eris</i>	<i>„ eritis</i>
<i>„ erit</i>	<i>„ erint</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Perfect.

<i>Monitus sim</i>	<i>Monitī simus</i>
<i>„ sis</i>	<i>„ sitis</i>
<i>„ sit</i>	<i>„ sint</i>

## Pluperfect.

<i>Monitus essem</i>	<i>Monitī essēmus</i>
<i>„ essēs</i>	<i>„ essētis</i>
<i>„ esset</i>	<i>„ essent</i>

## PERFECT INFINITIVE

*Monitus esse*

## (From Supine Stem.)

Past Participle Passive. *Monitus, -a, -um.*Future Infinitive Passive. *Monitum iri.*Third Conjugation. *Regor, I am ruled.*(From Present Stem *Reg-*.)

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

<i>Reg-or</i>	<i>-imur</i>
<i>-eris (-ere)</i>	<i>-imini</i>
<i>-itur</i>	<i>-untur</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

<i>Reg-ar</i>	<i>-āmur</i>
<i>-āris (-āre)</i>	<i>-āmini</i>
<i>-ātur</i>	<i>-antur</i>

<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	
<i>Reg-ēbar</i>	-ēbāmur	<i>Reg-erer</i>	-erēmur
-ebaris (-ēbāre)	-ēbāminī	-erēris (-erēre)	-erēminī
-ēbātur	-ēbantur	-erētur	-erentur
<i>Future.</i>		<i>Present Participle.</i>	
<i>Reg-ar</i>	-ēmur	—	
-ēris (-ēre)	-ēminī	<i>Present Infinitive.</i>	
-ētur	-entur	<i>Reg-ī</i>	
		<i>Gerundive.</i>	
		<i>Reg-endus, -a, -um.</i>	
<i>IMPERATIVE MOOD.</i>			
<i>Reg-ere</i>	-imini	<i>Reg-itor</i>	-untor

## Perfect Tenses

<i>INDICATIVE MOOD.</i>		<i>SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.</i>	
<i>Perfect.</i>		<i>Perfect.</i>	
<i>Rectus sum</i>	<i>Recti sumus</i>	<i>Rectus sim</i>	<i>Recti simus</i>
„ es	„ estis	„ sis	„ sitis
„ est	„ sunt	„ sit	„ sint
<i>Pluperfect.</i>		<i>Pluperfect.</i>	
<i>Rectus eram</i>	<i>Recti erāmus</i>	<i>Rectus essem</i>	<i>Recti essēmus</i>
„ erās	„ erātis	„ essēs	„ essētis
„ erat	„ erant	„ esset	„ essent
<i>Future Perfect.</i>		<i>PERFECT INFINITIVE.</i>	
<i>Rectus erō</i>	<i>Recti erimus</i>	<i>Rectus esse</i>	
„ eris	„ eritis		
„ erit	„ erunt		

(From Supine Stem *Rect-*.)

Past Participle Passive.	<i>Rectus, -a, -um.</i>
Future Infinitive Passive.	<i>Rectum iri.</i>

Fourth Conjugation. *Audior*, I am heard.(From Present Stem *Aud-*.)

<i>INDICATIVE MOOD.</i>		<i>SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.</i>	
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Present.</i>	
<i>Aud-ior</i>	-imur	<i>Aud-iar</i>	-iāmur
-iris (-ire)	-imini	-iāris (-iāre)	-iāminī
-itur	-iuntur	-iātur	-iantur

*Imperfect.**Imperfect.*

<i>Aud-iēbar</i>	<i>-iēbāmur</i>	<i>Aud-irer</i>	<i>-irēmur</i>
<i>-iēbaris (-iēbāre)</i>	<i>-iēbāminī</i>	<i>-irēris (-irēre)</i>	<i>-irēminī</i>
<i>-iēbātur</i>	<i>-iēbantur</i>	<i>-irētur</i>	<i>-irēntur</i>

*Future.**Present Participle.*

<i>Aud-iar</i>	<i>-iēmur</i>
<i>-iēris (-iēre)</i>	<i>-iēminī</i>
<i>-iētur</i>	<i>-ientur</i>

*Present Infinitive.**Aud-iri**Gerundive.**Audiendus, -a, -um.**IMPERATIVE MOOD.*

<i>Aud-ire</i>	<i>-iminī</i>	<i>Aud-itor</i>	<i>-iuntor</i>
		<i>-itor</i>	

## Perfect Tenses

*INDICATIVE MOOD.**SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.**Perfect.**Perfect.*

<i>Auditus sum</i>	<i>Auditū sumus</i>	<i>Auditus sim</i>	<i>Auditū simus</i>
<i>„ es</i>	<i>„ estis</i>	<i>„ sis</i>	<i>„ sitis</i>
<i>„ est</i>	<i>„ sunt</i>	<i>„ sit</i>	<i>„ sint</i>

*INDICATIVE.**SUBJUNCTIVE.**Pluperfect.**Pluperfect.*

<i>Auditus eram</i>	<i>Auditū erāmus</i>	<i>Auditus essem</i>	<i>Auditū essēmus</i>
<i>„ erās</i>	<i>„ erātis</i>	<i>„ essēs</i>	<i>„ essētis</i>
<i>„ erat</i>	<i>„ erant</i>	<i>„ esset</i>	<i>„ essent</i>

*Future Perfect.*

<i>Auditus erō</i>	<i>Auditū erimus</i>
<i>„ eris</i>	<i>„ eritis</i>
<i>„ erit</i>	<i>„ erunt</i>

*PERFECT INFINITIVE.**Auditus esse*

(From Supine tem it-.)

*Past Participle Passive.* *Auditus, -a, -um.**Future Infinitive Passive.* *Auditum iri.*

## TABLES OF THE IRREGULAR VERBS

INDICATIVE.						
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>			
PRESENT.	Pos-sum Volo Nōlo Mālo Fero Fio Eo	pot-es vis nōnvis māvis fers fis is	pot-est vult nōnvult māvult fert fit it	pos-sumus volumus nōlumus mālumus ferimus — imus	pot-estis vultis nōnvultis māvultis fertis — itis	pos-sunt volunt nōlunt mālunt ferunt fiunt eunt
IMPERFECT.	Pot-eram Volē- Nōlē- Mālē- Ferē- Fiē- I-	-erās -bām -bās -bāt	-erat -bāt	-erāmus -bāmus	-erātis -bātis	-erant -bant
FUTURE.	Pot-erō Vol- Nōl- Māl- Fer- Fi- Ib-o	-eris -am -ēs -is	-erit -et -it	-erimus -ēmus -imus	-eritis -ētis -itis	-erunt -ent -unt
PARTICIPLE.		INFINITIVE.		GERUND.		
Vol- Nōl- Māl- Fer- — Gen. euntis		posse velle nolle malle ferre feri ire		vol- nol- māl- fer- — e-undum Gen. volendi, etc.		

SUBJUNCTIVE.							
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>			
PRESENT.	Pos-sim	pos-sis	pos-sit	pos-sīmus	pos-sītis	pos-sint	
	Vel- Nōl- Māl- Fer- Fi- E- }	im	-is	-it	-imus	-itis	-int
IMPERFECT.	Poss- Vell- Noll- Mall- Ferr- Fier- Ir- }	em	-ēs	-et	-ēmus	-ētis	-ent
IMPERATIVE.							
	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>			
	_____ _____ Nōl-i, nōl-itō	_____ _____ nōl-itō	_____ _____ nōl-ite, nōl-itōte	_____ _____ nōl-untō			
	Fer, fer-tō	fer-tō	fer-te, fer-tōte	fer-untō			
	Fi	_____ i-tō	fi-te	_____ e-untō			
	I, i-tō	i-tō	i-te, i-tōte				

## INDICATIVE

*Singular.**Plural.*

Fer-or	fer-ris	fer-tur	fer-imur	fer-imini	fer-untur
Fer-ēbar	fer-ēbāris	fer-ēbātur	fer-ēbāmur	fer-ēbāmini	fer-ēbāntur
Fer-ar	fer-ēris	fer-ētur	fer-ēmur	fer-ēmini	fer-entur

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

Fer-ar	fer-āris	fer-ātur	fer-āmur	fer-āmini	fer-antur
Ferr-er	ferr-ēris	ferr-ētur	ferr-ēmur	ferr-ēmini	ferr-entur

## IMPERATIVE.

Fer-re, fer-tor	fer-tor	fer-imini	fer-untor
-----------------	---------	-----------	-----------

GERUNDIVE	Fer-endus	PRESENT INFINITIVE	Ferr-i
-----------	-----------	--------------------	--------

## ALPHABETICAL LIST OF LATIN VERBS

This list is meant to supplement the Vocabulary. It will probably be easier to find a verb in it than in the other. You should work about in this as much as possible in going over the book the first time, and learn the list off by heart when going over the book the second time. The second column gives the ending of the Present Infinitive, which determines to which conjugation the verb belongs.

### A

	<i>Inf.</i>	<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Supine</i>	
Abd-ō	abd-ere	abdid-i	abdit-um	<i>hide</i>
Abig-ō	abig-ere	abēg-i	abact-um	<i>drive away</i>
Abol-eō	abol-ēre	abolēv-i	abolit-um	<i>abolish</i>
Accend-ō	accend-ere	accend-i	accens-um	<i>kindle, set on fire</i>
Accumb-ō	accumb-ere	accubu-i	accubit-um	<i>recline at table</i>
Acu-ō	acu-ere	acu-i	acūt-um	<i>sharpen</i>
Add-ō	add-ere	addid-i	addit-um	<i>put to, add</i>
Adim-ō	adim-ere	adem-i	adempt-um	<i>take away</i>
Adipisc-or	adipisc-i	adept-us sum	—	<i>obtain</i>
Adolesc-ō	adolesc-ere	adolēv-i	adult-um	<i>grow up</i>
Adst-ō	adst-āre	adstit-i	—	<i>stand by</i>
Afflig-ō	afflig-ere	afflix-i	afflict-um	<i>dash down</i>
Agnosce-ō	agnosc-ere	agnōv-i	agnit-um	<i>recognise</i>
Ag-ō	ag-ere	ēg-i	act-um	<i>drive</i>
Alg-eō	alg-ēre	als-i	—	<i>be cold</i>
Al-ō	al-ere	alu-i	alt-um, alit-um	<i>nourish</i>
Amic-iō	amic-ire	amicu-i, amix-i	amict-um	<i>clothe</i>
Amplect-or	amplect-i	amplex-us sum	—	<i>embrace</i>
Aper-iō	aper-ire	aperu-i	apert-um	<i>open</i>
Arc-eō	arc-ēre	arcu-i	—	<i>ward off</i>
Arcess-ō	arcess-ere	arcessiv-i	arcessit-um	<i>summon</i>

Ard-eō	ard-ēre	ars-i	ars-um	be on fire, (intrs.) blaze
Ascend-ō	ascend-ere	ascend-i	ascens-um	climb
Assent-ior	assent-iri	assens-us sum	—	agree to
Argu-ō	argu-ere	argu-i	—	show
Aud-eō	aud-ēre	aus-us sum	—	dare
Aug-eō	aug-ēre	aux-i	auct-um	increase, (trs.) make grow

## B

Bib-ō	bib-ere	bib-i	—	drink
-------	---------	-------	---	-------

## C

Cad-ō	cad-ere	cecid-i	cās-um	fall
Caed-ō	caed-ere	cecid-i	caes-um	cut, fell
Can-ō	can-ere	cecin-i	cant-um	sing
Capess-ō	capess-ere	capessiv-i	capessit-um	seize eagerly
Cap-iō	cap-ere	cēp-i	capt-um	take
Carp-ō	carp-ere	carps-i	carpt-um	pluck
Cav-eō	cav-ēre	cāv-i	caut-um	beware
Cēd-ō	ced-ere	cess-i	cess-um	yield
Cens-eō	cens-ēre	censu-i	cens-um	think, vote
Cern-ō	cern-ere	crēv-i	crēt-um	distinguish
Ci-eō	ci-ēre	civ-i	cit-um	rouse
Cing-ō	cing-ere	cinx-i	cinct-um	surround
Circumd-ō	circumd-are	circumded-i	circumdat-um	put round
Claud-ō	claud-ere	claus-i	claus-um	shut
Cognosc-ō	cognosc-ere	cognōv-i	cognit-um	recognise
Cōg-ō	cog-ere	coēg-i	coact-um	compel
Collig-ō	collig-ere	collēg-i	collect-um	collect
Col-ō	col-ere	colu-i	cult-um	till, culti- vate
Cōm-ō	com-ere	comps-i	compt-um	deck
Comper-iō	comper-ire	comper-i	compert-um	learn
Comping-ō	comping-ere	compēg-i	compact-um	fix together
Compl-eō	compl-ēre	complēv-i	complēt-um	fill up
Conc-iō	conc-ire	conciv-i	concit-um	call to- gether
Concut-iō	concut-ere	concuss-i	concuss-um	shake
Cond-ō	cond-ere	condid-i	condit-um	violently to found, hide
Confic-iō	confic-ere	confēc-i	confect-um	finish
Confit-eor	confit-ēri	confess-us sum	—	confess
Congru-ō	congru-ere	congru-i	—	agree
Conser-ō	conser-ere	consēv-i	consit-um	plant (with something)

Conser-ō	conser-ere	conseru-i	consert-um	<i>to knit together</i>
Conspic-iō	conspic-ere	conspex-i	conspic-um	<i>behold</i>
Constitu-ō	constitu-ere	constitu-i	constitūt-um	<i>resolve</i>
Const-ō	const-āre	constit-i	—	<i>consist</i>
Consul-ō	consul-ere	consulu-i	consult-um	<i>consult</i>
Contemn-ō	contemn-ere	contemps-i	contempt-um	<i>despise</i>
Coqu-ō	coqu-ere	cox-i	coct-um	<i>cook</i>
Corrig-ō	corrig-ere	correx-i	correct-um	<i>correct</i>
Crēd-ō	crēd-ere	crēdid-i	crēdit-um	<i>believe</i>
Crep-ō	crep-āre	crepu-i	crepit-um	<i>creak</i>
Cresc-ō	cresc-ere	crēv-i	crēt-um	<i>grow</i> (intrs.)
Cub-ō	cub-āre	cubu-i	cubit-um	<i>lie down</i>
Cūd-o	cūd-ere	cūd-i	cūs-um	<i>forge</i>
Cupi-ō	cup-ere	cupiv-i	cupit-um	<i>desire</i>
Curr-ō	curr-ere	cucurr-i	curs-um	<i>run</i>

## D

Dēdic-o	dēdic-āre	dēdicāv-i	dēdicāt-um	<i>dedicate</i>
Dēfend-ō	dēfend-ere	dēfend-i	dēfens-um	<i>defend</i>
Dēl-eō	dēl-ēre	dēlāv-i	dēlēt-um	<i>destroy</i>
Dēlig-ō	dēlig-ere	dēlēg-i	dēlēct-um	<i>choose out</i>
Dēm-ō	dēm-ere	dēmps-i	dēempt-um	<i>take away</i>
Dēsil-iō	dēsil-ire	dēsilu-i	dēsult-um	<i>leap down</i>
Dīc-ō	dīc-ere	dix-i	dict-um	<i>say</i>
Dilig-ō	dilig-ere	dīlex-i	dilect-um	<i>love</i>
Dirip-iō	dirip-ere	diripu-i	dirept-um	<i>plunder</i>
Disc-ō	disc-ere	didic-i	—	<i>learn</i>
Dīvid-ō	dīvid-ere	dīvis-i	dīvis-um	<i>divide</i>
D-ō	d-āre	ded-i	dat-um	<i>give</i>
Doc-eō	doc-ēre	docu-i	doct-um	<i>teach</i>
Dom-ō	dom-āre	domu-i	domit-um	<i>tame,</i> <i>subdue</i>
Dūc-ō	dūc-ere	dux-i	duct-um	<i>lead</i>

## E

Ed-ō	ed-ere	ēd-i	ēs-um	<i>eat</i>
Ed-ō	ēd-ere	ēdid-i	ēdit-um	<i>give out</i>
Educ-ō	ēduc-āre	ēducāv-i	ēducāt-um	<i>educate</i>
Edūc-o	ēdūc-ere	ēdux-i	ēduct-um	<i>lead out</i>
Eg-eō	eg-ēre	egu-i	—	<i>need (Abl. case)</i>
Ellic-iō	ēlic-ere	ēlicu-i	ēlicit-um	<i>lure out</i>
Em-ō	em-ere	ēm-i	empt-um	<i>buy</i>
Evād-ō	ēvād-ere	ēvās-i	ēvās-um	<i>go out</i>
Exc-iō	exc-ire	exciv-i	excit-um	<i>call forth</i>

Expergisc-or	expergisc-i	experrect-us sum	—	wake up (intrs.)
Exper-ior	exper-iri	expert-us sum	—	try
Exstingu-ō	exstinguere	extinx-i	extinct-um	extinguish
Exu-ō	exu-ere	exu-i	exūt-um	strip off

## F

Facess-ō	facess-ere	facessiv-i	facessit-um	do eagerly
Fac-iō	fac-ere	fēc-i	fact-um	make
Fall-ō	fall-ere	fefell-i	fals-um	deceive
Fat-eor	fat-ēri	fass-us sum	—	confess
Fav-eō	fav-ēre	fāv-i	faut-um	be favour- able
Fer-iō	fer-ire	—	—	strike
Ferv-eō	ferv-ēre	ferv-i, fervu-i	—	boil
Fid-ō	fid-ere	fis-us sum	—	trust
Fig-ō	fig-ere	fix-i	fix-um	fix
Find-ō	find-ere	fid-i	fiss-um	split
Fing-ō	fing-ere	finx-i	fict-um	form, imagine
Flect-ō	flect-ere	flex-i	flex-um	bend
Fl-eō	fl-ēre	flēv-i	flēt-um	weep
Flōr-eō	flōr-ēre	flōru-i	—	flourish
Flu-ō	flu-ere	flux-i	flux-um	flow
Fod-iō	fod-ere	fōd-i	foss-um	dig
Fov-eō	fov-ēre	fōv-i	fōt-um	cherish
Frang-ō	frang-ere	frēg-i	fract-um	break
Frem-ō	frem-ere	fremu-i	fremit-um	growl
Frig-eō	frig-ēre	frix-i	—	be cold
Fru-or	fru-i	fruct-us or fruit-us sum	—	enjoy
Fug-iō	fug-ere	fūg-i	fugit-um	flee
Fulc-iō	fulc-ire	fuls-i	fult-um	prop up
Fulg-eō	fulg-ēre	fuls-i	—	glitter
Fund-ō	fund-ere	fūd-i	fūs-um	rout
Fung-or	fung-i	funct-us sum	—	discharge

## G

Gaud-eō	gaud-ēre	gāvis-us sum	—	rejoice
Gem-ō	gem-ere	gemu-i	gemit-um	sigh, groan
Ger-ō	ger-ere	ges-si	gest-um	carry, wear
Gign-ō	gign-ere	genu-i	genit-um	beget
Grad-ior	grad-i	gress-us sum	—	step

## H

Haer-eō	haer-ēre	haes-i	haes-um	stick
Haur-iō	haur-ire	haus-i	haust-um	draw
Horr-eō	horr-ēre	horru-i	—	shudder

## I

Iac-eō	iac-ēre	iacu-i	iacit-um	to lie down
Iac-iō <sup>1</sup>	iac-ere	iēc-i	iact-um	throw
Ic-ō	ic-ere	ic-i	ict-um	strike
Imbu-ō	imbu-ere	imbu-i	imbūt-um	wet slightly
Inclūd-ō	inclūd-ere	inclūs-i	inclūs-um	shut in
Incumb-ō	incumb-ere	incubu-i	incubit-um	lie upon
Indic-ō	indic-āre	indicāv-i	indicāt-um	indicate
Indic-ō	indic-ere	indix-i	indict-um	announce
Ind-ō	ind-ere	indid-i	indit-um	put upon
Indulg-eō	indulg-ēre	induls-i	indult-um	be indulgent
Indu-ō	indu-ere	indu-i	indūt-um	put on
Intelleg-ō	intelleg-ere	intellex-i	intellect-um	understand
Irasc-or	irasc-i	—	—	become angry
Iub-eō	iub-ēre	iuss-i	iuss-um	command
Iung-ō	iung-ere	iunx-i	iunct-um	join
Iuv-ō	iuv-āre	iūv-i	iūtum	aid

## L

Lāb-or	lāb-i	laps-us sum	—	glide
Lacess-ō	lacess-ere	lacessiv-i	lacessit-um	provoke
Laed-ō	laed-ere	laes-i	laes-um	wound
Lat-eō	lat-ēre	latu-i	—	lie hidden
Lav-ō	lav-āre	lāv-i	laut-um, lōt-um, lavāt-um	wash
Leg-ō	leg-ere	lēg-i	lect-um	read, choose
Lin-ō	lin-ere	lēv-i	lit-um	smear
Loqu-or	loqu-i	locūt-us sum	—	speak
Lūce-ō	lūc-ēre	lux-i	—	shine
Lūd-ō	lūd-ere	lūs-i	lūs-um	play
Lūge-ō	lūg-ēre	lux-i	—	mourn

## M

Mand-ō	mand-ere	mand-i	mans-um	chew
Man-eō	man-ēre	mans-i	mans-um	remain
Merg-ō	merg-ere	mers-i	mers-um	dip
Mēt-ior	mēt-iri	mens-us sum	—	measure
Met-ō	met-ere	—	mess-um	reap
Metu-ō	metu-ere	metu-i	—	fear
Mic-ō	mic-āre	micu-i	—	glitter
Minu-ō	minu-ere	minu-i	minūt-um	lessen

<sup>1</sup> Compounds either *conjicio*, *disjicio*, *injicio*,  
or *conicio*, *disicio*, *inicio*.

Misc-eō	misc-ēre	miscu-i	mixt-um	<i>mix</i>
Mitt-ō	mitt-ere	mis-i	miss-um	<i>send</i>
Mord-eō	mord-ēre	momord-i	mors-um	<i>bite</i>
Mor-ior	mor-i	mortu-us sum	—	<i>die</i>
Mov-eō	mov-ēre	mōv-i	mōt-um	<i>move</i>
Mulc-eō	mulc-ēre	muls-i	muls-um	<i>soothe</i>

## N

Nancisc-or	nancisc-i	nact-us or nanc-ut sum	—	<i>obtain</i>
Nasc-or	nasc-i	nāt-us sum	—	<i>be born</i>
Nect-ō	nect-ere	nex-i, nexu-i	nex-um	<i>bind</i>
Negleg-ō	negleg-ere	neglex-i	neglect-um	<i>neglect</i>
Ning-ō	ning-ere	ninx-i	—	<i>snow</i>
Nit-eō	nit-ēre	nit-u-i	—	<i>shine</i>
Nit-or	nit-i	nisus or nix-us sum	—	<i>lean</i>
Nosc-ō	nosc-ere	nōv-i	nōt-um	<i>get to know</i>
Nūb-ō	nūb-ere	nups-i	nupt-um	<i>marry</i>

## O

Oblivisc-or	oblivisc-i	oblit-us sum	—	<i>forget</i>
Obsid-eō	obsid-ēre	obsēd-i	obsess-um	<i>besiege</i>
Obst-ō	obst-āre	obstit-i	—	<i>oppose</i>
Occid-ō	occid-ere	occid-i	occās-um	<i>fall, set (of the sun)</i>
Occid-ō	occid-ere	occid-i	occis-um	<i>slay</i>
Occul-ō	occul-ere	occulu-i	occult-um	<i>hide</i>
Ol-eō	ol-ēre	olu-i	—	<i>smell</i>
Oper-iō	oper-ire	operu-i	opert-um	<i>cover</i>
Opprim-ō	opprim-ere	oppress-i	oppress-um	<i>surprise, overwhelm</i>
Ord-ior	ord-iri	ors-us sum	—	<i>commence</i>
Ori-or	or-iri	ort-us sum	—	<i>rise</i>

## P

Pacisc-or	pacisc-i	pact-us sum	—	<i>bargain for</i>
Pall-eō	pall-ēre	pallu-i	—	<i>be pale</i>
Pand-ō	pand-ere	pand-i	pass-um	<i>spread out</i>
Pang-ō	pang-ere	panx-i	panct-um	<i>fix</i>
Pang-ō	pang-ere	pepig-i	pact-um	<i>fix, settle</i>
Parc-ō	parc-ere	peperc-i	—	<i>spare (dat.)</i>
Par-iō	par-ere	peper-i	part-um	<i>bring forth</i>
Pasc-ō	pasc-ere	pāv-i	past-um	<i>feed (trans.)</i>
Pasc-or	pasc-i	past-us sum	—	<i>feed (intrans.)</i>
Pat-eō	pat-ēre	patu-i	—	<i>lie open</i>

Pat-ior	pat-i	pass-us sum	—	suffer
Pav-eō	pav-ēre	pāv-i	—	fear
Pect-ō	pect-ere	pex-i	pex-um	comb
Pell-ō	pell-ere	pepul-i	puls-um	push
Pend-eō	pend-ēre	pepend-i	pens-um	hang (intrans.)
Pend-ō	pend-ere	pepend-i	pens-um	weigh, hang (trans.)
Percell-ō	percell-ere	percul-i	perculs-um	cast down
Perd-ō	perd-ere	perdid-i	perdit-um	destroy, lose
Perg-ō	perg-ere	perrex-i	perrect-um	go on, pro- ceed
Pet-ō	pet-ere	petiv-i	petit-um	ask, seek
Ping-ō	ping-ere	pinx-i	pict-um	paint
Plaud-ō	plaud-ere	plaus-i	plaus-um	clap, applaud
Plect-ō	plect-ere	plex-i, plexu-i	plex-um	plait
Plu-it	plu-ere	plu-it	—	it rains
Pōn-ō	pōn-ere	posu-i	posit-um	place, put
Posc-ō	posc-ere	poposc-i	—	demand
Possid-eō	possid-ēre	possēd-i	possess-um	possess
Pōt-ō	pōt-āre	pōtāv-i	pōt-um (potātum)	drink
Prand-eō	prand-ēre	prand-i	prans-um	breakfast
Prehend-ō	prehend-ere	prehend-i	prehens-um	seize
Prem-ō	prem-ere	press-i	press-um	press
Prōd-ō	prōd-ere	prōdid-i	prōdit-um	betray
Proficisc-or	proficisc-i	profect-us sum	—	set out
Prōflig-ō	prōflig-āre	prōfligāv-i	prōfligāt-um	dash down
Prōm-ō	prōm-ere	promps-i	prompt-um	bring forth
Q				
Quaer-ō	quaer-ere	quaesiv-i	quaesit-um	ask (a question), seek
Quat-iō	quat-ere	(quass-i)	quass-um	shake
Quer-or	quer-i	quest-us sum	—	complain
Quiesc-ō	quiesc-ere	quiēv-i	quiēt-um	rest
R				
Rād-ō	rād-ere	rās-i	rās-um	scrape
Rap-iō	rap-ere	rapu-i	rapt-um	snaitch
Recip-iō	recip-ere	recēp-i	recept-um	recover, receive
Redd-ō	redd-ere	reddid-i	reddit-um	give back
Refer-ō	refer-re	rettul-i	relāt-um	bring back
Relinqu-ō	relinqu-ere	reliqu-i	relict-um	leave
Reminisc-or	reminisc-i	—	—	remember
Re-eor	r-ēri	rat-us sum	—	think

Repell-ō	reppell-ere	reppul-i	repuls-um	<i>thrust back</i>
Reper-iō	reper-ire	repper-i	reperit-um	<i>find</i>
Rēp-ō	rēp-ere	reps-i	rept-um	<i>crawl</i>
Requir-ō	requir-ere	requisiv-i	requisit-um	<i>be in want of</i>
Respond-eō	respond-ēre	respond-i	respons-um	<i>answer</i>
Retin-eō	retin-ēre	retinu-i	retent-um	<i>hold back</i>
Rid-eō	rid-ēre	ris-i	ris-um	<i>laugh</i>
Rig-eō	rig-ēre	rigu-i	—	<i>be stiff</i>
Rōd-ō	rōd-ere	rōs-i	rōs-um	<i>gnaw</i>
Rub-eō	rub-ēre	rubu-i	—	<i>blush</i>
Rump-ō	rump-ere	rūp-i	rupt-um	<i>burst</i>
Ru-ō	ru-ere	ru-i	rut-um	<i>fall</i>

## S

Saep-iō	saep-ire	saeps-i	saept-um	<i>fence round</i>
Sal-iō	sal-ire	salu-i	salt-um	<i>leap</i>
Sanc-iō	sanc-ire	sanx-i	sanct-um	<i>ratify</i>
Sap-iō	sap-ere	sapiv-i	—	<i>be wise</i>
Sarc-iō	sarc-ire	sars-i	sart-um	<i>patch</i>
Scand-ō	scand-ere	scand-i	scans-um	<i>climb</i>
Scind-ō	scind-ere	scid-i	sciss-um	<i>tear</i>
Scrib-ō	scrib-ere	scrips-i	script-um	<i>write</i>
Sculp-ō	sculp-ere	sculps-i	sculpt-um	<i>engrave</i>
Sec-ō	sec-āre	secu-i	sect-um	<i>cut</i>
Sed-eō	sed-ēre	sēd-i	sess-um	<i>sit</i>
Sent-iō	sent-ire	sens-i	sens-um	<i>feel</i>
Sepel-iō	sepel-ire	sepeliv-i	sepult-um	<i>bury</i>
Sequ-or	sequ-i	secūt-us sum	—	<i>follow</i>
Ser-ō	ser-ere	sēv-i	sat-um	<i>sow</i>
Ser-ō	ser-ere	seru-i	sert-um	<i>knit, plait, join</i>
Serp-ō	serp-ere	serps-i	serpt-um	<i>crawl</i>
Sil-eō	sil-ēre	silu-i	—	<i>be silent</i>
Sin-ō	sin-ere	siv-i	sit-um	<i>permit</i>
Sol-eō	sol-ēre	solit-us sum	—	<i>be wont</i>
Solv-ō	solv-ere	solv-i	solūt-um	<i>loosen</i>
Son-ō	son-āre	sonu-i	sonit-um	<i>sound</i>
Sparg-ō	sparg-ere	spars-i	spars-um	<i>scatter</i>
Spern-ō	spern-ere	sprēv-i	sprēt-um	<i>spurn</i>
Spond-eō	spond-ēre	spond-i	spons-um	<i>pledge, promise</i>
Statu-ō	statu-ere	statu-i	statūt-um	<i>set up, resolve</i>
Stern-ō	stern-ere	strāv-i	strāt-um	<i>strew</i>
St-ō	st-āre	stet-i	stat-um	<i>stand</i>
Strep-ō	strep-ere	strepu-i	strepit-um	<i>make a noise</i>

Strid-eō	strid-ēre	strid-i	—	<i>hiss, creak</i>
String-ō	string-ere	strinx-i	strict-um	<i>strip</i>
Stru-ō	stru-ere	strux-i	struct-um	<i>build</i>
Stud-eō	stud-ēre	studu-i	—	<i>be zealous</i>
Stup-eō	stup-ēre	stupud-i	—	<i>be stunned,</i> <i>dazed</i>
Suād-eō	suād-ēre	suās-i	suās-um	<i>advise</i>
Subd-ō	subd-ere	subdid-i	subdit-um	<i>put be-</i> <i>neath</i>
Suesc-ō	suesc-ere	suēv-i	suēt-um	<i>be accus-</i> <i>tomed</i>
Sūm-ō	sūm-ere	sumps-i	sumpt-um	<i>take up</i>
Surg-ō	surg-ere	surrex-i	surrect-um	<i>rise up</i>

## T

Tang-ō	tang-ere	tetig-i	tact-um	<i>touch</i>
Teg-ō	teg-ere	tex-i	tect-um	<i>cover</i>
Tend-ō	tend-ere	tetend-i	tent-um, tens-um	<i>stretch</i>
Ten-eō	ten-ēre	tenui	tent-um	<i>hold</i>
Terg-eō	terg-ēre	ters-i	ters-um	<i>wipe</i>
Ter-ō	ter-ere	triv-i	trit-um	<i>rub</i>
Tex-ō	tex-ere	texu-i	text-um	<i>weave</i>
Tim-eō	tim-ēre	timu-i	—	<i>fear</i>
Ting-ō	ting-ere	tinx-i	tinct-um	<i>dip, dye</i>
Toll-ō	toll-ere	sustul-i	sublāt-um	<i>lift, take</i> <i>away</i>
Tond-eō	tond-ēre	totond-i	tons-um	<i>shear</i>
Ton-ō	ton-āre	tonu-i	—	<i>thunder</i>
Torqu-eō	torqu-ēre	tors-i	tort-um	<i>twist</i>
Torr-eō	torr-ēre	torru-i	tost-um	<i>roast</i>
Trād-ō	trad-ere	trādid-i	trādit-um	<i>hand down</i>
Trah-ō	trah-ere	trax-i	tract-um	<i>drag</i>
Trem-ō	trem-ere	tremu-i	—	<i>tremble</i>
Tribu-ō	tribu-ere	tribu-i	tribūt-um	<i>assign</i>
Trūd-o	trūd-ere	trūs-i	trūs-um	<i>thrust</i>
Tund-ō	tund-ere	tutud-i	tuns-um, tūs-um	<i>thump</i>
Turg-eō	turg-ēre	turs-i	—	<i>swell</i>

## U

Ulcisc-or	ulcisc-i	ult-us sum	—	<i>avenge</i>
Ung-ō	ung-ere	unx-i	unct-um	<i>anoint</i>
Urg-eō	urg-ēre	urs-i	—	<i>urge</i>
Ur-ō	ūr-ere	uss-i	ust-um	<i>burn</i> <i>(trans.)</i>
Ut-or	ūt-i	ūs-us sum	—	<i>use</i>

## V

Veh-ō	veh-ere	vex-i	vect-um	<i>carry</i>
Vell-ō	vell-ere	vell-i	vuls-um	<i>pluck</i>
Vend-ō	vend-ere	vendid-i	vendit-um	<i>sell</i>
Ven-iō	ven-ire	vēn-i	vent-um	<i>come</i>
Verr-ō	verr-ere	verr-i	vers-um	<i>sweep</i>
Vert-ō	vert-ere	vert-i	vers-um	<i>turn</i>
Vesc-or	vesc-i	_____	_____	<i>feed</i>
Vet-ō	vet-āre	vetu-i	vetit-um	<i>forbid</i>
Vid-eō	vid-ēre	vid-i	vis-um	<i>see</i>
Vig-eō	vig-ēre	vigu-i	_____	<i>thrive</i>
Vinc-iō	vinc-ire	vinx-i	vinct-um	<i>bind</i>
Vinc-ō	vinc-ere	vic-i	vict-um	<i>conquer</i>
Vis-ō	vis-ere	vis-i	(vis-um)	<i>visit</i>
Viv-ō	viv-ere	vix-i	vict-um	<i>live</i>
Volv-ō	volv-ere	volv-i	volūt-um	<i>roll</i>
Vom-ō	vom-ere	vomu-i	vomit-um	<i>vomit</i>
Vov-eō	vov-ēre	vōv-i	vōt-um	<i>vow</i>

## VOCABULARY

You will probably find the verbs more quickly in the Tables, but they are not all there. The Compound verbs are not given at all in the Tables. Further, the Vocabulary as a rule gives the meaning most useful in this book.

### A

- A*, *ab* (prep., with Abl. case)...by, from  
*Abaliēn-ō*, *-āvī*, *-ātum*, *-āre*...to estrange, to alienate  
*Abiciō*, *-iēcī*, *-iectum*, *-icere*...to cast away (or *ab-jicio*, *-jeci*, etc.)  
*Absens*, *-sentis*...absent  
*Absum*, *āfuī*, *abesse*...to be absent, to be away from  
*Ac*, *atque* (conj., *ac* used before consonants only)...and  
*Accedō*, *-cessī*, *-cessum*, *-cēdere*...to approach (to go to)  
*Accidō*, *-cidi*, *-cidere*...to happen  
*Accipiō*, *-cēpī*, *-ceptum*, *-cipere*...to receive, accept  
*Acer*, *ācris*, *ācre* (adj.)...sharp, keen. *Acrius* (adv.)...more keenly.  
*Acritēr* (adv.)...keenly, fiercely  
*Acerbus*, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...bitter  
*Aciēs*, *-ēī*, *f.*...line of battle, battle  
*Acquiescō*, *-quiēvī*, *-quiētum*, *-quiescere*...to rest, to die  
*Acutus*, *-a*, *-um* (adj.)...sharp  
*Ad* (prep., with Accus.)...to, towards  
*Adducō*, *-duxī*, *-ductum*, *-ducere*...to lead to, bring to  
*Adeō*, *-iī*, *-itum*, *-ire*...to go to, to approach  
*Adeo* (adv.)...so  
*Adficiō*. See *Afficiō*  
*Adhuc* (adv.)...up till now, hitherto  
*Adjungō*, *-junxī*, *-junctum*, *-jungere*...to join to, to unite  
*Admodum* (adv.)...quite, very  
*Adorior*, *-ortus sum*, *-orirī* (deponent verb)...to attack  
*Adoro*, *-avi*, *-atum*, *-are*...to worship  
*Adstō*, *-stitī*, —, *-stāre*...to stand by. *Adstantēs*...bystanders

---

NOTE.—Quantity is marked only where serious mistakes are likely to be made.

- Adsum, -fui, -esse...*to be present  
*Adveniō, -venī, -ventum, -venire...*to arrive, to come to  
*Adventus, -ūs, m....*arrival  
*Adversarius, -a, -um (adj.)...*opposed, hostile; (noun) enemy, opponent  
*Adversus* (prep., with Accus.)...against  
*Adversus, -a, -um (adj.)...*unfavourable  
*Aedificium, -iī, n....*building  
*Aedificō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre...*to build  
*Aegātes, -um, f....*the Aegates Islands  
*Aemilius, -iī, m....*Aemilius (name of a famous Roman family)  
*Aeque* (adv.)...equally  
*Aequor, -oris, n....*sea  
*Aerarium, -iī, n....*treasury  
*Aestimō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre...*to value  
*Aetās, aetātis, f....*age, time of life, time  
*Afferō, attulī, allātum, afferre...*to bring to  
*Afficiō, -fēcī, -fectum, -ficere...*to affect. *Morbō afficere*, to afflict with disease  
*Afirmō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre...*to assert  
*Africa, -ae, f....*Africa  
*Ager, agrī, m....*field; territory  
*Agger, -eris, m....*rampart  
*Agitō, -āvī, -ātum, -āre...*to keep moving. *Mente agitare*, to ponder  
*Agō, ēgi, actum, agere...*to do, to drive  
*Albus, -a, -um (adj.)...*white  
*Aliās* (adv.)...at another time. *Saepe alias...*on many other occasions  
*Aliēnus, -a, -um (adj.)...*belonging to another  
*Aliquī, aliqua, aliquod* (adj.)...some. Declined like *quī, quae, quod*; neut. plur. *aliqua*  
*Aliquis, m. and f., aliquid, n....*someone, something  
*Aliquot* (adj., indeclinable)...several  
*Aliēr* (adv.)...otherwise  
*Alius, -a, -ud...*other. *Aliī . . . aliī...*some . . . others  
*Alpēs, -ium, f....*the Alps  
*Alpicus, -a, -um (adj.)...*Alpine. *Alpicī, -ōrum, m....*the inhabitants of the Alps  
*Alter, -a, -um...*one of two; second. *Alter . . . alter*, the one . . . the other  
*Altus, -a, -um...*lofty, deep  
*Ambulo, -avi, -atum, -are...*to walk  
*Amicē* (adv.)...in friendly manner  
*Amicitia, -ae, f....*friendship  
*Amicus, -i, m....*friend  
*Amittō, -misi, -misum, -mittere...*to lose  
*Amor, -ōris, m....*love  
*Amphora, -ae, f....*jar  
*Amplius* (adv.)...more

*An.* See Chapter on Questions

*Angulus*, -i, m....corner

*Angustiae*, -arum, f....straits, narrowness

*Anima*, -ae, f....the soul, life

*Animus*, -i, m....the mind (as the seat of the emotions; *mens*, *mentis*, f....more the intellect)

*Annus*, -i, m....year

*Ante* (prep., with *Accus.*)...before

*Antea* (adv.)...before that, before

*Antecedo*, -cessi, -cessum, -cedere...to go before

*Antiochus*, -i, m....Antiochus

*Anus*, -us, f....old woman

*Apello*, -avi, -atum, -are...to call

*Appareo*, -parui, -paritum, -parere...to come in sight, to be plain

*Apparo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to prepare

*Appono*, -posui, -positum, -ponere...to place near, add to.

*Appropero*, -avi, -atum, -are...to hasten

*Apud* (prep., with *Accus.*)...near, at (of places); in the presence of (of persons)

*Apulia*, -ae, f....Apulia, a district of Italy

*Aqua*, -ae, f....water

*Ara*, -ae, f....altar

*Arbitrium*, -ii, n....judgment, bidding, decision

*Arbitror*, -atus sum, -ari...to think, to believe

*Arduus*, -a, -um (adj.)...high

*Argentum*, -i, n....silver

*Arma*, -orum, n. pl....arms

*Armo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to arm, to equip. *Armati*, armed men

*Ars*, *artis*, f....art

*Ascendo*, -scendi, -scensum, -scendere...to climb. *Ascendere navem*, to take ship, to embark

*Asper*, -era, -erum (adj.)...harsh

*Aspergo*, -inisi, f....spray

*Aspicio*, -spexi, -spectum, -spicere...to look at, behold

*Assiduus*, -a, -um (adj.)...continuous, perpetual

*Astrum*, -i, n....star

*At* (conj.)...but, but yet

*Athenae*, -arum, f. pl....Athens, the capital of Greece

*Athenienses*, -ium, pl....the Athenians

*Atheniensis*, -is, -e (adj.)...Athenian

*Atque* (conj.)...and

*Auctumnus*, -i, m....autumn

*Audeo*, *ausus sum*, *audere*...to dare, to venture

*Audio*, -ivi, -itum, -ire...to hear

*Aula*, -ae, f....palace

*Aura*, -ae, f....breeze

*Aurelius*, *ii*, m....Aurelius (name of a Roman family)

*Aureus*, -a, -um (adj.)...golden

*Auris*, -is, f....ear

*Aurum*, -i, n....gold  
*Aut* (conj.), or. *Aut* . . . *aut*, either . . . or  
*Autem* (conj.)...but, however  
*Auxilium*, -ii, n....aid  
*Avaritia*, -ae, f....avarice, greed  
*Ave*, *avete* (imperative)...hail!  
*Avia*, -ae, f....grandmother  
*Avunculus*, -i, m....maternal uncle  
*Avus*, -i, m....grandfather

## B

*Barba*, -ae, f....beard  
*Barbarus*, -a, -um (adj.)...barbarian; (as noun) a Barbarian  
*Balneum*, -i, n....bath  
*Barca*, -ae, m....Barca, the surname of Hamilcar  
*Basium*, -i, n....kiss  
*Bellicosus*, -a, -um (adj.)...warlike; *bellicosissimus* (superl.), very warlike  
*Bello*, -avi, -atum, -are...to wage war  
*Bellum*, -i, n....war  
*Bene* (adv.)...well  
*Beneficium*, -i, n....kindness  
*Biduum*, -i, n....a space of two days; *biduo* (abl.), within two days  
*Bini*, -ae, -a (distrib. adj.)...two each  
*Bis* (adv.)...twice  
*Bonus*, -a, -um (adj.)...good. *Bona*, -orum, n. pl....goods  
*Brevis*, -is, -e (adj.)...short. *Brevi* (adv.)...in a short time  
*Britanni*, -orum, m. pl....Britons

## C

*Caduceus*, -i, m....herald's wand  
*Caecus*, -a, -um (adj.)...blind  
*Caelum*, -i, n....sky  
*Caeruleus*, -a, -um (adj.)...dark blue, grey  
*Caesar*, -is, m....Caesar, a famous Roman  
*Caius*, -i, m....Caius, a Roman name  
*Calamitas*, -tatis, f....disaster  
*Callidus*, -a, -um (adj.)...skilful, cunning  
*Campus*, -i, m....plain  
*Candidus*, -a, -um (adj.)...white  
*Canis*, -is, m....dog. Gen. pl. *canum*  
*Canities*, -ei, f....old age  
*Cannensis*, -is, -e (adj.)...of Cannae  
*Canus*, -a, -um (adj.)...white  
*Canto*, -avis, -atum, -are...to sing  
*Caper*, -ri, m....goat  
*Capio*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *capere*...to take

- Capitolium*, -ii, n....the Capitol (a famous building in Rome)  
*Captivus*, -i, m....a captive  
*Capua*, -ae, f....Capua, a town in Italy  
*Caro*, *carnis*, f....flesh  
*Carthaginensis*, -is, -e (adj.)...Carthaginian  
*Carthago*, -inis, f....Carthage  
*Carus*, -a, -um (adj.)...dear  
*Castellum*, -i, n....fort  
*Castrum*, -i, n....fort. *Castra*, -orum, n. pl....a camp  
*Casu*...by chance  
*Casus*, -us, m....chance, accident, calamity  
*Cato*, -onis, m....Cato, a Roman name  
*Catulus*, -i, m....Catulus, a Roman name  
*Causa*, -ae, f....cause, reason  
*Causa*...for the sake of (prep. with Gen.)  
*Cedo*, *cessi*, *cessum*, *cedere*...(1) to yield (with Dative); (2) to go from (with Abl.)  
*Celeriter* (adv.)...quickly  
*Celo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to conceal  
*Cena*, -ae, f....dinner  
*Ceno*, -avi, -atum, -are...to dine  
*Centenius*, -ii, m....Centenius, a Roman name  
*Centum* (adj., indeclinable)...one hundred  
*Ceteri*, -ae, -a (adj.)...the rest, the others. (The singular is rare)  
*Circumdo*, -dēdi, -dātum, -dāre...to surround  
*Circumdo*, -ivi, -itum, -ire...to go round (*circum* and *eo*)  
*Circumsilio*, -ire...to hop around  
*Circumspicio*, -spexi, -spectum, -spicere...to look around  
*Circumvenio*, -vēni, -ventum, -venire...to surround  
*Cito* (adv.)...quickly  
*Civis*, -is, m....citizen  
*Civitas*, -tatis, f....state  
*Clam* (adv.)...secretly  
*Clamor*, -oris, m....shout  
*Clandestinus*, -a, -um (adj.)...secret  
*Classarius*, -ii, m....a marine  
*Classis*, -is, f....fleet  
*Clastidium*, -ii, n....Clastidium, a town near the Po  
*Claudo*, *clausi*, *clausum*, *claudere*...to shut  
*Cnaeus*, -i, m....Cnaeus, a Roman name  
*Coelum*, -i, n....the sky  
*Coepi*, -isse...to begin. (Perfect form with present meaning, found only in perfect and tenses derived from it)  
*Cogito*, -avi, -atum, -are...to think  
*Cognomen*, -inis, n....surname  
*Cognosco*, -novi, -nitum, -noscere...to discover, to learn, to know  
*Cogo*, *coēgi*, *coactum*, *cogere*...to compel  
*Cohortatio*, -ōnis, f....exhortation  
*Collēga*, -ae, m....colleague

- Colligo*, -lēgi, -lectum, -ligēre...to collect, to gather  
*Colloco*, -avi, -atum, -are...to place, to station  
*Colloquium*, -ii, n....conversation, parley  
*Color*, -oris, m....colour  
*Coma*, -ae, f....hair  
*Comes*, -itis, m. or f....companion  
*Commemoro*, -avi, -atum, -are...to recount, to tell  
*Committo*, -misi, -missum, -mittere *proelium*...to join battle  
*Comparo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to prepare, to get ready  
*Compello*, -puli, -pulsum, -pellere...to drive, to force, to compel  
*Comperio*, -pert, -pertum, -perire...to ascertain, to find out  
*Compleo*, -evi, -etum, -ēre...to fill  
*Complures*, -ia (and *complura*), gen. -ium...several  
*Compono*, -posui, -positum, -ponere...to settle, to conclude (*bellum*, a war), arrange  
*Comprehendo*, -di, -sum, -dere...to seize  
*Comprobo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to approve of, to sanction  
*Concido*, -cidi, -cīsum, -cīdere...to destroy  
*Concilio*, -avi, -atum, -are...to win over. *Conciliare pacem*, to make peace  
*Concito*, -avi, -atum, -are...to stir up, to rouse  
*Concordo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to agree  
*Concurro*, -curri, -cursum, -currere...to run together, to meet  
*Concursus*, -us, m....meeting, attack  
*Conditio*, -ōnis, f....condition; (pl.) terms  
*Conficio*, -fēci, -fectum, -ficere...to finish  
*Confirmo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to ratify, to make strong  
*Confligo*, -flixi, -flictum, -fligere...to engage in battle, to contend  
*Congredior*, -gressus, -gredi...to come together, to engage in battle  
*Conicio*, -ieci, -iectum, -icere...to throw, to hurl  
*Conor*, -atus, -ari...to attempt  
*Consentio*, -consensi, -sensus, -consentire...to agree  
*Consequor*, -secutus, -sequi...to obtain, to get  
*Consero*, -serui, -sertum, -serere...to knit together. *Manum conserere*, to join battle  
*Conseruo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to preserve  
*Considero*, -avi, -atum, -are...to consider, to deliberate  
*Consilium*, -ii, n....plan, advice, counsel  
*Conspicio*, -spexi, -spectum, -spicere...to behold  
*Constituo*, -ui, -utum, -uere...to construct, to establish, to resolve (with Infinitive)  
*Consuesco*, -suēvi, -suetum, -suescere...to become accustomed; (perf.) to be wont  
*Consuetudo*, -inis, f....custom  
*Consul*, -is, m....consul (chief magistrate of Rome)  
*Consulāris*, -is, m....ex-consul  
*consultum*, *Senatus*-, a decree of the Senate  
*Contentus*, -a, -um (adj.)...contented  
*Contineo*, -tinui, -tentum, -tinere...to keep together

*Contra* (adv.)...on the contrary; (prep., with Accus.) against  
*Contraho*, -traxi, -tractum, -trahere...to draw together, to gather  
*contrario*, *E* (adverbial phrase)...on the contrary  
*Convenio*, -veni, -ventum, -venire...to come together. *Condiciones non convenerunt*, terms were not agreed on  
*Conviva*, -ae, m. or f....guest  
*Convoco*, -avi, -atum, -are...to summon, to call together  
*Copia*, -ae, f....abundance. *Copiae*, -arum, pl....supplies, forces  
*Cor*, *cordis*, n....heart  
*Cornelius*, -ii, m....Cornelius, a Roman name  
*Cornu*, -us, n....horn; (of an army) wing  
*Corōna*, -ae, f....garland, crown  
*Corpus*, -ōris, n....the body  
*Corrumpto*, -rūpi, -ruptum, -rumpere...to destroy, to bribe  
*Corruptio*, -onis, f....corruption  
*Cras* (adv.)...to-morrow  
*Crastinus*, -a, -um (adj.)...belonging to to-morrow  
*Credo*, *credidi*, *creditum*, *credere*...to believe (with Dative of person), trust  
*Creo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to appoint, create  
*Creta*, -ae, f....Crete, an island in the Mediterranean  
*Cretensis*, -is, -e (adj.)...belonging to Crete; (m. pl.) Cretans  
*Crux*, *crucis*, f....cross  
*Cum* (prep., with Abl.)...along with; (conj.) when; since  
*Cumae*, -arum, f. pl....Cumae, town near Naples  
*Cunctus*, -a, -um (adj.)...all  
*Cupiditas*, -tatis, f....greed, desire  
*Cupidus*, -a, -um (adj.)...eager  
*Cupio*, -ivi, -itum, -ere...to desire  
*Cupressus*, -i, f....cypress  
*Cur* (adv.)...why; why?  
*Cura*, -ae, f....care, anxiety  
*Curo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to take care of  
*Custodio*, -ire...to guard, watch  
*Cyrenaei*, -orum, m. pl. Cyrenaeans, inhabitants of Cyrene, town in North of Africa

## D

*De* (prep., with Abl.)...from, concerning  
*Debeo*, -ui, -itum, -ere...to owe; (with Infin.) ought: *Debet facere*, he ought to do  
*Debilito*, -avi, -atum, -are...to weaken  
*Decedo*, -cessi, -cessum, -cedere...to go from, to depart, to leave  
*Decem* (num. adj.)...ten  
*Decerno*, -crēvi, *crētum*, -cernere...to contend in battle  
*Declaro*, -avi, -atum, -are...to make plain  
*Decorus*, -a, -um (adj.)...fitting  
*Dedecus*, -ōris, n....disgrace, dishonour

- Dedo, dedidi, deditum, dedere...*to surrender  
*Deduco, -duxi, -ductum, -ducere...*to lead, to conduct  
*Defendo, -fendi, -fensum, -fendere...*to defend  
*Defero, -tuli, -latum, -ferre...*to bring to, to report  
*Deinde* (adv.)...thereafter, then  
*Delecto, -avi, -atum, -are...*to please  
*Delectus, -us, m...*levy (of troops)  
*Deleo, -evi, -etum, -ēre...*to destroy, to blot out  
*Deliciae, -arum, f. pl...*delight, darling  
*Deligo, -legi, -lectum, -ligere...*to choose out  
*Demonstro, -avi, -atum, -are...*to show  
*Dens, -tis, m...*tooth  
*Depono, -posui, -positum, -ponere...*to lay down, to surrender  
*Deproelians, -tis* (adj.)...warring violently  
*Deproma, -prompsi, -promptum, -promere...*to produce, bring forth  
*Deripio, -ripui, -reptum, -ripere...*to tear away  
*Descensus, -ūs, m...*descent  
*Descisco, -scivi, -scitum, -sciscere...*to revolt  
*Desero, -serui, -sertum, -serere...*to desert  
*Desilio, -ui, -sultum, -desilire...*to leap down  
*Desisto, -stiti, -stitum, -sistere...*to cease, to desist from  
*Desperatio, -onis, f...*despair  
*Despero, -avi, -atum, -are...*to despair  
*Detrimentum, -i, n...*loss  
*Deus -i, m...*a god or God. Voc. sing. *deus*, Nom. pl. *dei, dii, di*,  
 Gen. pl. *deum, deorum*, Dat. and Abl. pl. *deis, diis, dis*, Acc. pl.  
*deos*  
*Devinco, -vici, -victum, vincere...*to utterly conquer  
*Dexter, -a, -um* (adj.)...right (that is on the right)  
*Diāna, -ae, f...*Diana, Roman goddess of hunting and of the Moon,  
 etc.  
*Dico, dixi, dictum, dicere...*to say  
*Dictator, -oris, m...*dictator, a single magistrate appointed at Rome  
 in times of danger with almost absolute power  
*Dies, -ei, m. or f. in sing., m. in pl...*a day  
*Difficilis, -e* (adj.)...difficult  
*Difficultas, -tatis, f...*difficulty  
*Digitus, -i, m...*finger  
*Dignitas, -atis, f...*dignity  
*Dilectus, -us, m...*levy (of troops). See *Delectus*  
*Diligentia, -ae, f...*diligence  
*Dimicō, -avi, -atum, -are...*to fight  
*Dimidium, -ii, n...*half  
*Dimitto, -misi, -missum, -mittere...*to let go, to send away, to give up,  
 abandon  
*Discedo, -cessi, -cessum, -cedere...*to depart  
*Disertus, -a, -um* (adj.)...eloquent  
*Disicio, -ieci, -iectum, -icere...*to throw down  
*Dispalor, -atus, -ari* (vb. deponent)...to wander about

- Disputo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to argue  
*Dissideo*, -sēdi, -sessum, -sidēre...to differ, to disagree  
*Dissimilis*, -e (adj.)...unlike, dissimilar  
*Dissolvo*, -solvi, -solutum, -solvere...to melt  
*Diu* (adv.)...long; comparative *diutius*, longer; superlative *diutissime*, longest  
*Diuturnitas*, -tatis, f....length (of time)  
*Divinus*, -a, -um (adj.)...divine, inspired  
*Divus*, -i, m....god  
*Do*, *dedi*, *datum*, *dare*...to give  
*Doceo*, -ui, *doctum*, *docēre*...to teach  
*Dolus*, -i, m....craft, trick  
*Domesticus*, -a, -um (adj.)...internal, civil (lit., belonging to the house)  
*Domina*, -ae, f....mistress  
*Dominus*, -i, m....master, lord  
*Domus*, -us, f....house. *Domum*, homeward. *Domi*, at home, *Domo*, from home  
*Dōnec* (conj.)...until  
*Dōno*, -avi, -atum, -are...to present, to gift, to give  
*Dōnum*, -i, n....gift  
*Dormio*, -ivi, -itum, -ire...to sleep  
*dubie*, *Haud* (adv.)...doubtless, without doubt  
*Dubito*, -avi, -atum, -are...to doubt, to hesitate  
*Dubium*, -i, n....doubt (really neuter of following word)  
*Dubius*, -a, -um (adj.)...doubtful  
*Duco*, *duxi*, *ductum*, *ducere*...to lead  
*Dum* (conj.)...while; until  
*Duplex*, -icis (adj.)...double, twofold  
*Dūrus*, -a, -um (adj.)...hard  
*Dux*, *ducis*, m. or f....leader, chief, general

## E

- E*, *ex* (prep., with Abl.)...out of  
*Ea* (adv.)...by that way (Abl. of *is*, *ea*, *id*)  
*Ecce* !...behold !  
*Efficio*, *effeci*, *effectum*, *efficere*...to bring to pass, to cause  
*Effugio*, *effugi*, *effugium*, *effugere*...to flee, to escape  
*Egenus*, -a, -um (adj.)...needy  
*Ego* (pronoun)...I  
*Egredior*, *egressus*, *egredi*...to go out  
*Elephantus*, -i, m....elephant  
*Emptor*, -oris, m....buyer  
*Emptus*, -a, -um...bought (past participle of *emo*)  
*Enim* (conj.)...for (never first in the sentence)  
*Enumero*, -avi, -atum, -are...to number  
*Eo* (adv.)...thither  
*Eo*, *ivi*, *itum*, *ire*...to go

*Eodem* (adv.)...to the same place. *Eodem unde*, to the same place whence

*Epistola*, -ae, f....letter

*Eques*, -itis, m....horseman; (pl.) cavalry

*Equitatus*, -us, m....cavalry

*Equus*, -i, m....horse

*Erant* (3rd plur., Imperf. Indic. of *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, to be)...they were

*Erat* (3rd sing., Imperf. Indic. of *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, to be)...he was

*Erga* (prep., with Accus.)...towards

*Erro*, -avi, -atum, -are...to wander

*Error*, -ōris, m....mistake, error

*Eryx*, -ycis, m....Eryx, mountain in Sicily

*Esse* (Pres. Infin. of *sum*, *fui*, *esse*)...to be

*Et* (conj.)...and. *Et . . . et*, both . . . and

*Etiā* (adv.)...also, even. *Etiā tum* (adv.)...even then

*Etruria*, -ae, f....Etruria, district of Italy north of Rome

*Etsi* (conj.)...although

*Eumenes*, -is, m . . . Eumenes

*Exardesco*, -arsi, -arsum, -ardescere...to blaze out

*Excedo*, -cessi, cessum, -cedere...to leave, to depart

*Excelsus*, -a, -um (adj.)...lofty

*Excito* or -cio, -civi or -cii, -citum, -cīre...to stir up, to rouse; to summon

*Exerceo*, -ui, -itum, -ere...to exercise, to stir up

*Exercitus*, -us, m....army

*Exhaurio*, -hausi, -haustum, -haurire...to empty, to exhaust

*Exigo*, -egi, -actum, exigere...to demand

*Existimo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to think, to consider

*Exitus*, -us, m....departure; death

*Expedio*, -ivi, -itum, -ire...to release, to set free

*Expello*, -puli, -pulsum, -pellere...to drive out

*Experior*, -pertus, -periri (vb. deponent)...to try, to attempt, to make trial of

*Exploro*, -avi, -atum, -are...to inquire, to find out

*Exposco*, -poposci, —, -poscere...to ask earnestly, to implore

*Expugno*, -avi, -atum, -are...to take by storm, to storm

*Extra* (prep., with Accus.)...outside

*Extrēmo* (adv.)...at last

*Extrēmus*, -a, -um (adj.)...last, farthest

*Exul*, -is, m. or f....exile

## F

*Fabius*, -ii, m....Fabius, a Roman name

*Facies*, -ei, f....appearance

*Facile* (adv.)...easily

*Facilis*, -is, -e (adj.)...easy

*Facio*, fēci, factum, facere...to do, to make

*Factum*, -i, n....deed

## I

- Facultas, -tatis, f....power; (pl.) resources*  
*Falernus, -a, -um (adj.)...Falernian*  
*Falsus, -a, -um (adj.)...false*  
*Fama, -ae, f....report, reputation, glory*  
*Fames, -is, f....hunger, famine*  
*Femina, -ae, f....woman*  
*Fera, -ae, f....wild beast*  
*Fere (adj.)...almost, nearly*  
*Fero, tuli, latum, ferre...to carry, to bring*  
*Ferocia, -ae, f....boldness, ferocity*  
*Ferociter (adv.)...boldly*  
*Ferox, -cis (adj.)...bold, fierce*  
*Ferrum, -i, n....iron*  
*Ferus, -a, -um (adj.)...fierce*  
*Fervidus, -a, -um (adj.)...boiling hot*  
*Fessus, -a, -um (adj.)...tired*  
*Festino, -avi, -atum, -are...to hasten*  
*Fictilis, -is, -e (adj.)...made of earthenware*  
*Fidelis, -e (adj.)...faithful*  
*Fidens, -tis (adj.)...confident. (Really Pres. Partic. of *fido, fisis*,  
*fidere, to trust*)*  
*Fides, -ei, f....trust, good faith*  
*Fiducia, -ae, f....confidence*  
*Filia, -ae, f....daughter*  
*Filius, -ii, m....son*  
*Finis, -is, m....the end*  
*Fio, factus sum, fieri...to be made, to become*  
*Flagitium, -ii, n....disgraceful act, shame, disgrace*  
*Flagro, -avi, -atum, -are...to blaze, to burn*  
*Flamininus, -i, m....Flamininus, a Roman name*  
*Flaminius, -ii, m....Flaminius, a Roman name*  
*Fleo, -evi, -etum, -ere...to weep*  
*Flos, floris, m....flower*  
*Fluctus, -us, m....wave*  
*Flumen, -inis, n....river*  
*Focus, -i, m....hearth*  
*Foederatus, -a, -um (Partic. of *foedero*)...leagued together, allied*  
*Foedus, -eris, n....a treaty*  
*Foedus, -a, -um (adj.)...filthy*  
*Folium, -ii, n....a leaf*  
*Foris, -is, f. (usually in plural)...door, entrance*  
*Formosus, -a, -um (adj.)...beautiful*  
*Fors, fortis, f....chance. Forte (adv.)...by chance*  
*Fortasse (adv.)...perhaps*  
*Fortis, -is, -e (adj.)...brave*  
*Fortitudo, -inis, f....bravery*  
*Fortuito (adv.)...by chance*  
*Fortuna, -ae, f....fortune*  
*Frater, -ris, m....brother*

*Fregellae*, -arum, f....Fregellae, town in Italy  
*Frequens*, -tis (adj.)...frequent  
*Frigus*, -oris, n....cold  
*Frustror*, -atus, -ari...to baffle, to hoodwink  
*Fuga*, -ae, f....flight  
*Fugo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to put to flight  
*Fundamentum*, -i, n....foundation  
*Furius*, -ii, m....Furius, a Roman name

## G

*Gallia*, -ae, f....Gaul, roughly what is now France  
*Gallus*, -i, n....a Gaul  
*Gaudium*, -i, n....joy  
*Gelu*, -us, n....frost  
*Geminus*, -i, m....Geminus, a Roman name  
*Gens*, *gentis*, f....race, family; nation, people  
*Genus*, -eris, n....race, kind  
*Gero*, *gessi*, *gestum*, *gerere*...to carry on, to wage (*bellum*, war)  
*Gloria*, -ae, f....gloria  
*Gortynii*, -orum, m. pl....Gortynii, inhabitants of Gortyna in Crete  
*Gradus*, -us, m....step  
*Graecia*, -ae, f....Greece  
*Graius*, -a, -um (adj.)...Graian  
*Gratia*, -ae, f....favour, popularity. *Gratiae*, -arum, pl....thanks  
*Gratia*...for the sake of  
*Gravis*, -is, -e (adj.)...heavy, severe  
*Gremium*, -i, n....lap  
*Grex*, *gregis*, m....flock  
*Guberno*, -avi, -atum, -are...to govern  
*Gustus*, -us, m....taste

## H

*Habeo*, -ui, -itum, -ere...to have, to hold; to consider  
*Habito*, -avi, -atum, -are...to dwell, to inhabit  
*Hac* (adv.)...by this way (Abl. fem. sing. of *hic*, with *via* understood)  
*Hadrumetum*, -i, n....Hadrumetum, town on north coast of Africa  
*Hamilcar*, -aris, m....Hamilcar  
*Hannibal*, -is, m....Hannibal, son of the former  
*Hasdrubal*, -is, m....Hasdrubal, son-in-law of Hamilcar  
*Haud* (adv.)...not. *Haud dubie*, doubtlessly  
*Hereditas*, -tatis, f....inheritance  
*Hic* (adv.)...here  
*Hic*, *haec*, *hoc* (demonstr. pronoun)...this  
*Hiems*, -emis, f....winter  
*Hinc* (adv.)...hence  
*Hippo*, -onis, m....Hippo, a town in Africa  
*Hispania*, -ae, f....Spain

*Hispanus*, -a, -um (adj.)...Spanish  
*Hoc*, Acc. neut. sing. of *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, this  
*Hodie* (adv.)...to-day  
*Homo*, -inis, m....man  
*Honor*, -oris, m....honour  
*Hora*, -ae, f....hour  
*Horribilis*, -e (adj.)...horrible  
*Hortus*, -i, m....garden  
*Hospes*, -itis, m....guest  
*Hospitium*, -ii, n....friendship  
*Hostia*, -ae, f....victim for sacrifice  
*Hostis*, -is, m....enemy  
*Huc* (adv.)...hither  
*Hujus*, Gen. sing. of *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, this  
*Humilis*, -e (adj.)...humble  
*Humus*, -i, f....ground  
*Hunc*, Acc. masc. sing. of *Hic*, *haec*, *hoc*, this

## I—J

[The most modern texts do not employ the letter "J" at all. "J" may be written for "I", however, before a vowel. In this vocabulary "I" is always used for "J".]

*Iam* (adv.)...now, already  
*Iānuā*, -ae, f....door  
*Ibi* (adv.)...there  
*Idem*, *eadem*, *idem* (pron.)...the same  
*Ideo* (adv.)...for that reason  
*Igitur* (conj.)...therefore  
*Ignoro*, -avi, -atum, -are...to be ignorant  
*Ille*, -a, -ua (pron.)...that  
*Illic* (adv.)...there  
*Illuc* (adv.)...thither  
*Illudo*, -si, -sum, -dere...to mock  
*Illustris*, -is, -e (adj.)...famous  
*Imber*, -bris, m....rain  
*Immitto*, -misi, -misum, -mittere...to let loose at, to discharge against  
*Immolo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to offer up, to sacrifice  
*Impedio*, -ivi, -itum, -ire...to hinder  
*Imperātor*, -ōris, m....commander-in-chief  
*Imperium*, -ii, n....command, order; absolute authority  
*Impero*, -avi, -atum, -are...to give orders, to order  
*Impetro*, -avi, -atum, -are...to obtain a request  
*Imprudenter* (adv.)...imprudently  
*In* (prep.)...(with Abl.) in; (with Acc.) into, against  
*Inanis*, -e (adj.)...empty  
*Incendo*, -cendi, -censum, -cendere...to set on fire, to kindle  
*Incertus*, -a, -um (adj.)...uncertain

- Incipio, -cepi, -ceptum, -ere...*begin  
*Incola, -ae, m. or f....*an inhabitant  
*Inde (adv.)...*thence; (of time) then  
*Indigeo, -ui, —, -ere...*to have need of, to be in want of (with Gen. or Abl.)  
*Induco, -dixi, -ductum, -ducere...*to lead into  
*Ineo, -ii, -itum, -ire...*to enter, to go into, begin  
*Infans, -tis, m. or f....*infant  
*Infero, intuli, illatum, inferre...*to carry into  
*Infestus, -a, -um (adj.)...*hostile  
*Infitior, -atus, -ari...*to deny  
*Infra (prep., with Acc.)...*beneath  
*Ingens, -gentis (adj.)...*huge  
*Inicio, -ieci, -iectum, -icere...*to throw into or upon  
*Inimicus, -a, -um (adj.)...*unfriendly, hostile  
*Initium, -ii, n....*beginning  
*Innocens, -tis (adj.)...*innocent  
*Insciens, -tis (adj.)...*unknowing, ignorant  
*Inscribo, -scripsi, -scriptum, -scribere...*to write on  
*Insidiator, -atus, -ari...*to waylay, to set an ambush (dat.)  
*Inspicio, -spexi, -spectum, -spicere...*to look into, to examine  
*Instituto, -ui, -utum, -uere...*(with Inf.) to resolve, to determine, to begin  
*Insula, -ae, f....*island  
*Integratio, -onis, f....*renewing  
*Intellego, -exi, -ectum, -egere...*to understand. (Sometimes given *intelligo*)  
*Intentus, -a, -um (adj.)...*eager, intent  
*Inter (prep., with Acc.)...*between, among  
*Interea (adv.)...*meanwhile  
*Intereo, -ii, -itum, -ire...*to die, to perish (*inter* and *eo*)  
*Interficio, -feci, -fectum, -ficere...*to slay, to kill  
*Interim (adv.)...*meanwhile  
*Interior, -us (adj., compar. degree)...*inner  
*Intestinus, -a, -um (adj.)...*internal  
*Intimus, -a, -um (adj.)...*inmost  
*Intra (prep., with Acc.)...*inside, within  
*Inutilis, -is, -e (adj.)...*useless  
*Invenio, -vēni, -ventum, -venire...*to come upon, to find  
*Invictus, -a, -um (adj.)...*unconquered  
*Invidia, -ae, f....*envy, jealousy  
*Invideo, -vidi, -visum, -videre...*to envy  
*Involvo, -volvi, -volutum, -volvere...*to wrap up  
*Ira, -ae, f....*anger  
*Ionius, -a, -um (adj.)...*Ionian  
*Irreparabilis, -e (adj.)...*irretrievable  
*Irrideo, -risi, -risum, -ridere...*to laugh at, to mock  
*Is, ea, id (pron.)...*that, he  
*Ita (adv.)...*so

*Italia*, -ae, f....Italy

*Itaque* (conj.)...and so, accordingly

*Itemque* (item, adv., also, and -que, and)...and also

*Iter, itineris*, n....way, road, journey

*Iterum* (adv.)...a second time, again

*Iubeo, iussi, iussum, iubere*...to order

*Iudico, -avi, -atum, -are*...to judge

*Iungo, iunxi, iunctum, iungere*...to join

*Iupiter, Iovis* (*Iovi, Iovem, Iove*)...Jupiter, chief Roman god

*Iuro, -avi, -atum, -are*...to swear

*Ius, iuris*, n....right, law, justice

*Iusiurandum, iurisiurandi*, n....an oath. (*Ius* and *iurandum*, each declined separately)

*Iussum, -i*, n....order

*Iustitia, -ae*, n....justice

*Iuencus, -i*, m....young bullock, steer

## K

[This letter is occasionally used for C.]

*Karthaginiensis, -is, -e* (adj.)...Carthaginian; (pl.) the Carthaginians

*Karthago, -inis*, f....Carthage

## L

*Labor, -oris*, m....toil, work, labour

*Laboro, -are, -avi, -atum*...to work, labour

*Lacertus, -i*, m....arm

*Lacesso, -ivi, -itum, -ere*...to provoke, to challenge

*Lacrima, -ae*, f....tear

*Lacus, -us*, m....lake

*Laetus, -a, -um* (adj.)...happy

*Largitio, -onis*, f....bribery, largesses (gifts of money)

*Large* (adv.)...abundantly

*Late* (adv.)...far and wide

*Laudo, -avi, -atum, -are*...to praise

*Lectica, -ae*, f....litter

*Legatus, -i*, m....ambassador; subordinate officer, lieutenant

*Legio, -onis*, f....legion

*Lenis, -e* (adj.)...soft

*Leniter* (adv.)...quietly

*Lente* (adv.)...slowly

*Leviter* (adv.)...softly

*Lex, legis*, f....law

*Libellus, -i*, m....book

*Libenter* (adv.)...readily

*Libero, -avi, -atum, -are*...to liberate

*Libertas, -atis*, f....liberty

*Lignum*, -i, n....wood  
*Ligures*, -um, m....Ligurians, tribe in North of Italy  
*Littera*, -ae, f....letter  
*Litus*, -oris, n....the shore  
*Locupleto*, -avi, -atum, -are...to enrich  
*Locus*, -i, m....a place, position. *Loca*, -orum, n. pl.  
*Longus*, -a, -um (adj.)...long  
*Longus*, -i, m....Longus, a Roman name  
*Lucanus*, -a, -un...Lucanian, belonging to Lucania, a district of Italy  
*Lumen*, -inis, n....light  
*Luna*, -ae, f....moon  
*Lutatius*, -ii, m....Lutatius, a Roman name  
*Lux*, *lucis*, f....light

## M

*Maestitia*, -ae, f....sadness  
*Maestus*, -a, -um (adj.)...sorrowful  
*Magis* (adv.)...more  
*Magister*, -ri, m....master  
*Magistratus*, -us, m....an officer of state (magistracy)  
*Magnopere* (adv.)...greatly  
*Magnus*, -a, -um (adj.)...great, large  
*Mago*, -onis, m....Mago, a Carthaginian  
*Male* (adv.)...badly  
*Malignus*, -a, -um (adj.)...malignant, spiteful  
*Malo*, *malui*, *malle*...to prefer  
*Malus*, -a, -um (adj.)...bad. *Mala*, -orum, n. pl....ills  
*Mane* (adv.)...in the morning  
*Maneo*, *mansi*, *mansum*, *manēre*...to remain  
*Manus*, -us, f....hand; also a band (of men). *Manus dare*, to yield, to surrender. *Manus conserere*, to join battle  
*Marcellus*, -i, m....Marcellus, a Roman name  
*Marcus*, -i, m....Marcus, a Roman name  
*Mare*, -is, n....the sea  
*Mater*, *matris*, f....mother  
*Matrimonium*, -ii, n....marriage  
*Maximus*, -a, -um (superl., of *magnus*)...greatest  
*Meditor*, -atus, -ari...to ponder, to consider  
*Mēlita*, -ae, f....Malta  
*Mellitus*, -a, -um (adj.)...sweet as honey  
*Memor*, -is (adj.)...mindful  
*Memoria*, -ae, f....memory  
*Memoro*, -avi, -atum, -are...to remind  
*Mens*, *mentis*, f....the mind, the intellect, as opposed to *animus*, the mind as the seat of the feelings. *Mente agitare*, to ponder (to drive about in mind)  
*Mensis*, -is, m....month

*Mentio, -onis, f....*mention  
*Mercenarius, -a, -um (adj.)...*hired, mercenary  
*Meridies, -ei, f....*mid-day  
*Merum, -i, n....*unmixed wine  
*Miles, -itis, m....*soldier  
*Milia, -ium (Dat. and Abl. milibus)...*thousands. *Mille, a thousand*  
*Minor, -us (adj., compar. of parvus)...*less. *Natu minor, younger*  
 (lit., less by birth)  
*Minucius, -ii, m....*Minucius  
*Mirabilis, -e (adj.)...*wonderful  
*Mirifice (adv.)...*wonderfully  
*Miror, -atus, -ari...*to wonder at, to admire  
*Miser, -a, -um (adj.)...*wretched, miserable  
*Mitto, misi, missum, mittere...*to send  
*Modo (adv.)...*only, now  
*Modus, -i, m....*measure, limit, manner  
*Mons, montis, m....*mountain  
*Monstro, -avi, -atum, -are...*to show  
*Morbus, -i, m....*disease  
*Moror, -atus, -ari...*to delay  
*Morosus, -a, -um (adj.)...*fretful, morose  
*Mors, mortis, f....*death  
*Mortuus, -a, -um (adj.)...*dead  
*Mos, moris, m....*custom; (pl.) manners, character  
*Moveo, movi, motum, movēre...*to move  
*Mox (adv.)...*soon  
*Mulier, -is, f....*a woman  
*Multitudo, -inis, f....*crowd, multitude, great number  
*Multo (adv.)...*by much. *Multo post, long after* (lit., after by much)  
*Multus, -a, -um (adj.)...*much, many  
*Munio, -ivi, -itum, -ire...*to fortify. *Munire viam, to make a road*  
*Munus, -eris, n....*a gift; an office  
*Murus, -i, m....*a wall  
*Mus, muris, m. or f....*mouse  
*Muto, -avi, -atum, -are...*to change.

## N

*Nam (conj.)...*for  
*Namque (conj.)...*for  
*Nascor, natus, nasci...*to be born  
*Nasus, -i, m....*nose  
*Natio, -onis, f....*nation, race  
*Nato, -avi, -atum, -are...*to swim  
*Natus, -i, m....*son  
*Naufragium, -ii, n....*shipwreck  
*Nauta, -ae, m....*sailor  
*Nauticus, -a, -um (adj.)...*naval  
*Navalis, -e (adj.)...*nautical, maritime

- Navigatio*, -onis, f....a sailing, a voyage  
*Navigo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to sail, to make a voyage  
*Navis*, -is, f....ship  
*-nē*, interrogative particle, attached to first word in questions (see Lesson XXVIII.)  
*Nē*...In order that . . . not; lest. *Ne* . . . *quidem*...not even  
*Nebula*, -ae, f....cloud  
*Nego*, -avi, -atum, -are...to deny, to say . . . not  
*Nemo*, nullius (*neminen*, *nemini*, *nullo*)...no one  
*Nepos*, -otis, m....descendant  
*Neque*...and not. *Neque* . . . *neque*...neither . . . nor  
*Nescio*, -scivi, -scitum, -scire...not to know, to be ignorant  
*Neuter*, -ra, -rum (adj.)...neither. (Gen. *neutrius*, etc.)  
*Niger*, -gra, -grum (adj.)...black  
*Nihil* (neut. pron. indecl.)...nothing; (used as adv.) in no wise.  
*Nihilo secius*, no otherwise  
*Nil*...to be added to. *Nihil*  
*Nimis* (adv.)...too much  
*Nimius*, -a, -um (adj.)...too much  
*Nisi* (conj.)...unless. *Nisi cum*, save when  
*Niveus*, -a, -um (adj.)...snowy, white  
*Nix*, *nivis*, f....snow  
*Noceo*, -ui, -itum, -ere...to injure (governs Dative case)  
*Noctu* (adv.)...by night  
*Nomen*, -inis, n....name  
*Non* (adv.)...not  
*Non solum* . . . *sed etiam*...not only . . . but also  
*Nonus*, -a, -um (adj.)...ninth  
*Noto*, -avi, -atum, -are...to mark  
*Novem* (numeral adj.)...nine  
*Novus*, -a, -um (adj.)...new  
*Nox*, *noctis*, f....night  
*Nullus*, -a, -um (adj.)...no, no one. (Gen. *nullius*, etc.)  
*Nudus*, -a, -um...bare  
*Num* (particle introducing an indirect question)...whether. (See Lesson XXVIII.)  
*Numerus*, -i, m....number  
*Numida*, -ae, m....a Numidian  
*Nunc* (adv.)...now  
*Nunc tandem* (adv.)...now at length  
*Nunquam* (adv.)...never  
*Nuntio*, -avi, -atum, -are...to announce, to bring a message  
*Nuntius*, -ii, m....a messenger, a message

## O

- Ob* (prep., with Acc.)...on account of, for the sake of  
*Obduco*, -duxi, -ductum, -ducere...to draw over. *Obducta nocte*, night  
 having been drawn over, that is, when night came on

*Obicio, -ieci, -iectum, -icere...* to throw in the way of (Dat. of person)  
*Obitus, -us, m....* death  
*Oblecto, -avi, -atum, -are...* to amuse  
*Obscurus, -a, -um (adj.)...* dark  
*Obses, -idis, m....* hostage  
*Obseido, -sedi, -sessum, -sidere...* to besiege, to blockade, to beset  
*Obtestatio, -onis, f....* request, strong entreaty  
*Obtrectatio, -onis, f....* envious detraction, disparagement  
*Obviam (adv.)...* against (lit., in the way (to)). *Obviam ire*, to go in the way to a person, that is, to meet him  
*Occasio, -onis, f....* chance, opportunity  
*Occido, -cidi, -cisum, -cidere...* to kill, to slay  
*Occupo, -avi, -atum, -are...* to seize, to get possession of  
*Oculus, -i, m....* the eye  
*Odium, -ii, n....* hatred  
*Omen, -inis, n....* omen, forboding  
*Omitto, -misi, -missum, -mittere...* to let go. *Ut omittam*, to pass over (lit., that I may pass over)  
*Omnis, -is, -e (adj.)...* all, every  
*Onus, -eris, n....* burden  
*Opera, -ae, f....* work, labour, care  
*Operio, -ui, -tum, -ire...* to cover  
*Opes, -um, f. pl....* resources, wealth  
*Oppidum, -i, n....* town  
*Oppleo, -evi, -etum, -ere...* to fill up  
*Opprimo, -pressi, -pressum, -primere...* to overwhelm, to suppress  
*Oppugno, -avi, -atum, -are...* to attack  
*Optimus, -a, -um (adj., superl. of bonus, good)...* best  
*Opus, operis, n....* work  
*Orno, -avi, -atum, -are...* to adorn, to equip  
*Oro, -avi, -atum, -are...* to pray  
*Ostendo, -di, -tum, -dere...* to show, to make clear  
*Otium, -ii, n....* ease, peace, repose, leisure

## P

*Padus, -i, m....* Po, large river in the North of Italy  
*Paene (adv.)...* almost, nearly  
*Palam (adv.)...* openly. *Palam facere*, to disclose  
*Par, p̄aris (adj.)...* equal, like  
*Parco, peperci, parsum, parcere...* to spare (governs Dative)  
*Pareo, -ui, -itum, -ere...* to obey (governs Dative)  
*Parens, -tis, m. or f....* parent  
*Parturio, -ire...* to bring forth  
*Paro, -avi, -atum, -are...* to prepare, to make ready, to obtain  
*Parvus, -a, -um (adj.)...* little  
*Passer, -eris, m....* pet bird  
*Passus, -us, m....* a pace (five Roman feet)  
*Pastor, -oris, m....* shepherd

- Patefacio*, -feci, -factum, -facere...to disclose, to open, to make clear  
*Pater*, -ris, m....father  
*Paternus*, -a, -um (adj.)...paternal, belonging to one's father  
*Patria*, -ae, f....fatherland  
*Patronus*, -i, m....patron  
*Patruus*, -i, m....paternal uncle  
*Pauci*, -ae (adj.)...a few, some  
*Paulatim* (adv.)...little by little  
*Paulum* (adv.)...a little. *Paulo*...by a little. *Paulo ante*, a little before  
*Paulus*, -ii, m....Paulus, a Roman name  
*Pax*, p̄acis, f....peace  
*Pecunia*, -ae, f....money  
*Pecus*, -udis, f....cattle  
*Pedester*, -ris, -re (adj.)...on foot. *Pedestres copiae*, infantry  
*Pello*, *pepuli*, *pulsum*, *pellere*...to drive, to expel, to banish, to defeat  
*Pendo*, *pependi*, *pensum*, *pendere*...to weigh out, to pay  
*Penes* (prep., with Acc.)...in the power of  
*Per* (prep., with Acc. of place)...through; also by means of  
*Perago*, -ēgi, -actum, -agere...to carry out, to complete  
*Perduco*, -duxi, -ductum, -ducere...to lead through  
*Pereo*, -ii, -itum, -ire...to perish, to die  
*Perfungor*, -functus, -fungi...to discharge  
*Pergamenus*, -a, -um (adj.)...of or belonging to Pergamum, town of Mysia in Asia  
*Periculum*, -i, n....danger  
*Peritus*, -a, -um (adj.)...skilled in (with Gen.)  
*Permitto*, -misi, -missum, -mittere...to permit, to entrust (something to somebody, Acc. and Dat.), give up, leave  
*Perpetuus*, -a, -um (adj.)...perpetual  
*Persequor*, -secutus, -sequi...to chase, to attack, to follow up  
*Persuadeo*, -suasi, -suasum, -suadere...to persuade  
*Perterreo*, -ui, -itum, -ere...to terrify thoroughly, to frighten  
*Pertinacia*, -ae, f....persistence, obstinacy, stubbornness  
*Pertinax*, -acis, (adj.)...obstinate  
*Pertineo*, -ui, —, -ere...to tend towards. *Quae ad irridendum pertinebant*, what tended towards jeering  
*Pervenio*, -veni, -ventum, -venire...to arrive at, to reach  
*Perverto*, -verti, -versum, -vertēre...to corrupt, to ruin  
*Pes*, *pedis*, m....foot  
*Peto*, -ivi, -itum, -ere...to ask (Acc. and Abl.); to make for, to attack  
*Philippus*, -i, m....Philip  
*Pictus*, -a, -um (adj.)...painted, coloured  
*Pignus*, -oris, n....pledge  
*Pipilo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to chirp  
*Placidus*, -a, -um (adj.)...peaceful  
*Plenus*, -a, -um (adj.)...full  
*Plumbum*, -i, n....lead

- Plurimus*, -a, -um (adj., superl. of *multus*)...most; (pl.) very many  
*Plus*, *pluris* (adj., pl. *plures*, *plura*, *plurimum*, *pluribus*)...more  
*Poena*, -ae, f....penalty, punishment  
*Poenicus*, -a, -um (adj.)...Punic, Carthaginian  
*Poenus*, -a, -um (adj.)...Carthaginian  
*Poëta*, -ae, m....poet  
*Polliceor*, -itus, -eri...to promise  
*Pompeius*, -i, m....Pompey, a Roman name  
*Pono*, *posui*, *positum*, *ponere*...to place  
*Pontus*, -i, m....the Black Sea  
*Populus*, -i, m....the people  
*Porto*, -avi, -atum, -are...to carry  
*Possum*, *potui*, *posse*...to be able  
*Post* (prep., with Acc.)...after  
*Postea* (adv.)...afterwards, after that  
*Posteaquam* (conj.)...after that, after  
*Posterus*, -a, -um (adj.)...following, next. *Postremo* (adv.)...at last  
*Postilla* (adv.)...afterwards  
*Postquam* (conj.)...after that, after  
*Postridie* (adv.)...on the day after, on the next day  
*Postulo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to demand  
*Potens*, -tis (adj.)...powerful  
*Potestas*, -tatis, f....power  
*Potissimum* (superl. adv.)...especially, chiefly  
*Potius* (adv.)...rather  
*Praebeat*, -ui, -itum, -ere...to furnish, to supply, offer  
*Praeceptum*, -i, n....precept, advice, warning, command  
*Praecipio*, -cepi, -ceptum, -cipere...to enjoin upon, to command  
*Praefectus*, -i, m....commander, governor  
*Praemium*, -ii, n....reward  
*Praenomen*, -inis, n....the first name of a Roman (like our Christian name)  
*Praesens*, -tis (adj.)...present  
*Praesidium*, -ii, n....defence, help, garrison; (pl.) forces  
*Praesto*, -stiti, -stitum or -statum, -stare...to excel  
*Praesum*, -fui, -esse...to be at the head of, to be in command  
*Praeter* (prep., with Acc.)...besides  
*Praeterea* (adv.)...besides  
*Praetor*, -oris, m....Praetor (see Note on Passage No. 13)  
*Pratum*, -i, n....meadow  
*Premo*, *pressi*, *pressum*, *premere*...to press, to press hard  
*Prima luce* (adv.)...at dawn  
*Primo* (adv.)...at first  
*Primus*, -a, -um (adj.)...first  
*Princeps*, -ipis (adj. or noun)...chief; first  
*Pristinus*, -a, -um (adj.)...former, early  
*Priusquam* (conj.)...before that, before  
*Probo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to approve  
*Probus*, -a, -um (adj.)...honest

- Prōditor, -oris, m....* betrayer  
*Prodo, -didi, -ditum, -dēre...* to hand down; to betray  
*Prōdūco, -dūxi, -ductum, -ducēre...* to bring forward, to lead forth  
*Proelium, -ii, n....* battle  
*Profecto (adv.)...* assuredly  
*Proficiscor, -fectus, -fiscisci (depon. verb.)...* to set out, to depart  
*Profiteor, -fessus, -fiteri...* to confess, to profess  
*Profligo, -avi, -atum, -are...* to overthrow, to conquer  
*Profugio, -fugi, -fugitum, -fugēre...* to flee  
*Prohibeo, -ui, -itum, -ere...* to prevent, to hinder  
*Promitto, -misi, -missum, promittere...* to promise  
*Propago, -avi, -atum, -are...* to extend  
*Propatulum, -i, n....* an open place before the house, outer court  
*Prope (adv.)...* almost, near  
*Propere (adv.)...* hastily  
*Propero, -avi, -atum, -are...* to hurry  
*Propinquus, -a, -um (adj.)...* neighbouring, near  
*Proptius (adv., with Dat.)...* nearer. *Proptius Tiberi*, nearer the Tiber  
*Propter (prep., with Acc.)...* on account of  
*Prospicio, -spexi, -spectum, -spicere...* to spy, to look out and see  
*Provide, -vidi, -visum, -videre...* to provide, to take thought beforehand  
*Providus, -a, -um (adj.)...* foreseeing, prudent  
*Provincia, -ae, f....* province  
*Proximus, -a, -um (adj.)...* nearest, next  
*Prudentia, -ae, f....* prudence, forethought, skill  
*Prusia, -ae, m....* Prusia (Nominative sometimes *Prusias*)  
*Publice (adv.)...* in the name of the State  
*Publico, -avi, -atum, -are...* to confiscate, to make public property  
*Publicus, -a, -um (adj.)...* belonging to the State, public  
*Publius, -ii, m....* Publius, a Roman name  
*Puella, -ae, f....* girl  
*Puerulus, -i, m....* little boy  
*Pugio, -onis, m....* dagger  
*Pugna, -ae, f....* battle, fight  
*Pugno, -avi, -atum, -are...* to fight  
*Pulcher, -ra, -rum (adj.)...* beautiful  
*Pulso, -avi, -atum, -are...* to strike  
*Punicus, -a, -um (adj.)...* Carthaginian. (Same as *Poenicus*)  
*Puppis, -is, f....* stern (of a ship)  
*Puto, -avi, -atum, -are...* to think, to suppose (but "thinking" = *ratus*, not *putans*)

## Q

- Qua (adv.)...* where, by which way  
*Quacunque (adv.)...* wheresoever  
*Quaero, quaesivi, quaesitum, quaerere...* to ask (a question)

- Quam*, Acc. fem. sing. of *Qui, quae, quod*, which  
*Quam* (adv. with adj.)...how. *Tam . . . quam*, so . . . as; (with superl.) as . . . as possible. *Quam plurimi*, as many as possible  
*Quamdiu* (adv.)...how long, as long as  
*Quando* (adv.)...when  
*Quantus, -a, -um* (adj.)...how great  
*Quare* (conj.)...wherefore, why, for which reason  
*-que*...and  
*Qui, quae, quod* (rel. pron.)...who, which, etc. *Qua* is used for *quae* = any  
*Quia* (conj.)...because  
*Quidam, quaedam, quoddam* (subs. *quiddam*) (pron.)...a certain person or thing  
*Quidem* (adv.)...indeed, even  
*Quin* (conj.)...but that. (See Lesson XXVII.)  
*Quinques* (numeral adverb)...five times  
*Quintius, -ii, m.*...Quintius, a Roman name  
*Quintus, -i, m.*...Quintus, a Roman name  
*Quis, m., f., quid, n.* (inter. pron.)...who? which? also, after *si, ne* = anyone, anything. (In other cases this is like *qui*)  
*Quisquam, quicquam* (pron.)...anyone, anything  
*Quisque, quaque, quodque* (subs. *quidque*) (pron.)...each, every  
*Quisquis* (pron.)...whoever  
*Quisnam, quidnam*...who in the world. (*Quis* and *nam*)  
*Quod* (conj.)...because  
*Quod* (rel. pron., neut.)...which. *Quod nisi*, but unless (as to which if not)  
*Quoque* (adv.)...also  
*Quot* (indeclinable pron.)...how many  
*Quotannis* (adv.)...every year  
*Quotiescumque* (adv.)...as often as ever  
*Quum* (conj.)...when, since. (Also written *cum*)

## R

- Ratio, -onis, f.*...reason, plan, method  
*Recipio, -cepi, -ceptum, -cipere*...to recover, to receive back. *Se recipere*, to retreat  
*Recupero, -avi, -atum, -are*...to recover  
*Recuso, -avi, -atum, -are*...to refuse  
*Reddo, reddidi, redditum, reddere*...to give back, to restore  
*Redeo, -ii, -itum, -ire*...to return  
*Reficio, -feci, -fectum, -ficere*...to repair, to restore, to refresh  
*Regio, -onis, f.*...region, district  
*Regnum, -i, n.*...kingdom  
*Regulus, -i, m.*...Regulus, a famous Roman  
*Religio, -onis, f.*...religion, superstition  
*Relinquo, -liqui, -lictum, -linquere*...to leave behind, to forsake  
*Reliquus, -a, -um* (adj.)...left, remaining

*Remitto, -misi, -misum, -mittere...* to send back  
*Removeo, -movi, -motum, -movere...* to remove, to keep away (trans.)  
*Renovo, -avi, -atum, -are...* to renew  
*Renuntio, -avi, -atum, -are...* to bring back word  
*Reor, ratus, veri* (deponent vb.)...to think. *Ratus*, thinking  
*Repente* (adv.)...suddenly  
*Reptinus, -a, -um* (adj.)...sudden  
*Reperio, repperi (rēperi), repertum, reperire...* to find, to discover  
*Repo, repsi, reptum, repere...* to creep, to crawl  
*Repōno, -posui, -positum, -pōnere...* to put back, to lay up for safety  
*Requiesco, -quievi, -quietum, -quiescere...* to rest  
*Requiro, -ere...* to require  
*Res, rei, f....* a thing, affair, matter  
*Rescisco, -scivi, -scitum, -sciscere...* to get to know, to ascertain  
*Resisto, -stiti, -stitum, -sistere...* to resist (with Dat. case)  
*Respondeo, -spondi, -sponsum, -spondere...* to reply  
*Responsum, -i, n....* a reply  
*Respublica, reipublicae, f....* the State. (*Res* and *publica*)  
*Restituo, -ui, -utum, -ēre...* to restore, to give back  
*Retineo, -inui, -entum, -inere...* to hold back; to retain, to preserve  
*Revertor, -versus, -verti...* to return  
*Revoco, -avi, -atum, -are...* to recall  
*Rex, regis, m....* king  
*Rhodānus, -i, m....* the river Rhône, in France  
*Risus, -us, m....* laughter  
*Robustus, -a, -um* (adj.)...strong, vigorous  
*Rogo, -avi, -atum, -are...* to ask  
*Roma, -ae, f....* Rome, capital of Italy and of Roman Empire  
*Romānus, -a, -um* (adj.)...Roman  
*Ruber, -ra, -rum* (adj.)...red  
*Rufus, -i, m....* Rufus, a Roman name  
*Rumor, -oris, m....* rumour  
*Rursus* (adv.)...again  
*Rus, ruris, n....* country, country estate

## S

*Sacrifico, -avi, -atum, -are...* to sacrifice, (trans. and intrans.) to offer up  
*Saepe* (adv.)...often  
*Saevus, -a, -um* (adj.)...savage, fierce  
*Saltus, -us, m....* defile, pass  
*Salus, -ūtis, f....* safety  
*Saluto, -avi, -atum, -are...* to greet  
*Sanitas, -atis, f....* health  
*Sanus, -a, -um* (adj.)...healthy  
*Sapiens, -tis* (adj.)...wise  
*Sapientia, -ae, f....* wisdom  
*Sarmentia, -orum, n. pl....* twigs, brushwood

- Satis* (adv.)...enough, sufficient  
*Saucius, -a, -um* (adj.)...wounded  
*Scapha, -ae, f....*a light rowing boat  
*Sceleratus, -a, -um* (adj.)...wicked  
*Scilicet* (adv.)...doubtless, of course. (*Scire licet*, it is permitted to know, you may know)  
*Scio, scivi, scitum, scire...*to know  
*Scipio, -onis, m....*Scipio, a famous Roman  
*Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, scribere...*to write  
*Se, sese* (Acc. of the reflexive pronoun)...himself, etc. (See Lesson XIV.)  
*Secundus, -a, -um* (adj.)...second; favourable  
*Sed* (conj.)...but. *Sed etiam*, but also  
*Segrego, -avi, -atum, -are...*to separate  
*Seiungo, -iunxi, -iunctum, -iungere...*to separate  
*Semel* (adv.)...once  
*Semper* (adv.)...always  
*Senatus, -us, m....*senate (the supreme council of nobles at Rome).  
*Senatum dare*, to give audience of the senate. *Senatusconsultum*, a decree of the senate  
*Senectus, -utis, f....*old age  
*Sententia, -ae, f....*opinion, vote, decision  
*Septem...*seven  
*Septuagesimus, -a, -um* (ordinal numeral adj.)...seventieth  
*Serpens, -tis, f....*serpent  
*Serus, -a, -um* (adj.)...late  
*Servator, -oris, m....*saviour  
*Servilius, -ii, m....*Servilius, a Roman name  
*Servio, -ivi, -itum, -ire...*to serve  
*Servulus, -i, m....*a little slave  
*Servus, -i, m....*a slave  
*Severus, -a, -um* (adj.)...severe, stern  
*Si* (conj.)...if  
*Sic* (adv.)...so  
*Sicilia, -ae, f....*Sicily  
*Sidus, -eris, n....*star  
*Signum, -i, n....*signal; standard  
*Silens, silentis* (adj.)...silent  
*Silva, -ae, f....*wood  
*Simul* (adv.)...at the same time. *Simul atque*, as soon as  
*Simulo, -avi, -atum, -are...*to pretend  
*Sine* (prep., with Abl. case)...without  
*Sinus, -s, m....*fold, bosom  
*Societas, -atis, f....*alliance  
*Sol, solis, m....*sun  
*Solatium, -ie, n....*solace  
*Solitudo, -inis, f....*solitude  
*Solitus, -a, -um* (adj.)...usual, customary  
*Solum* (adv.)...only

- Solus*, -a, -um (adj.)...alone  
*Solvo*, *solvi*, *solutum*, *solvere*...to loosen, solve  
*Somnus*, -i, m....sleep  
*Specto*, -avi, -atum, -are...to look at, to behold  
*Spero*, -avi, -atum, -are...to hope, to hope for  
*Spes*, *spei*, f....hope  
*Splendor*, -oris, m....splendour  
*Stella*, -ae, f....star  
*Statim* (adv.)...at once  
*Statua*, -ae, f....statue  
*Statuo*, -ui, -utum, -ere...to resolve, to determine; to establish  
*Sto*, *steti*, *statum*, *stare*...to stand  
*Studium*, -ii, n....zeal, desire, eagerness, study  
*Stulte* (adv.)...foolishly  
*Stultus*, -a, -um (adj.)...stupid  
*Subigo*, -egi, -actum, -igere...to subdue  
*Subito* (adv.)...suddenly  
*Successus*, -us, m....success  
*Succumbo*, -cubui, -cubitum, -cumbere...to lie prostrate  
*Sufficio*, *feci*, -fectum, -ficere...to choose in the place of any one  
*Sulpicius*, -ii, m....Sulpicius, a Roman name  
*Sum*, *fui*, *esse*...to be  
*Summa*, -ae, f....the sum, the whole amount. *Summa imperii*, the supreme authority  
*Summus*, -a, -um (adj., superl. degree of *superus*)...highest, greatest  
*Sumo*, *sumpsi*, *sumptum*, *sumere*...to take  
*Sumptus*, -us, m....expense  
*Sunt* (third pers. plur. Pres. Indic. of *sum*)...they are  
*Superior*, -us (compar. of *superus*)...(1) higher; (2) victorious; (3) former  
*Supero*, -avi, -atum, -are...to overcome, to defeat  
*Superus*, -a, -um (adj.)...upper  
*Supra* (adv.)...above. Also Prep., with Acc. case  
*Suscipio*, -cepi, -ceptum, -cipere...to undertake  
*Suscito*, -avi, -atum, -are...to arouse  
*Suspicio*, -spexi, -spectum, -spicere...to look up at, to admire  
*Sustineo*, -inui, -entum, -inere...to endure, to sustain  
*Susurrus*, -i, m....whispering  
*Suus*, -a, -um...his own, her own, its own, etc. (referring to subject of sentence)  
*Syracusae*, -arum, f. pl....Syracuse, largest town in Sicily  
*Syria*, -ae, f....Syria, region of Asia Minor

## T

- Tabellarius*, -ii, m....letter-carrier, messenger  
*Taceo*, -ui, -itum, -ere...to be silent  
*Talis*, -e (adj.)...such, of such a kind

- Tam* (adv.)...so, to such a degree  
*Tamdiu* (adv.)...so long  
*Tamen* (adv.)...nevertheless, however  
*Tandem* (adv.)...at length. *Nunc tandem*, now at length  
*Tanquam* (adv.)...as if  
*Tantum* (adv.)...only (see *Modo*)  
*Tantus, -a, -um* (adj.)...so great  
*Tellus, -uris, f.*...earth  
*Templum, -i, n.*...temple  
*Tempus, -oris, n.*...time  
*Tenebricosus, -a, -um* (adj.)...dark, gloomy  
*Teneo, tenui, tentum, tenere*...to hold  
*Ter* (numeral adverb)...thrice  
*Terentius, -ii, m.*...Terentius, Roman name  
*Terra, -ae, f.*...land. *Terra marique*, by sea and land. (Note the Latin order)  
*Terror, -oris, m.*...terror, fear, panic  
*Tertio* (adv.)...thirdly, for the third time  
*Tertius, -a, -um* (ordinal numeral adj.)...third  
*Thermopylae, -arum, f. pl.*...Thermopylae, a pass in Greece  
*Tiber, -eris, m.*...Tiber  
*Tiberius, -ii, m.*...Tiberius, a Roman name  
*Tibi* (dat. of *Tu*, thou)...to you  
*Timeo, -ui, —, -ere*...to fear, to be afraid of  
*Tollo, sustuli, sublatum, tollere*...to take away, to remove, to destroy  
*Tot* (indecl. pronoun)...so many  
*Tōtus, -a, -um* (adj.)...whole  
*Trādo, tradidi, traditum, tradēre*...to hand over, to surrender  
*Trāduco, -dixi, ductum, -ducere*...to lead across  
*Transeō, -ii, -itum, -ire*...to cross  
*Transitus, -us, m.*...passage across  
*Trasumenus, -i, m.*...Lake Trasumenus, in Etruria  
*Trebia, -ae, f.*...Trebia, tributary of the Po  
*Trecenti, -ae, -a* (numeral adj.)...three hundred  
*Tres, tria* (numeral adj.)...three  
*Triennium, -ii, n.*...period of three years  
*Triumphans, -tis* (adj.)...triumphant  
*Tum* (adv.)...then, at that time. *Tum quidem* (adv.)...then indeed, just then  
*Tumulus, -i, m.*...tomb  
*Turba, -ae, f.*...crowd  
*Turgidus, -a, -um* (adj.)...swollen  
*Tuus, -a, -um*...thy or thine, your

## U

- Ubi* (conj.)...where; when  
*Ullus, -a, -um* (Gen. *ullius*)...any (after a negative)  
*Umbra, -ae, f.*...shade

*Umbrosus, -a, -um* (adj.)...shady  
*Unde* (conj.)...whence  
*Undique* (adv.)...from every side, on every side  
*Univrsus, -a, -um* (adj.)...whole, entire; (pl.) all together  
*Unquam* (adv.)...ever. (When "ever" equals "always" use *semper*)  
*Unus, -a, -um* (numeral adj.)...one  
*Urbs, urbis, f.*...city  
*Usque* (adv.)...ever, right on. *Usque ad*, right up to (the time of)  
*Usus, -us, m.*...use, experience. *Usu venire*, to actually happen  
*Ut* (adv.)...as; (conj.) when; so that, in order that; that  
*Uter, utra, utrum*...which of two?  
*Uterque, utraque, utrumque*...each of two  
*Utica, -ae, f.*...Utica, town in Africa  
*Utor, usus, uti*...to use (with Ablative case)  
*Utpote* (adv.)...namely, as being  
*Utrōbique* (adv.)...on both sides, on both elements (sea and land)  
*Uvidus, -a, -um* (adj.)...damp  
*Uxor, -oris, f.*...wife

## V

*Vacuus, -a, -um*...empty  
*Vado, -ere*...to go  
*Vae!* (exclam.)...alas!  
*Valens, -tis* (partic. pres. of *valeo*)...strong. *Valentissimus* (superl.)  
 strongest  
*Valeo, -ui, —, -ere*...to be strong. *Vale, valete* (imperative)...fare-  
 well!  
*Valetudo, -inis, f.*...health; bad health, illness  
*Vallis, -is, f.*...valley  
*Vallum, -i, n.*...rampart  
*Varius, -a, -um* (adj.)...manifold, various  
*Vas, vasis, n.*...vessel, dish. (Plur., *vasa, -orum, -is*, irregular)  
*Vectigal, -alis, n.*...tax, tribute  
*Veho, vxi, vectum, vehere*...to carry  
*Vel . . . vel*...either . . . or. *Vel*...even  
*Velo, -avi, -atum, -are*...to cover, veil  
*Velociter* (adv.)...swiftly  
*Velum, -i, n.*...sail  
*Velut* (adv.)...even as, as  
*Vendo, vendidi, venditum, vendere*...to sell  
*Venenatus, -a, -um* (partic. of *veneno*)...poisoned  
*Veneno, -avi, -atum, -are*...to poison  
*Venenum, -i, n.*...poison  
*Venio, veni, ventum, venire*...to come  
*Ventus, -i, m.*...the wind  
*Venus, -eris, f.*...goddess of love, love  
*Venusia, -ae, f.*...Venusia, town in Italy

- Verbum*, -i, n....word  
*Vereor*, -itus, -eri...to fear; to reverence  
*Veritas*, -atis, f....truth  
*Verto*, *verti*, *versum*, *vertĕre*...to turn  
*Verus*, -a, -um (adj.)...true  
*Vester*, -ra, -rum (adj.)...your own, your (referring to more than one)  
*Veto*, -avi, -atum, -are...to forbid  
*Vetus*, -eris (adj.)...old  
*Vetustus*, -a, -um (adj.)...old  
*Vexo*, -avi, -atum, -are...to harass  
*Vicesimus*, -a, -um (ordinal numeral adj.)...twentieth  
*Victor*, -oris, m....conqueror  
*Victoria*, -ae, f....victory  
*Video*, *vidi*, *visum*, *videre*...to see. *Videtur*, it seems  
*Vinco*, *vici*, *victum*, *vincere*...to conquer  
*Vinum*, -i, n....wine  
*Viol*, -avi, -atum, -are...to break, to violate. *Violare legem*, to break a law  
*Vir*, -i, m....a man  
*Virco*, -ere...to be green, vigorous  
*Virgo*, -inis, f....virgin  
*Virtus*, -utis, f....bravery, manliness, virtue  
*Vis* (Acc. *vim*, Abl. *vi*; Plur., *vires*, *virium*, *viribus*), f....strength  
*Visus*, -us, m....sight, appearance  
*Vita*, -ae, f....life. (Do not use plural in this sense: *vitae* means "biographies")  
*Vito*, -avi, -atum, -are...to avoid  
*Vivo*, *vixi*, *victum*, *vivere*...to live  
*Vivus*, -a, -um (adj.)...living, alive  
*Vix* (adv.)...scarcely  
*Volo*, *volui*, *velle*...to be willing, to wish  
*Volucris*, -s, f....bird  
*Voluntas*, -atis, f....will, wish, desire

## Z

*Zama*, -ae, f....Zama, a town in Africa, near Carthage

## POSTSCRIPT TO THE READER

### The Next Step

You have been reading or looking at one of the Teach Yourself Books published by the English Universities Press, and, in so doing, you are one of a good company.

Between two and three million Teach Yourself Books have been bought and used and this figure would be many times greater if there had been no paper rationing to restrict their output. The number of men and women who have the urge and imagination to strive for the full employment of their own lives has never been greater than it is today and they know that the Teach Yourself Books can and do help them to reach that goal. From the very start, ten years ago, this series of books has been designed for that one purpose.

In practice we have learned from the thousands of letters we have received, that they are bought and used for one of the following purposes.

(1) *As a primary text book on an examination subject.* A large number have actually been adopted for classroom use in schools and colleges.

(2) *As an additional book on an examination subject, to supplement class-room instruction.* Time and again we have had letters from students who have at last been able to clarify their minds about some point which their own teachers could never get across to them.

(3) *As a revision text book on a subject which is supposed to be known already but on which the student feels shaky.* This occurs most frequently in the case of those who have to return to examinations after a period of unacademic work such as the call-up period with the forces or a false start in uncongenial employment.

(4) *As an introduction to a new examination subject for an adult student.* More gainful employment is often only to be had after the open competition of a further examination.

(5) *As a text book on the actual job on which a man or woman is employed.* In spite of all the criticism of present-

day workmanship and desire for work, a great many men and women are prepared to spend time and trouble in order to learn how to do their own job more efficiently.

(6) *In order to learn a language.* The motives may be business necessity, or to get the most out of a holiday abroad (when it is possible), or purely cultural or for an examination.

(7) *As part of a self-imposed task of further education.* Men and women in all parts of the world are striving to better themselves. Again the motives can be very varied and none of them is bad. The most common is based on the very true belief that continued education will help a man to earn more money. Another springs from the unadulterated desire for more knowledge so as to be able to take a greater interest in the day to day events at home or in the outside world.

(8) *For pure enjoyment and recreation.* It is almost impossible to say where the dividing lines are between sports, pastimes, recreation and hobbies. A stranger might think that football, cricket, football pools and betting generally are the only pastimes of the British nation. But he would be very wrong. Present-day restrictions, shorter working hours and less easily obtainable entertainment have combined to make one of the outstanding features of these post-war years the enormous increase in the time given to worth-while hobbies. The hobby may be carpentry or needlework or cooking or gardening; but it might equally well be a study of philosophy or a particular period in history or calculus or a language.

Which of these eight purposes has prompted you to interest yourself in a Teach Yourself Book? Or have you a ninth which you could tell us about? There needs to be a very close association between those who write and those who read these books, so your comments can be of great value to us. Anyone who is prepared to give his precious time and energy to self education deserves to have only the best and most useful books.

We have found the teachers who can see what is wanted and put it down on paper. The authors of the Teach Yourself Books are nearly all in the teaching profession themselves. And they are faithful to their profession. There is no easy way round to the goal of knowledge, but

the search after knowledge can always be made interesting by a teacher who is in tune with his pupils. That is another reason why we are always interested to hear from readers who have genuinely worked through any of the Teach Yourself Books. Suggestions for improvement, notification of printing errors, plain criticism, straightforward appreciation are all equally welcome.

In the pages that follow, we print a complete range of books in the series at the present time. At any given moment many of them are temporarily out of stock, but we are reprinting them *all* as quickly as the paper supply permits, completely revising them where necessary in the light of the best criticism. And there are many new titles planned for the future.

The most sure and certain way of getting a copy of the book you want, if it is temporarily out of stock, is to give a firm order to your bookseller who will supply it as soon as the new edition becomes available.

---

## LANGUAGES

These courses have been enormously successful and are of proved efficiency. The general idea of them (though this has to vary occasionally) is to enable the student to learn the language without any help other than that which the individual books provide.

Pronunciation—Grammar—Vocabulary—Exercises and a Key are in nearly every case fully presented. Each lesson is carefully regulated to the average student's capacity—and often there is both wit and wisdom to be found there!

The languages taught are:

ARABIC	A. S. TRITTON, D.LITT.
CHINESE	H. R. WILLIAMSON, M.A., B.D., D.LITT. (7/6 <i>net</i> )
DUTCH	H. KOOLHOVEN
ENGLISH GRAMMAR	GORDON HUMPHREYS, M.A.
FRENCH	
SIR J. ADAMS, M.A., LL.D., and NORMAN SCARLYN WILSON, M.A.	
EVERYDAY FRENCH	NORMAN SCARLYN WILSON, M.A.
GERMAN	SIR J. ADAMS, M.A., LL.D.
MORE GERMAN	SYDNEY W. WELLS, B.A.

*Each Book costs 4/6 net except where otherwise noted*

## LANGUAGES (*continued*)

GREEK F. KINCHIN SMITH, M.A., and T. W. MELLUISH, M.A.  
ITALIAN

KATHLEEN SPEIGHT, M.A., M.LITT., DOTT.LETT. (FLORENCE)

LATIN W. A. EDWARD, M.A.

*Completely revised by K. KINCHIN SMITH, M.A.*

NORWEGIAN

I. MARM, CAND.PHILOL., and A. SOMMERFELT, D.ES.L., D.LITT.

PORTUGUESE J. W. BARKER, M.A., PH.D.

RUSSIAN MAXIMILIAN FOURMAN, LL.B., F.I.L.

SPANISH NORMAN SCARLYN WILSON, M.A.

SWEDISH R. J. MCCLEAN, M.A., D.PHIL.

Other Language Courses coming, which you can order now, are :

HINDUSTANI

T. GRAHAME BAILEY, D.LITT., and J. R. FIRTH, M.A.

MALAY M. B. LEWIS, M.A. (7/6 net)

POLISH MARY CORBRIDGE, PH.D.

*Each Book costs 4/6 net except where otherwise noted*

## MATHEMATICS

There are six volumes ready so far, five covering separate special subjects. The first volume is a general one covering basic arithmetic. It is called :

TEACH YOURSELF MATHEMATICS

JOHN DAVIDSON, M.A., and E. T. MOORE, M.A.

The other five volumes are written by Mr. Percy Abbott, one of the greatest "maths" teachers of our day. Mr. Abbott was formerly head of the Mathematics Department and Headmaster of the Secondary School, The Polytechnic, Regent Street, London, W.1. Mr. Abbott teaches you :

ALGEBRA

GEOMETRY

MECHANICS

TRIGONOMETRY

CALCULUS

## ECONOMICS AND BUSINESS

In this wide and important field of education five basic subjects are already provided. They are :

SHORTHAND

THE GREGG SYSTEM

Taught by ERNEST W. CROCKETT and F. ADDINGTON SYMONDS

*Each Book costs 4/6 net*

TYPEWRITING  
SALESMANSHIP  
BOOK-KEEPING  
ECONOMICS  
PITMAN'S SHORTHAND

PITMAN'S COLLEGE  
S. A. WILLIAMS, M.A.  
DONALD COUSINS, B.COM., A.C.A.  
S. EVELYN THOMAS, B.COM., PH.D.(LOND.), F.C.S.I.  
PITMAN'S COLLEGE

Other subjects for which courses are in preparation and which you can order now are :

BUSINESS ORGANISATION

F. J. WRIGHT, M.SC.(ECON.), B.COM.(LOND.)

COMMERCIAL LAW

PITMAN'S COLLEGE

SECRETARIAL PRACTICE

PITMAN'S COLLEGE

and for every office desk we usually have in print :

THE E.U.P. READY RECKONER

COMMERCIAL ARITHMETIC

J. H. HARVEY, B.COM.

*Each Book costs 4/6 net*

## THE SCIENCES

In this field of study, which is wide and diverse, the Home Student will find the English Universities Press provides clear lessons, equivalent to a complete introductory course, in :

BIOLOGY MARY E. PHILLIPS, B.SC., and L. E. COX, B.SC., F.L.S.

CHEMISTRY

JAMES KNIGHT, M.A., B.SC., and G. BRUCE MACALPINE, B.SC.

GEOLOGY

A. RAISTRICK, M.SC., PH.D., M.I.MIN.E.

PHYSICS

W. RAILSTON, M.SC., PH.D., F.INST.P.

PSYCHOLOGY

W. E. SARGENT, M.A., B.D., PH.D.

PHYSIOLOGY

DAVID LE VAY, M.S., F.R.C.S.

PHILOSOPHY

C. E. M. JOAD, M.A., D.LITT.

METEOROLOGY

" AEOLUS "

ANATOMY

DAVID LE VAY, M.S., F.R.C.S.

FLYING

NIGEL TANGYE

ELECTRICITY

C. W. WILMAN, M.I.E.E.

and in due course, among other subjects, you will be able to Teach Yourself :

ARCHAEOLOGY

ASTRONOMY

*Each Book costs 4/6 net and is well illustrated*

# 

This section of the "Teach Yourself" scheme is one of the most popular. Each book is designed to impart a sound, practical working knowledge. The subjects dealt with are :

DRESSMAKING	I. HORNER
COOKING	EVELYNE WHITE and JESSIE R. WATSON
EMBROIDERY	MARY THOMAS
HOUSEHOLD ELECTRICITY	CAROLINE HASLETT, D.B.E., COMP.I.E.E.
GARDENING	R. SUDELL, A.R.H.S.
PHOTOGRAPHY	STANLEY W. BOWLER, F.R.P.S., F.R.S.A.
BEE-KEEPING	A. N. SCHOFIELD, LL.M.
CARPENTRY	CHARLES H. HAYWARD

together with an invaluable friend-in-need :

THE E.U.P. HOUSEHOLD DOCTOR

*Each Book costs 4/6 net and is well illustrated*

## 

Some *Foundation Books* and some books on Special Subjects any one of which may help you in your chosen career :

THE STUDENT'S GUIDE	SIR JOHN ADAMS, M.A., LL.D.
TEACH YOURSELF TO STUDY	G. G. NEILL WRIGHT, M.A., B.ED., D.LITT.
TEACH YOURSELF TO SPELL	KATHLEEN D. BARON, B.A.
TEACH YOURSELF TO THINK	R. W. JEPSON, M.A.
TEACH YOURSELF TO EXPRESS YOURSELF	R. W. JEPSON, M.A.
TEACH YOURSELF GOOD ENGLISH	G. H. THORNTON, M.A., and KATHLEEN BARON, B.A.
TEACH YOURSELF TO WRITE	KATHLEEN BETTERTON, B.A.
TEACH YOURSELF PUBLIC SPEAKING	PETER WESTLAND
THE E.U.P. SPEAKER AND DEBATER	
BELL'S STANDARD ELOCUTIONIST	
TEACH YOURSELF GEOGRAPHY	J. C. KINGSLAND, B.A., and W. B. CORNISH, B.A.
TEACH YOURSELF TO TEACH	L. WILKES, M.A.

*Each Book costs 4/6 net*

TEACH YOURSELF TO DRAW RONALD SMITH, A.T.D.(LOND.)  
TEACH YOURSELF ETCHING

HERBERT CUTNER (*Society Graphic Arts*)

TEACH YOURSELF MUSIC KING PALMER, A.R.A.M.

TEACH YOURSELF TO COMPOSE MUSIC  
KING PALMER, A.R.A.M.

TEACH YOURSELF ABOUT THE GREEKS  
J. C. STOBART, M.A., and ELSIE E. HERRON, M.A.

STAMP COLLECTING F. J. MELVILLE

*Each Book costs 4/6 net*

## SPORTS AND RECREATIONS

A new "Teach Yourself" enterprise in response to hundreds of requests. The first four subjects are :

CHESS GERALD ABRAHAMS, *the famous international master*

SAILING C. TYRRELL LEWIS

AMATEUR ACTING JOHN BOURNE

FISHING RICHARD WADDINGTON

If you order your copies now, these books will be sent to you as soon as they are ready.

## BUILDING

Mr. E. G. Warland, M.I.Struct.E., the Head of the Building Department, Technical College, Liverpool, has planned these books to cover all building methods and practice together with certain allied subjects. The first ten books, each one a complete course, are :

### PLANNING AND DESIGN

J. WATSON CABRÉ, F.R.I.B.A., M.I.STRUCT.E.

CONSTRUCTIONAL DETAILS D. E. WARLAND

BRICKWORK E. L. BRALEY, M.R.SAN.I.

JOINERY T. O. HOWARD

ROOFING J. LEE

PLUMBING A. M. MAY

QUANTITY SURVEYING C. A. PERRY, A.R.I.B.A.

HOUSE REPAIRS M. STUART

ELECTRICITY IN THE HOUSE

J. E. MACFARLANE, B.SC.(ENG.), M.I.E.E., A.M.I.MECH.E.

GAS IN THE HOUSE R. A. WOODROOK

Nearly all these titles are available but those not ready can be ordered now for future delivery.

*Each Book costs 4/6 net and is well illustrated*

# FARMING

Four years ago the English Universities Press planned as part of the "Teach Yourself" Series a farming library, which would make a real contribution to the work of all farmers. Dr. S. Graham Brade-Birks, the eminent soil scientist, directs the enterprise. The subjects in this library are :

GOOD FARMING (The Key Volume)	V. C. FISHWICK
GOOD GRASSLAND	D. H. ROBINSON, PH.D., B.SC., N.D.A.
GOOD SOIL	S. G. BRADE-BIRKS, M.SC.(MANC.), D.SC.(LOND.)
GOOD FARM CROPS	A. W. OLDERSHAW
GOOD FARM WORKMANSHIP	D. V. FLETCHER
GOOD FARM BOOK-KEEPING	A. C. CAMPBELL
GOOD MILK FARMING	H. G. ROBINSON, M.SC.
GOOD PIG KEEPING	N. L. TINLEY
GOOD CONTROL OF INSECT PESTS	S. G. JARY, B.A.
GOOD AND HEALTHY ANIMALS	J. D. PATERSON, M.R.C.V.S.
GOOD FLOWER FARMING	P. E. CROSS
GOOD FRUIT FARMING	C. R. THOMPSON
GOOD POULTRY KEEPING	C. E. FERMOR
GOOD MARKET GARDENING	G. H. TAWELL
GOOD FARMING BY MACHINE	H. J. HINE
GOOD CONTROL OF PLANT DISEASES	H. H. GLASSCOCK, M.SC.
GOOD SHEEP FARMING	N. L. TINLEY

Most of these volumes are ready, but you can order now from your bookseller those which are not available and they will be sent to you when published.

*Each Book costs 4/6 net*

# TEACH YOURSELF HISTORY

This self-teaching scheme is directed by A. L. Rowse, the famous Historian and Fellow of All Souls College, Oxford, supported by a team of the best teachers, distinguished historians already well-known, and younger historians rapidly making their mark. The *Key* idea of the scheme is to teach history by way of the biography of leading historical figures to open up the most important themes of history. For example, we hope to give you by means of a biography of Lenin a convenient approach to the study of the Russian Revolution; through a life of Cromwell that of the Puritan Revolution in England; through Captain Cook a view of the opening up of the Pacific in the modern world. Through a life of Clemenceau you will get a picture of the vicissitudes of the Third Republic, so necessary to the understanding of modern France. As the series fills out, we hope to cover whole tracks of history: through a sufficient number of lives of its great men and women, the history of Russia, for example, or of the United States or the British Empire. The *Key Volume*, written by Mr. Rowse, is called:

## THE USE OF HISTORY

of which Dr. G. M. Trevelyan, O.M., has written: "Mr. Rowse's book is the best analysis I have ever seen of the educative effect of history on the mind, and particularly on the political judgment of the reader."

THE OTHER VOLUMES READY OR NEARLY SO ARE:

### Britain and the Commonwealth

JOHN WYCLIFFE and the Lollards	K. B. MCFARLANE
HENRY V and the Invasion of France	E. F. JACOB
CRANMER and the English Reformation	F. E. HUTCHINSON
QUEEN ELIZABETH and Her Age	A. L. ROWSE
RALEIGH and the British Empire	D. B. QUINN
CROMWELL and the Puritan Revolution	MARY COATE
MILTON and the English Mind	F. E. HUTCHINSON
WESLEY and the Methodist Movement	NORMAN SYKES
CHATHAM and the British Empire	SIR CHARLES GRANT ROBERTSON
COOK and the Opening of the Pacific	J. A. WILLIAMSON
WARREN HASTINGS and British India	PENDEREL MOON
LIVINGSTONE and Central Africa	JACK SIMMONS

## TEACH YOURSELF HISTORY (continued)

GLADSTONE and Modern Liberalism	J. L. HAMMOND
BOTHA, SMUTS and South Africa	BASIL WILLIAMS
GANDHI and Modern India	GUY WINT

### Europe

INNOCENT III and the Mediæval Papacy	A. HAMILTON THOMPSON
JOAN OF ARC and the Recovery of France	ALICE BUCHAN
ERASMUS and the Renaissance	MARGARET MANN PHILLIPS
GUSTAVUS ADOLPHUS and the Thirty Years' War	RAYMOND CARR
RICHELIEU and the French Monarchy	C. V. WEDGWOOD
LOUIS XIV and the Greatness of France	MAURICE ASHLEY
MARX, Proudhon and European Socialism	J. HAMPDEN JACKSON
BISMARCK and the German Empire	CON O'NEILL
CLEMENCEAU and the Third Republic	J. HAMPDEN JACKSON
VENIZELOS and Modern Greece	J. MAVROGORDATO

### America

BOLIVAR and the Independence of Spanish America	J. B. TREND
JEFFERSON and American Democracy	MAX BELOFF
ABRAHAM LINCOLN and the United States	K. C. WHEARE
WOODROW WILSON and American Liberalism	E. M. HUGH-JONES

### Russia and the East

MARCO POLO and the Discovery of China	G. F. HUDSON
PETER THE GREAT	B. H. SUMNER
CATHERINE THE GREAT and the Expansion of Russia	GLADYS SCOTT THOMSON
PUSHKIN and Russian Literature	JANKO LAVRIN
LENIN and the Russian Revolution	CHRISTOPHER HILL

### Ancient History

PERICLES and Athens	A. R. BURN
ALEXANDER THE GREAT and the Hellenistic Empire	A. R. BURN
JULIUS CAESAR and the Fall of the Roman Republic	M. I. HENDERSON
AUGUSTUS and the Roman Empire	M. P. CHARLESWORTH
CONSTANTINE and the Conversion of Europe	A. H. M. JONES

*Each Book costs 5/- net with maps and frontispiece*